profile is approximate to case 4 plunge force scheme only at lower value. As for the rotating tool torque, the experimental value remains closed to the value exerted by case 3 scheme at almost constant trend. It described the nature of material in respond to the heat and mechanical friction during the FSW process.

5. Conclusion

FSW process benefits solid state joining method that has great advantage on light weight material such as aluminium alloy due to its thermal properties which make it difficult to be joined using conventional methods. Similarly to the other welding method, heat generation and heat transfer play major role in determining the success of the joining process as well as predominantly establish the joint characteristics and properties. Though the detail of the process mechanism and the effect on the welding has been widely studied in lab scale, good understanding of the process mechanism provides a better view on choosing the best parameter for the process and finally to achieve the best result in practice.

The future outlook of the process is very promising with new interest on its recent development that allows broader application in term of material used as well as process improvement. In addition, the development of mathematical analysis provides the ability to predetermine the effect of parametric study of the process effect on the work material at a shorter time as well as to be adapted to process automation.

Author details

Jauhari Tahir Khairuddin and Jamaluddin Abdullah
School of Mechanical Engineering, Universiti Sains Malaysia, Nibong Tebal, Penang, Malaysia

Zuhailawati Hussain
School of Materials and Mineral Resources Engineering, Universiti Sains Malaysia, Nibong Tebal, Penang, Malaysia

Indra Putra Almanar
Mechanical Engineering Department, Universiti Teknologi Mara, Permatang Pauh, Penang, Malaysia

Acknowledgement

This present work is supported by Universiti Sains Malaysia through RU-Grant (814084), Universiti Sains Malaysia Institute of Postgraduate Studies Graduate Research Fund (IPS-GRF) and USM-Fellowship scheme, which are greatly acknowledged.

6. References

[1] Thomas WM, Nicholas ED, Needham JC, Murch MG, Templesmith P, Dawes CJ. Friction Stir Butt Welding, GB Patent No. 9125978.8; 1991.

[2] Dawes CJ, Thomas WM. Friction Stir Welding of Aluminium Alloys. TWI Bulletin; 1995; 6 : 124-127.

[3] Hwang YM, Kang ZH., Chiou YC, Hsu HH. Experimental Study on Temperature Distributions Within the Workpiece During Friction Stir Welding of Aluminium Alloy. Int J of Mach Tools Manu; 2008; 48 : 778-787.

[4] Kim D, Badarinarayan H, Kim JH, Kim C, Okamoto K, Wagoner RH, Chung K. Numerical Simulation of Friction Stir Butt Welding Process for AA5083-H18 Sheets. Eur J Mechanics A-Solid; 2010; 29 (2) : 204 – 215.

[5] Jauhari TK. Development of Multi-Component Device for Load Measurement and Temperature Profile for Friction Stir Welding Process [M.Sc Thesis]. Penang: Universiti Sains Malaysia; Unpublished. 2012.

[6] American Welding Society. Welding Handbook, 9th Edition, Volume 3: Welding Process; AWS; 2007.

[7] Popov VL. Contact Mechanics and Frictions: Physical Principal and Application. London: Springer; 2010.

[8] Sherwood BA, Bernard WH. Work and Heat Transfer in the Presence of Sliding Friction. Am J Phys. November 1984; 52 (11) : 1001-1007.

[9] Ravichandran G, Rosakis AJ, Hodowany J, Rosakis P. On the Conversion of Plastic Work Into Heat During High-Strain-Rate Deformation. Shock Compression of Condensed Matter Meeting. American Physical Society; June 24-29, 2001 . p 557 – 562.

[10] Schmidt H, Hattel J, Wert J. An Analytical Model for the Heat Generation in Friction Stir Welding. Model Simul Mater Sc. 2004; 12 (1) : 143-157.

[11] Nandan R, Roy GG, DebRoy T. Numerical Simulation of Three-Dimensional Heat Transfer and Plastic Flow During Friction Stir Welding. Metal Mater Trans A. April 2006; 34A : 1247 – 1259.

[12] Schmidt HB, Hattel JH. Thermal Modelling of Friction Stir Welding. Scripta Mater. 2008; 58 : 332 – 337.

[13] Soundararajan V, Zekovic S, Kovacevic R. Thermo-Mechanical Model With Adaptive Boundary Conditions for Friction Stir Welding AL 6061. Int J Mach Tool Manu. 2005; 45 (14) : 1577-1587.

[14] Schneider J, Beshears R, Nunes Jr. AC. Interfacial Sticking and Slipping in the Friction Stir Welding Process. Mat Sci Eng A. 2006; 435 – 436 : 297 – 304.

[15] Colligan KJ, editors. Friction Stir Welding: From Basic to Applications – 2. The Friction Stir Welding Process: An Overview. CRC Press; 2010. p 15 – 38.

[16] Khandkar MZH, Khan JA. Thermal Modelling of Overlap Friction Stir Welding for Al-Alloys. J Mater Process Manuf Sci. 2001; 10 (2) : 91 – 105.

[17] Schmidt H, Hattel J. Modelling Heat Flow Around the Tool Probe in Friction Stir Welding. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2005; 10 (2) : 176 – 186.

[18] Khandkar MZH, Khan JA, Reynolds AP. In: Prediction of Temperature Distribution and Thermal History During Friction Stir Welding: Input Torque Based Model. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2003; 8 (3) : 165 – 174.

[19] Song M, Kovacevic R. Thermal Modelling of Friction Stir Welding in A Moving Coordinate System and its Validation. Int J Mach Tools Manuf. 2003; 43 : 605 – 615.

[20] Shi QY, Dickerson T, Sherchliff HR., Thermo-mechanical Finite Element Modelling in Friction Stir Welding of AL – 2024 Including Tool Loads. In: Proceeding of the 4th International Symposium on Friction Stir Welding. 2003.

[21] Nandan R, DebRoy T, Bhadeshia HKDH. Recent Advances in Friction Stir Welding – Process, Weldment Structure and Properties. Prog Mater Sci. 2008; 53 : 980 – 1023.

[22] Arora A, Nandan R, Reynolds AP, DebRoy T. Torque, Power Requirement and Stir Zone Geometry in Friction Stir Welding Through Modelling and Experiments. Scripta Mater. 2009; 60 : 13 – 16.

[23] Arora A, Zhang Z, De A, DebRoy T. Strains and Strain Rates during Friction Stir Welding. Scripta Mater. 2009; 61 : 863 – 866.

[24] Jata KV, Semiatin SL. Continuous Dynamic Recrystallization During Friction Stir Welding of High Strength Aluminium Alloys. Scripta Mater. 2008; 43 (8) : 743 – 749.

[25] Song M, Kovacevic R. Numerical and Experimental Study of the Heat Transfer Process in Friction Stir Welding. In: Proceedings of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, Part B: J Eng Manu. 2003; 217 (1) : 73 – 85.

[26] Dong P, Lu F, Hong JK, Cao Z. Coupled Thermomechanical Analysis of Friction Stir Welding Process Using Simplified Models. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2001; 6 (5) : 281-287.

[27] Elangovan K, Balasubramanian V, Babu S. Developing an Empirical Relationship to Predict Tensile Strength of Friction Stir Welded AA2219 Aluminium Alloy. J Mater Eng Perform. 2008; 17 (6) : 820 – 830.

[28] Moreira PMGP, Santos T, Tavares SMO, Richter-Trummer V, Vilaca P, de Castro PMST. Mechanical and Metallurgical Characterization of Friction Stir Welding Joints of AA6061-T6 with AA6082-T6. Mater Design. 2009; 30 : 180 – 187.

[29] Tutum CC, Hattel JH. Optimisation of Process Parameters in Friction Stir Welding Based on Residual Stress Analysis: A Feasibility Study. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2010; 15 (5) : 369 – 377.

[30] Smith C, Hinrichs J, Crusan W. Robotic Friction Stir Welding: The State-of-the-Art. In: Proceeding of the 4th International Friction Stir Welding Symposium. Salt Lake City, UT; May 2003.

[31] Kumagai M, Tanaka N. Application of friction stir welding to welded construction of Aluminum alloys. J Light Met Weld Constr. 2001; 39 : 22-28.

[32] Kallee SW, John D, Nicholas ED. Railway Manufacturers Implement Friction Stir Welding. Weld J. 2002; 81 (10) : 47 – 50.

[33] Delany F, Kallee SW, Russell MJ. Friction Stir Welding of Aluminium Ships. In: International Forum on Welding Technologies in the Shipping Industry. Shanghai, China; June 2007.

[34] Arbegast WJ. Friction Stir Welding – After a Decade of Development. Weld J. 2006; (3) : 28 – 35.

[35] Kallee SW , Kell JM, Thomas WM, Wiesner CS. Development and Implementation of Innovative Joining Process in The Automotive Industry. In: DVS Annual Welding Conference. Essen, Germany; September 2005.

[36] ESAB. Friction Stir Welding – the ESAB Way, XA00123720 [Internet]. 2004 [cited 24 May 2012]. Available from: http://www.esab.co.kr/esab/mc_data/pdf/Friction%20Stir%20Welding.pdf

[37] Nunes AC. Friction Stir Welding. In: Schwart MM, Innovation in Materials Manufacturing, Fabrication, and Environmental Safety, Boca Raton, FL . CRC Press. 2011: 88 – 119

[38] Ding J, Carter R, Lawless K, Nunes AC, Russell C, Suits M. Friction Stir Welding Flies High at NASA. Weld J. 2006; 85 (3) : 54 – 60.

[39] Gerlich A, North T. Friction Stir Spot Welding of Aluminum Alloys. Canadian Weld Assoc J, IIW Special Ed. 2006; 57 – 58.

[40] Mishra RS, Ma ZY. Friction Stir Welding and Processing. Mat Sci Eng. 2005; 50 (1-2) : 1-78.

[41] Elangovan K, Balasubramanian V. Influences of Tool Pin Profile and Tool Shoulder Diameter on the Formation of Friction Stir Processing Zone in AA6061 Aluminium Alloy. Mater Design. 2008; 29 : 362 – 373.

[42] Zhang Z, Liu YL, Chen JT. Effect of Shoulder Size on the Temperature Rise and the Material Deformation in Friction Stir Welding. Int J Adv Manuf Tech. 2009; 45 : 889 – 895.

[43] Liu HJ, Shen JJ, Huang YX, Kuang LY, Liu C, Li C. Effect of Rotation Rate on Microstructure and Mechanical Properties of Friction Stir Welded Copper. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2009; 14 (6) : 577 – 583.

[44] Ren SR, Ma ZY, Chen LQ. Effect of Welding Parameters on Tensile Properties and Fracture Behavior of Friction Stir Welded Al-Mg-Si Alloy. Scripta Mater. 2007; 56 : 69 – 72.

[45] Patil HS, Soman SN. Experimental Study on the Effect of Welding Speed and Tool Pin Profiles on AA6082-O Aluminium Friction Stir Welded Butt Joints. Int J Eng Sci Technol. 2010; 2 (5) : 268 – 275.

[46] Zhang Z, Zhang HW. Numerical Studies on the Effect of Transverse Speed in Friction Stir Welding. Mater Design. 2009; 30 : 900 - 907

[47] Cui S, Chen ZW, Robson JD. A Model Relating Tool Torque and Its Associated Power and Specific Energy to Rotation and Forward Speed During Friction Stir Welding/Processing: Inter J Mach Tools Manuf. 2010; 50 : 1023 – 1030.

[48] Buffa G, Hua J, Shivpuri R, Fratini L. Design of Friction Stir Welding Tool Using the Continuum Based FEM Model. Mater Sci Eng A. 2006; 419 : 381 – 388.

[49] Hattingh DG. Blignault C, van Niekerk TI, James MN. Characterization of the Influences of FSW tool Geometry on Welding Forces and Weld Tensile Strength Using an Instrumented Tool. J Mater Process Technol. 2008; 230 : 46 – 57.

[50] Arora A, De A, DebRoy T. Toward Optimum Stir Welding Tool Shoulder Diameter: Scripta Mater. 2011; 64 : 9 – 12.

[51] Frigaard Ø, Grong Ø, Midling OT. A Process Model for Friction Stir Welding of Age Hardening Aluminum Alloys. Metall Mater Trans A. May 2001; 32 (5) : 1189-1200.
[52] Buffa G, Hua J, Shivpuri R, Fratini L. A Continuum Based FEM Model for Friction Stir Welding – Model Development. Mater Sci Eng A. 2006; 419 : 389 – 396.
[53] Nandan R, Roy GG, Lienert TJ, DebRoy T. Three-Dimensional Heat and Material Flow During Friction Stir Welding of Mild Steel. Acta Mater. 2007; 55 : 883 – 895.
[54] Ulysse P. Three-Dimensional Modeling of the Friction Stir-Welding Process. Int J Mach Tools Manuf. 2002; 42 : 1549-1557.
[55] Colegrove PA, Shercliff HR, Zettler R. Model for Predicting Heat Generation and Temperature in Friction Stir Welding From the Material Properties. Sci Techno Weld Joining. 2007; 12 (4) : 284-297.
[56] Chen, CM, Kovacevic, R. Thermomechanical Modeling and Force Analysis of Friction Stir Welding by Finite Element method. In: Proceeding of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, Part C. J Mech Eng Sci. 2004; 218 : 509-519.
[57] Hamilton C, Dymek S, Sommer. A Thermal Model for Friction Stir Welding in Aluminum Alloys. Int J Mach Tool Manuf. 2008; 28 : 1120-1130.
[58] Chen CM, Kovacevic R. Parametric Finite Element Analysis of Stress Evolution During Friction Stir Welding. In: Proceeding of Institute of Mechanical Engineers Part B. J Manuf. 2006; 22 (28) : 1359 – 1371.
[59] Fratini L, Buffa G, Palmeri D, Hua J, Shivpuri R., Material Flow in FSW of AA7075 – T6 Butt Joints: Numerical Simulations and Experimental Verifications. Sci Technol Weld Joining. 2006; 11 (4) : 412 – 421.
[60] Zhang W, Zhang Z, Chen JT. 3D Modeling of Material Flow in Friction Stir Welding Under Different Process Parameter. J Mater Process Techn. 2007; 183 : 62-70.
[61] Pew JW, Record JH, Nelson TW, Sorensen CD. Development of A Heat Input for Friction Stir Welding. In: ASM proceeding of International Conference: Trends in Welding Research. 2005: 247 – 251.
[62] Pew JW. A Torque-Based Weld Power Model for Friction Stir Welding [Msc thesis]. Brigham Young University; December 2006.
[63] Colligan KJ, Mishra RS. A Conceptual Model for The Process Variables Related to Heat Generation in Friction Stir Welding of Aluminum. Scripta Mater. 2008; 58 : 327 – 331.
[64] Benedyk JC: Aerospace Structural Metals Handbook – Nonferrous Alloys; CINDAS LLC. 2008: 68.
[65] Jauhari TK, Indra PA, Zuhailawati H. Mathematical Model for Multi Component Forces & Torque Determination in Friction Stir Welding. Adv Mater Res. 2011; 230-232 : 1255 - 1259.
[66] Incropera, DeWitt: Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer, 2th Edition; Singapore; Wiley. 1990.
[67] Midling OT, Grong Ø. A process model for friction welding of Al-Mg-Si alloys and Al-SiC metal matrix composites; 1: HAZ temperature and strain rate distribution. Acta Metall Mater. 1994; 42 : 1595-1609.
[68] Crossland B. Friction Welding. Contemporary Physics. 1971; 12 (6) : 559-574.

[69] Longhurst WR, Strauss AM, Cook GE. Enabling Automation of Friction Stir Welding: The Modulation of Weld Seam Input. J Dyn Sys Meas Control. 2010; 132: 1-11.
[70] Davis TA, Shin YC, Yao B., Observer-Based Adaptive Robust Control of Friction Stir Welding Axial Force. IEEE-ASME Trans Mechatron. 2011; 16 (6) : 1032-1039

Chapter 10

Numerical Simulation of Residual Stress and Strain Behavior After Temperature Modification

Farag Soul and Nada Hamdy

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/47745

1. Introduction

Welding, among all mechanical joining processes, has been employed at an increasing rate for its advantages in design flexibility. In addition to that, cost savings, reduced overall weight and enhanced structural performance. The highly localized transient heat and strongly non-linear temperature fields in both heating and cooling processes cause non-uniform thermal expansion and contraction. Thus, result in plastic deformation in the weld and surrounding areas. As a result, residual stress, strain and distortion are permanently produced in the welded structures. This is particular when fabrication involves the use of thin section sheet materials, which are not inherently stiff enough to resist the contraction forces induced by welding. Transient thermal stresses, residual stresses, and distortion sometimes cause cracking and mismatching of joints. High tensile residual stresses are undesirable since they can contribute in causing fatigue failure, quench cracking and stress- corrosion cracking of welded structures under certain conditions. Welding deformation is undesirable owing to the decrease in buckling strength and injures the good appearance of structures.

In addition, it causes defaults during the assembly which result in repeating the process and productivity restriction. Correction of unacceptable distortion is costly and in some cases, impossible. In welding design, the study and analysis of welding residual stresses and distortion become necessary in critical industries such as: aerospace engineering, nuclear power plants, pressure vessels, boilers, marine sector….etc. Measurement of transient thermo-mechanical history during welding process is of critical importance, but proves to be prohibitively expensive and time consuming. It often fails to provide a complete picture of temperature and stress/strain, deformation distribution in the weldment. On the other hand, detailed experimental measurements of the residual elastic strain distributions in welded parts are typically not feasible due to significant resource (man, machine and material) consumption. Mathematical modeling for residual stress evaluation provides a resource effective method in comparison to the experimental methods when all interaction fields were correctly described in the modeling process. However, development of the modeling scheme gain demands a careful experimental data. The purpose of this chapter is to develop Finite Element models that satisfy the analysis of the behavior of transient phenomena of residual stress and distortion. That can be achieved by using different methods of the mitigation technique which work as heat transfer enhancement. Approximating the mechanisms of the transient temperature and longitudinal residual stress after temperature modification can be made. The modeled welding materials are aluminum and titanium alloys concerning flat and cylindrical shapes.

2. The origin of residual stress

Residual stresses developed during most manufactured processes involving metal forming, heat treatment and machining operations deform the shape or change the properties of a material. They arise from a number of sources and can be presented in the unprocessed raw materials, and can be introduced during manufacturing or can arise from in-service loading. (Withers & Bhadeshia, 2000; Rudd, 1992; Borland, 1994; Kandil et. al. , 2001). The residual stresses may be high enough to cause local yielding and plastic deformation on both microscopic and macroscopic level, that can severely affect component performance. For this reason it is vital that some knowledge of the internal stress state can be deduced either from measurements or modeling predictions. Both magnitude and distribution of the residual stress can be critical to the performance that should be considered in the design of a component. Tensile residual stresses in the surface of a component are generally undesirable since they can contribute to the major cause of fatigue failure, quench cracking and stress-corrosion cracking.

Compressive residual stresses in the surface layers are usually beneficial since they increase fatigue strength, resistance to stress-corrosion cracking, and increase the bending strength of brittle ceramics and glass. In general, residual stresses are beneficial when they operate in the plane of the applied load and are opposite in sense (i.e, a compressive residual stress in a component subjected to an applied tensile load). The origins of residual stresses in a component may be classified as: mechanical, thermal and chemical. Mechanically generated residual stresses are often a result of manufacturing processes that produce non-uniform plastic deformation. They may develop naturally during processing or treatment, or may be introduced deliberately to develop a particular stress profile in a component (Brien, 2000). Examples of operations that produce undesirable surface tensile stresses or residual stress gradients are rod or wire drawing (deep deformation), welding, machining (turning, milling) and grinding (normal or harsh conditions). On a macroscopic level, thermally generated residual stresses are often the consequence of non-uniform heating or cooling operations. The residual thermal stresses coupled with the material constraints in the bulk of a large component can lead to severe thermal gradients and the development of large internal stresses. An example is the quenching of steel or aluminum alloys, which leads to surface compressive stresses, balanced by tensile stresses in the bulk of the component.

Microscopic thermally generated residual stresses can also be developed in a material during manufacture and processing as a consequence of the CTE mismatch between different phases or constituents. The chemically generated stresses can develop due to volume changes associated with chemical reactions, precipitation, or phase transformation. Chemical surface treatments and coatings can lead to the generation of substantial residual stress gradients in the surface layers of the component. Nitriding produces compressive stress in the diffusion region because of expansion of the lattice and precipitation of nitrides also carburizing causes a similar effect (Littmann, 1964).

3. Sheet metal fabrication

In recent years the new vision of high-tech industrial strategy looking for minimizing the cost and increasing the strength to weight ratio of critical structure such as aerospace, marine, nuclear etc. Thin walled element fabricated by welding process can promote such effect. In the last two decades the research in welding science became more vital than other manufacturing sciences in many industrial sectors. The development in welding technology is vastly increased, and the need for sheet metal fabrication by welding is necessary for many applications. Such those applications are rockets fuel tank and aircraft exhaust and engine mounts). Typical example of some components used in industries are shown in figure 1.

(a) (b) (c)

Figure 1. Typical thin welded component used in aerospace: (a,b,c) type of rocket fuel tank.

Other examples of sheet metal welding applications are in ships and airplanes structures. Welding can be successfully alternated to other connection processes such as riveting. Riveting has a low joint efficiency, thus a structure designed to be riveted, generally requires more materials even if joint itself is not complex. The area adjacent to the rivets is also a site of high residual stresses and stresses concentration, generating a favorable environment for stress corrosion and initiation of fatigue cracks. Welding is considered a challenge for replacing riveting in the future for airbus industries. The advantage of welding compared to the mechanical fastenings, includes cost, time and ease of fabrication. Also, simpler, lighter component design, and better joint efficiency. Laser beam welding may become a new joining technique for aircraft fuselage shells for the A318 and A380 airbuses (Airbus, 2000). Laser beam welding of the longitudinal stiffeners of the skin panels of a commercial aircraft fuselage may reduce the weight of the panels to 80% against the riveted structure production Figure 2. Welding is performed simultaneously from both sides of the stiffener. The main problem with welding is to keep the distortion as low as possible (especially the transverse deflections) and to reduce the residual stresses (especially the longitudinal tensile stresses).

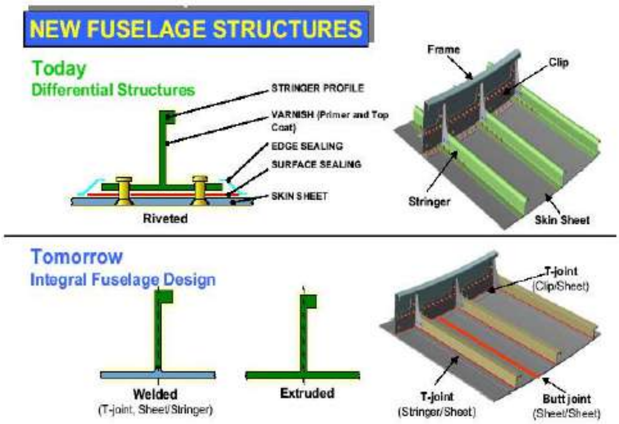


Figure 2. The fuselage structure

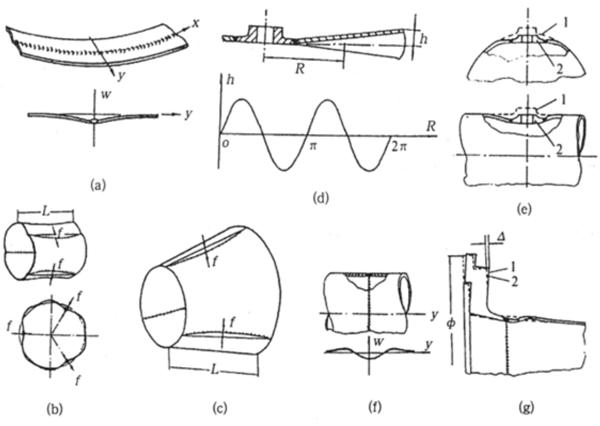


Figure 3. Typical distortion on welded sheet: longit. welds (a,b,c), circular welds (d,e), and circumference welds (f,g).

The twin problem of stress and distortion due to welding, using conventional fusion welding process, have presented fabrication problems for many years especially, in aerospace industry. Consequently, manufacturing have applied additional time consuming and costly operations. This is to remove distortions or to relieve stresses after welding that avoid variable quality problem. This is particularly so when fabrication involves the use of thin sheet section, typically in the range of 0.5-4 mm in thickness. Recently advanced aluminum and titanium alloys became very attractive materials in sheet metal fabrication in high tech- industries due to their strength to weight ratio. However, as the thickness decreases, the sheet materials are not stiff enough to resist the contraction forces induced by welding. In the aerospace fabrication, the longitudinal residual stress in addition to distortion such as longitudinal bending and buckling become more substantial. The manufacturing of welded cylinders, cones or other shaped shell elements in aerospace industries are always accompanied by distortions. Figure 3, shows typical example of those distortions produced by longitudinal or circumferential welding when fusion welding process is applied (Guan, 1999).

4. Welding and its focus research

Historically, electric arc welding appeared in the late 19th century, shortly after electric power became available. Other fusion welding processes were recently developed such as electron beam welding (EB) and laser beam welding (LB), which introduced new generations in the welding equipments and processes. Failure of welded bridge in Europe in the 1930 and the American liberty ships in world war II make the concern of welding mechanics is important. The welding researches carried out since that time, then vastly developed. Analyses of these subjects require complex computation; therefore, most early studies were primarily empirical or limited to the analysis of simple cases. A number of studies have been performed on the calculation of residual stress and deformation, but few are useful in the design process. Most of these calculation methods are limited for special purposes, e.g. (Hansen, 1968), or too complicated to be used in design and production, e.g. (Okerblom, 1955). (Puchaicela, 1997), exhibit some empirical formulas for general distortion modes in welded steel structures. Most of the formula are based on measurements of deformation and strains and cannot take in to account what really happens in the (HAZ) when the welding is cooling down.

Attempts were made to investigate changes in the bending deformation due varying pertinent parameters, see (Masubuchi, 1980). The investigation cover many practical aspects of process, but based mainly on experimental data. It is difficult to analyze the process, which is highly non-linear and involves plastic deformations and high temperatures varying in both time and space. Several reviews are, however, available such as the extensive review done by (Masubuchi, 1980; Radaj, 1992; Goldak et al., 1992) and the recent one by (Lindgren, 2001a, 2001b, 2001c). With the advancement of modern computers and computational techniques (for example, the finite-element and finite-difference method), a renewed effort has been made in recent years to study residual stresses and related phenomena. Therefore, it is now possible using computer programs to simulate the transient thermal stresses and metal movement during welding, as well as, the residual stresses and distortion that remain after welding is completed as found by (Tall, 1991 ; Hibbit & Marcel, 1972; Muraki et. al., 1975; Rybicki et. al., 1978).

4.1. The finite element method in historical perspective

The history of the finite element method is about hundred years, but it took another fifty years before the method became useful. In 1906 a paper was presented where researchers suggested a method for replacing the continuum description for stress analysis by a regular pattern of elastic bars. Later (Courant, 1943) proposed the finite element method, as we know it today, the residue of section cover the developed FEM during the years and the motivation computer tools based on FEA, and the use for those packages for simulation of welding phenomena by the researcher. Many authors have utilized the commercial finite element codes ABAQUS & ANSYS enhanced with user subroutines, to model weld simulations with great success (Dong et. al., 1998; Feng et. al.,1996; Karlsson et. al., 1989; Grong & Myhr, 1993; Voss et. al., 1999; Tenga & Linb, 1998; Li et. al.,2004). The finite element code ADINAT was used by (Karlsson & Josefson, 1990), while other authors (Junek et. al., 1999; Vincent et. al., 1999; Dubois et. al., 1984) have utilized SYSWELD to perform weld simulations. Welding is complex industrial process which often requires several trials before it can be done right. The welding is carried out by skilled workers, but in the past few years automated machines and robots are sufficiently used in the small and large industrial scales. To obtain the expected productivity through mechanization, high precision of the assembled parts must be kept. Therefore, the predictability is important in such aerospace, shipyards, nuclear and automobile industries. In order to produce a high-quality product, the accuracy control should be kept through the whole assembly line. The concept of accuracy control should be incorporated in the structural design, so that the designer can produce a better design accounting for the geometric inaccuracy. Numerical modeling and simulation of welding are a difficult and challenging problem due to the complex mechanisms involved. The wide range of problems concerned can be generalized into the fields shown in figure 4. The fields are strongly interrelated and couple in almost every possible manner. Establishment of a model accounting for all the physical effects and their couplings would be an incomprehensibly large and complex task. Hence, welding research is characterized by choice of a focal area for thorough analysis and use of suitable assumptions. Thus, the 'art' of welding research is to choose simplifications without invalidating the research focus.

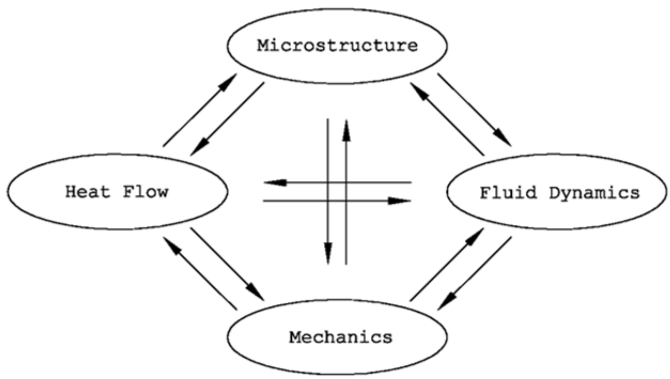


Figure 4. Coupled fields in welding analysis.

4.2. Welding induced residual stresses

Stresses arising during the welding process are referred to as internal or locked-in stresses (Radaj, 1992; Gatovskii & Karkhin, 1980). Residual stresses can be defined as those stresses that remain in a material or body after manufacture and processing in the absence of external forces or thermal gradients. Residual stress measurement techniques invariably measure strains rather than stresses, and the residual stresses are then deduced using the appropriate material parameters such as Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio. Often only a single stress value is quoted and the stresses are implicitly assumed to be constant within the measurement volume, both in the surface plane and through the depth. Residual stresses can be defined as either macro or micro stresses and both may be present in a component at anyone time. Macro residual stresses, which are often referred to as Type I residual stresses, vary within the body of the component over a range much larger than the grain size. Micro residual stresses, which result from differences within the microstructure of a material, can be classified as Type II or III. Type II residual stresses are micro residual stresses that operate at the grain-size level; Type III are generated at the atomic level. Micro residual stresses often result from the presence of different phases or constituents in a material. They can change sign or magnitude over distances comparable to the grain size of the material under analysis. To summarize, Residual stresses in the material body can be classified three type as found in (Withers & Bhadeshia, 2000; Borland, 1994; Noyan). The different types of residual stress are shown schematically in figure 5.

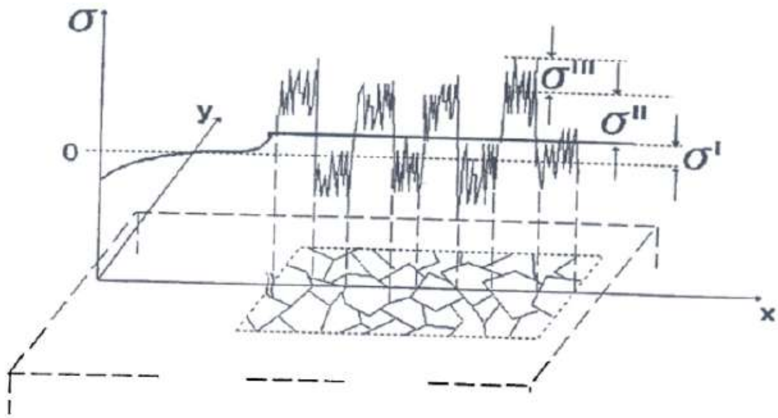


Figure 5. Categorization of residual stresses according to length scales.

Welding stresses can be classified by three characteristics: By lifetime, welding stresses can be temporary or residual, the temporary stresses do exist only in a specific moment of the non-stationary process of heating and cooling. The residual stresses can be found after the whole process of welding is completed and structure is cooled down to the room temperature. By directional the welding stresses subdivide into longitudinal (parallel to the welding direction) and transversal (perpendicular to the weld seam) and through thickness stress. By the origins, the welding stresses are subdivided into. Thermal stress, Stresses caused by the plastic deformation of the metal; Stresses caused by phase transformations.

4.2.1. Welding induced longitudinal residual stress

Representation of the temperature and the resulting longitudinal stress distributions that occur during welding are schematically gives in figure 6. In this example a simple bead-on-plate case is analyzed (see figure 6a). The welding arc which is moving along the x-axis with a speed v, is indicated by the arrow. Far ahead from the heat source the temperature is constant and the stress is equal to zero in all the points. Moving in the negative direction of the x-axis, we reach the point where the temperature starts to rise figure 6c. The points close to the weld line start to experience compression in the longitudinal direction. This deep fall changes to a fast rise of the longitudinal stress. The rate of stress change is proportional to the temperature gradient ahead of the source. It caused by the yielding point σ yield changing with temperature. As known, at elevated temperatures the material begins to soften. After some temperature (the softening temperature) the material reaches the stage when σ_Y is almost zero, and so, the points situated close to the centerline reach the softening temperature, and climb up to a zero value of the longitudinal stress. Stresses in the regions a short distance from the arc are compressive, because the surrounding metal restrains the expansion of these areas where the temperature is lower. However, stresses in the areas further away from the weld arc are tensile and balanced by compressive stresses in the areas near the weld. Going further, at some distance behind the welding arc, the temperature drops sufficiently for the material to be stiff enough to resist the deformation caused by the temperature change. Due to cooling the areas close to the weld contract and cause tensile stresses. After a certain time, the temperature change due to welding diminishes. High tensile longitudinal stresses (usually up to the yielding stress) are produced near the weld. In the regions further away from the weld, compressive stresses do exist. Figure 6d describe the final distribution of longitudinal residual stress, from literature (Masubuchi, 1980), σ_X can be approximated by:

$$\sigma_x(y) = \sigma_m[1-(y/b)^2]e^{-[1/2(y/b)^2]} \tag{1}$$

Where σ M is the maximum stress at the welding line, y is the distance from the weld line, b width of tension stress.

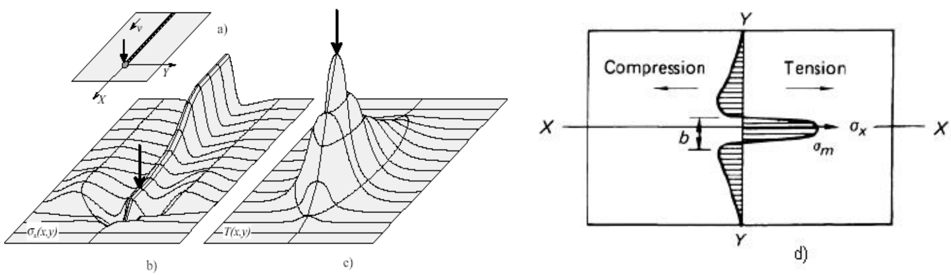


Figure 6. Schematic representation, (a, b, c) temperature vs stress during welding[Pilipenko]; d) final longitudinal residual stress.

4.3. Welding induced deformation

As in case of the stresses occurring during and after welding, welding deformation can be transient or residual. Figure 7 gives an overview of various types of welding deformations to be expected when welding plates.

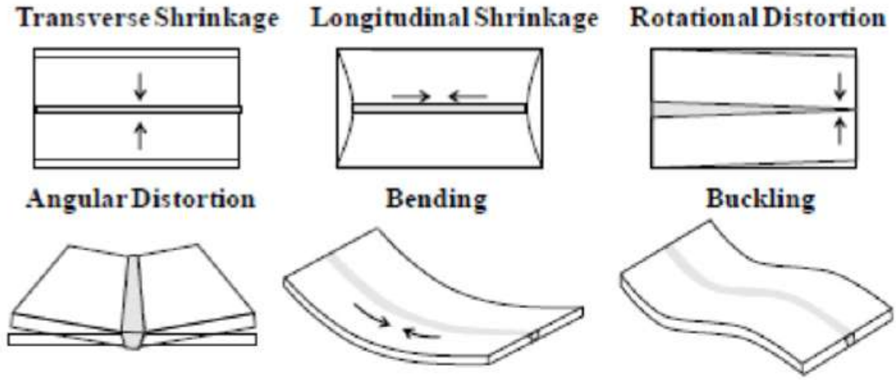


Figure 7. Different types of welding distortions. The arrows indicate the shrinkage direction of the weld metal which causes the corresponding distortion [Masubuchi 1980].

All these kinds of distortions are related to the shrinkage of the weld metal during cooling. They can be subdivided into:

1. Transverse shrinkage – shrinkage perpendicular to the weld seam
2. Longitudinal shrinkage – shrinkage in direction of the weld seam
3. Angular distortion – transverse uplift caused by a non-uniform temperature distribution in the through-thickness direction. For instance in case of butt-joints with a V-groove.
4. Rotational distortion – in-plane angular distortion due to the localized thermal expansion and contractions. Very relevant for overlap joints, for instance.
5. Bending distortion – longitudinal uplift. The same causes as angular distortion.
6. Buckling distortion – caused by compressive stresses inducing instabilities in the plates.

Driven by the need to save fuel and reduce transport and operating costs, there is a growing demand for lightweight structures, for example in the automotive and aircraft industries as well as in shipbuilding. At the very basis of this trend we find the availability of recently developed metallic alloys that actually allow the transition to more lightweight designs. Although many of the welding techniques that are currently available offer suitable material and mechanical properties, the degree of distortion remains unacceptable and residual stresses often approach component design limits. The increasing reduction in thickness will lead to a growing demand for effective solutions for residual stress and strain control during welding. An example of welding deformations in thin sheet structures can be found in the shipbuilding industry, where welding causes a typical wave-like appearance on the hull of a ship (see Figure 8). Such problem results through various stages of production have emerged as a major obstacle to the cost-effective fabrication of lightweight structures. Same situation may occurs in aerospace and aircraft assembly where the high strength to weight ratio are necessary and thin elements are used, in addition to the requirement of smooth surface to maximize hydrodynamic performance and minimize radar signature [Huang 2004]. A conservative estimation for the labor costs accumulating for post-welding distortion correction is approximately 30 % [Andersen 2000; van der Aa,2007].

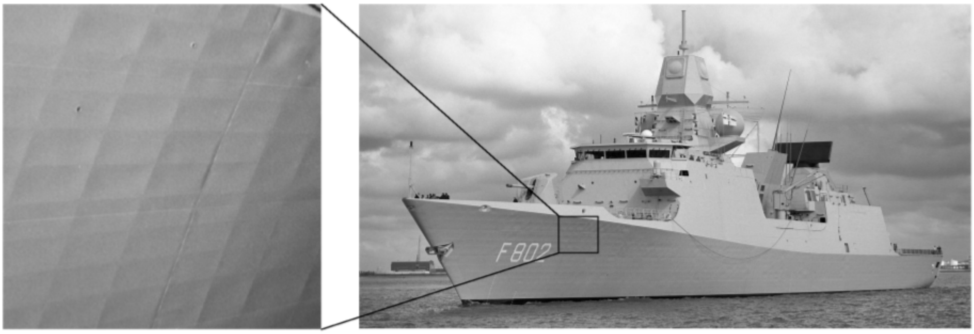


Figure 8. Ship hull defect due to distortion (van der Aa, 2007) .

4.3.1. Bending distortion in welded sheet metal

Bending distortion in sheet metal can be schematically shown in figure 9. When structure is welded, heat is supplied to melt the joint and non-uniform temperature distribution is caused owing to local melting, As a result, non-uniform thermal strains and stresses are caused and plastic strains remain after thermal cycle. Residual plastic strain around welded joints is the cause of permanent deformation. Figure 9a presents the pure cambering which may occur when the ratio of sheet length to width is high enough, but when this ratio decreases, the sheet exposes both cambering and angular distortion as shown in figure 9b. In small thickness, angular deformation is not significant because of the high homogeneity of the temperature field through the plate thickness. In some cases gradient forces countered from longitudinal shrinkage Fx, as shown in figure 9c, are more dominant and cause the cambering owing to low stiffness of thin sheet at this moment. This may occur when the longitudinal residual stress above the neutral axis of the sheet exceeds that below the neutral axis.

The possibility for minimizing or eliminating this problem is only to balance the longitudinal stress around the neutral axis otherwise, minimizing these stresses below the significant magnitude which not exceeds the component stiffness. For most welding processes, the incident surface will absorb the most energy, with the energy absorption decreasing with depth. The variation in the through-thickness heating causes variation in the longitudinal stresses through the plate thickness. This generates a bending moment, which causes the bending distortion mode.

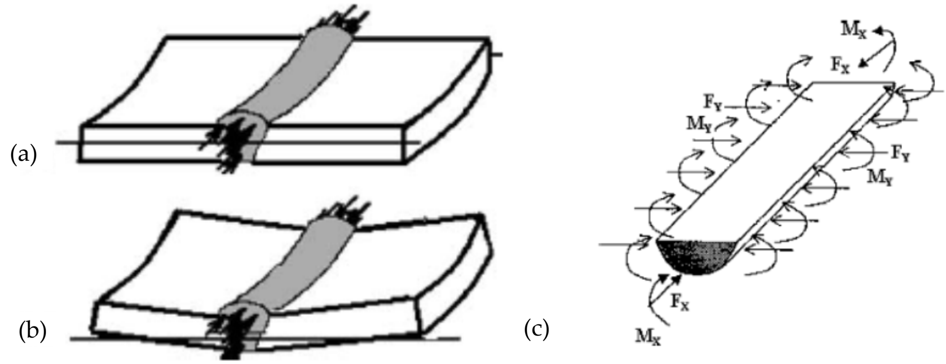


Figure 9. Schematic of: (a) cambering; (b) combined cambering and angular; (c) Shrinkage foresees in inherent strain region.

4.4. Novel control techniques for residual stress and distortion

Controlling of distortion has been investigated in series of papers by the Edison welding institute (EWI) (Conrady & Dull, 1995; Michaleris et al., 1999; Michaleris & Sun, 1997; Conrardy & Dull, 1997). Those papers concerned for the thermal tensioning technique in both static and dynamic heating during welding processes. The technique was found to be an active method in welded ship structures. Different heating sources can be used enhancing tensioning effect such as dynamic flame heating and moving laser spot heating or static heating. Another mitigation technique for controlling welding-induced stresses and distortion has been developed by Beijing Aeronautical Manufacturing Technology Research institute (Q. Guan et. al., 1994; Guan et al., 1993). The technique called dynamic controlled low stress no distortion (DC-LSND); it has been applied successfully to aerospace manufacturing for shell structures such as jet engine cases of heat resistance alloys and rocket fuel tanks of aluminum alloys (Guan et al., 1993; Guan et al., 1996). Many literature present that the residual stress can be minimized by using (DC-LSND) welding technique (Li et al , 2004a; Li et al., 2004b). many cooling media can be used in this technique such as (atomized water, compressed air, solid CO_2, liquid nitrogen, liquid argon). Beside the reduction of plastic strain, it was found that heat transfer enhancement by trailing heat sink technique work as source for balancing residual stresses above and under the neutral axis (Soul & Yanhua, 2005, 2006; Soul et al, 2010). The set-up of dynamic heating spots and trailing heat sink are represented schematically in figure 10. The studies on the temperature field characteristics and the thermal history are the foundation and prerequisite to study the stress and distortion control mechanism in welding mitigating techniques. Sometimes, it is inconvenient or even impossible to obtain the real thermal cycle at weld pool by experiment due to its limitations.

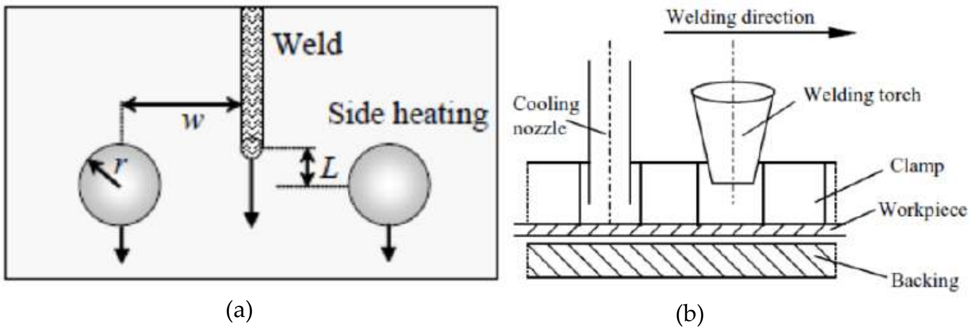


Figure 10. Schematic drawing represents: (a) moving heating spots; (b) trailing cooling spot

To overcome this disadvantage, the advanced numerical analysis technologies, such as finite element method and finite difference method, have been frequently used to obtain the whole temperature field of the welded specimen. It is necessary to develop a computer-based tool to optimize welding mitigation processes and hence minimize the expense and time incurred by extensive welding trials. In this chapter three dimensional finite element methods are employed to find qualitative analysis for the temperature field, residual stress and transient plastic strain developed during welding process. To mitigate the problem of residual stress and distortion, two different techniques were tested and compared, those are trailing heat sink and dynamic heating spots techniques. Gas tungsten arc welding process (GTAW) is used for simulation.

5. Investigation of residual stress behaviour after enhanced heat transfer

5.1. Trailing cooling spot

The proposed welding technique incorporates a trailing heat sink (an intense cooling source) with respect to the welding torch, and it is also named Low Stress No Distortion (LSND) welding. The development of this mitigation technique is based on both detailed welding process simulation using advanced finite element method and systematic laboratory trials. For understanding well LSND welding, finite element method is used to investigate the mechanism of the technique. In this chapter, 3D-FEA results from different papers done by the author have been selected. These results study the mechanism of the trailing heat sink mitigation technique and how the longitudinal residual stress was minimized based on the distance between the torch and the cooling spot. The qualitative and quantitative analysis of residual stress depend on the temperature gradient in the component during heating and cooling. So any modification of temperature topography may decrease or increase the residual stress that depends on interaction of strains. Three-dimensional models for welding, the thermal cycle and residual stress in welding are now in common use as a research tool for both academic and commercial purposes. The models use a transient 3-dimensional thermal model which is decoupled to an elastic-plastic model for calculating the stress and strain. Models were investigated with different material and dimension as shown in table 1.

Model	Size	geometry
Model 1 Al-Mn(3003)	$260mm \times 130mm \times 2mm$	Flat sheet
Model 2 Al-Mg (5083)	$240mm \times 80mm \times 3mm$	Flat sheet
Model 3 Ti-6Al-4V	$270mm \times 120mm \times 2.5mm$	Flat sheet
Model4 AL-Cu (2024	100mmOD, 96mmID, 240mm length	Cylindrical sheet

Table 1. Simulated models: material, shapes and their dimensions.

5.1.1. Establishment of heat source model

In this study, two heat source models were investigated, then correlated on fitting a practical welded sample for distinguishing the better one, so it can be used to detect other analysis. The first one is disc model proposed by (pavelic et al, 1969), the mathematical expression of the model present in Equation 2.

$$q(r) = \frac{3Q}{\pi r_0^2} e^{-\frac{3}{r_0^2} r^2} \tag{2}$$

Where q(r) is the surface flux at radius r (W/m^2), r_0 is the region in which 95 % of the heat flux is deposited, r is radial distance from center of the heat source and Q is the heat input.

The second model is double ellipsoidal power density distribution" adopted from (Goldak, 1984), the mathematical expression of the model present in Equations 3 and 4.

$$q_f(x,y,z) = \frac{6\sqrt{3}Qf_f}{abc_f \pi\sqrt{\pi}} e^{(-3x^2/a^2)} e^{(-3y^2/b^2)} e^{(-3z^2/c_f^{\ 2})} \tag{3}$$

$$q_r(x,y,z) = \frac{6\sqrt{3}Qf_r}{abc_r \pi\sqrt{\pi}} e^{(-3x^2/a^2)} e^{(-3y^2/b^2)} e^{(-3z^2/c_r^{\ 2})} \tag{4}$$

Where a, b, c are the semi-axis for the gaussian distribution in (x,y,z) direction respectively and f_f, f_r are fractions of heat deposit in front and rear of the heat source. The intensity plot for both surface heat and double ellipsoid heat source models is shown in figure 11. Variation of the semi-axis and the heat deposit fractions allows the double ellipsoid fitted to give suitable heat source especially at increased welding speed.

At the same heat input, the double ellipsoid is more reasonable for fitting the fusion boundary rather than the gaussian distribution or surface heat source model as depicted in figure 12.

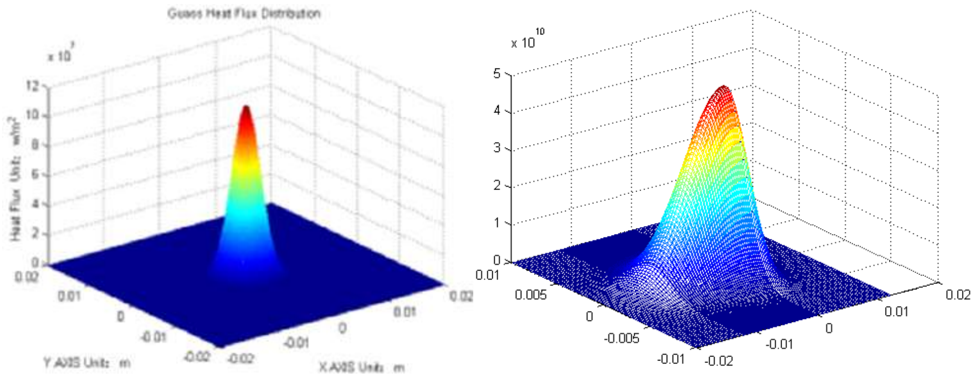


Figure 11. Intensity of heat source model: (a) gaussian distribution; b) double ellipsoid

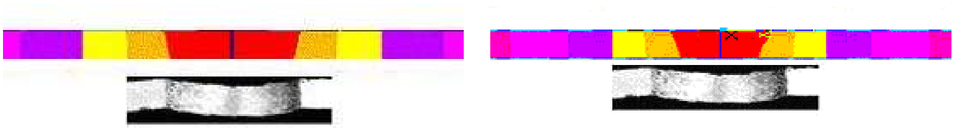
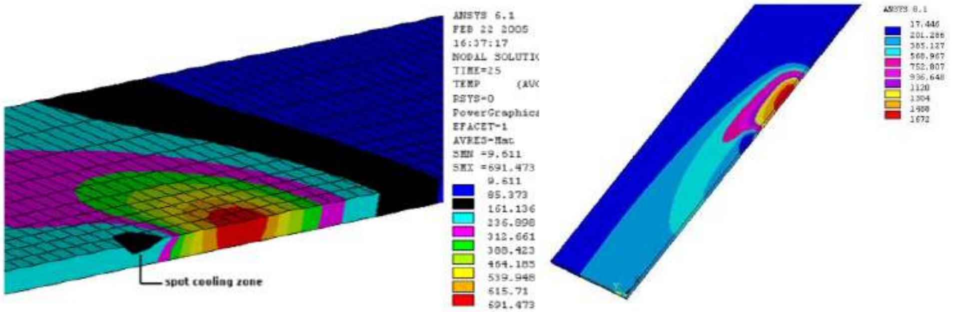


Figure 12. Experimental & simulated fusion boundary fitting: (a) double ellipsoid; (b) gaussian distribution;

5.1.2. Effects of trailing cooling spot on heat transfer form

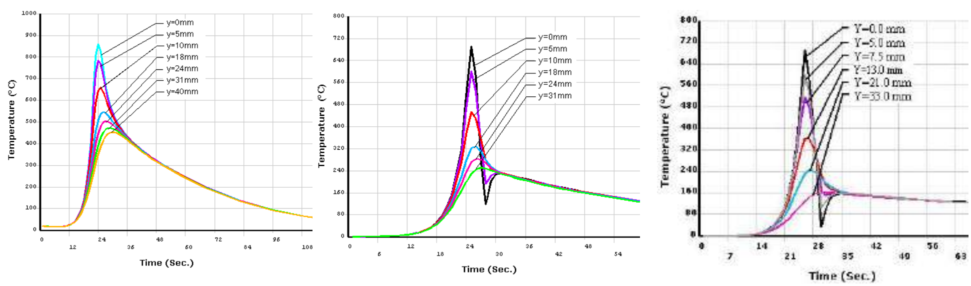
The temperature distribution resulted from the thermal analysis for the heat sink process stated above is predicted at a welding time of 25s and presented in Figure 13. The temperature decreases drastically in the zone between the arc and the heat sink, and the corresponding temperature gradient increases. Further more, in the front of the heat sink the temperature isotherms reveals the existence of high temperature gradient and therefore, some of high temperature contours are drawn back to the front of heat sink and distorted temperature distribution were formed. However, the point in and near the weld centerline may passed by more than one thermal cycle and this may expressed as [heating - normal cooling - forced cooling – surrounding heating – normal cooling]. The evidence of those cycles became more clear when different locations in the samples in both conventional and after applying heat sink processes were selected. Figure 14 reveals different location with difference cycle profiles.

The locations at or near the weld line present those cycles and exhibit significance difference in thermal profiles. The point at weld line reveals the maximum intensity of the cooling spot which indicate a steep profile and the existence of valley . The thickness of the modeled sample play an important role for the effectiveness of the technique. Figure 14c shows the thermal history of simulated welded aluminum alloy with 2mm in thickness



(a) (b)

Figure 13. Temperature contours in trailing cooling spot: a) Al-alloy; b) Ti- alloy (soul, 2oo5,2006)



(a) (b) (c)

Figure 14. Thermal history: (a) conventional welding; (b) trailing cooling spot[t=3mm], (c) [t=2mm]

Comparing these results with that modeled with thickness 3mm as presented in figure 14b, at the point (y=0), the penetration of cooling zone is more effective in the small thickness, which reveals lower temperature magnitude at the center of the spot figure 14c. Moreover, the overall temperature tips in thermal history is decreased compared with conventional welding. This refers to some energy absorbed from the total energy by the amount action of introduced cooling.

5.1.3. Longitudinal residual stress behaviour

The result obtained from the 3-D modeling of welding a bead on plate with thickness 2.5mm for titanium alloy and 3mm for aluminum alloy using GTAW process were depicted in figure 15. Describing the process behavior, in the front of the torch, compression transient residual stress were developed which result from generated thermal strain. When the material loose the mechanical properties at high temperature such yield strength and young's modulus, no extra stresses were produced. Behind the welding pool when the shrinkage started , plastic strain was accumulated and transient residual stress changes from compression to tension in short period of time. Therefore, Its magnitude increased vastly as the temperature decreased. However, it is an important knowledge if this change with duration can be measured practically to make correlation, but it is so difficult. In fact, the final magnitude of residual stress depends on cooling rate, regarding the metallurgical science welding microstructure morphology and size depend on the cooling rate as well. So no welding residual stress developed if there is no change or homogenous microstructure was obtained.

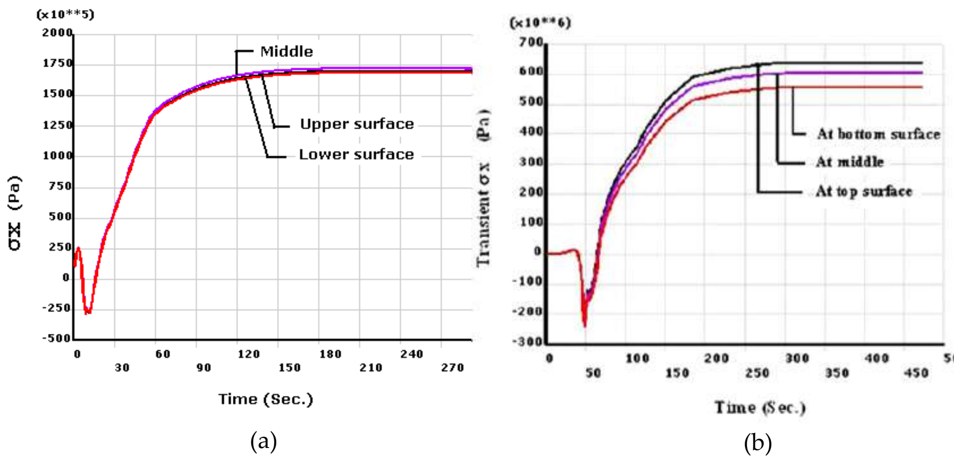
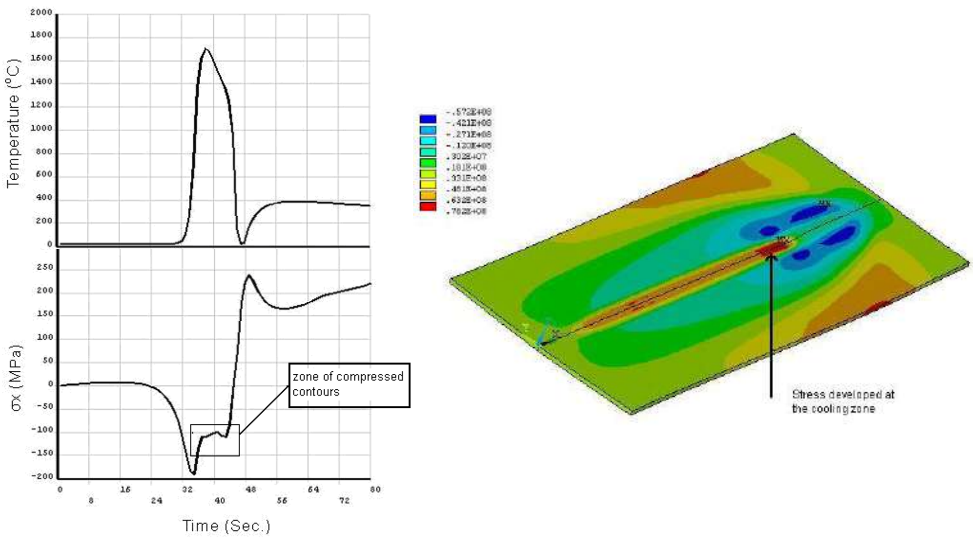


Figure 15. Transient residual stress: (a) Al-Mg alloy; (b) Ti-6Al-4V alloy

In more details, after including trailing heat sink technique, which can enhance heat transfer process, the temperature was modified. The analyzed results in figure 16 obtained when the trailing heat sink is located at 30 mm behind the torch, exhibit that the stress profile has different behavior. For instance, in small area depicted in figure 16a (zone of compressed contours), the contours behind the torch were compressed in the front of the cooling spot, and its shape becomes in complicated form through this stage.



(a) (b)

Figure 16. Transient longitudinal residual: (a) stress vs thermal cycle ; (b) longitudinal residual stress contours Al-Mn alloy

The transient longitudinal residual stress stays constant for a period of time, this may also be referred to the high temperature contours intercepted between the two sources which don't affect the plastic strain. Through enough length along weld centerline behind cooling zone, the longitudinal residual stress seams to have a constant value which can be distinguished from a stable color along this length. This behavior coupled with the constant values of contours around mentioned length.

Moving a step back, far from local cooling zone, the temperature of the metal at the spot-cooling region is smaller than the surrounding, so the fast contraction of welded metal in the cooling zone and high transient longitudinal residual stress may developed as depicted in figure 16b (red color were the arrow located). Because of cooling that crossed in a short time and the hot contours appeared again due to the hot surrounding material, the residual plastic strain may released and recovery process may generate. However, both the effectiveness of the cooling at the upper surface and the abnormal temperature developed behind the heat source may affect the balance level for the front-to-rear stress pattern. Furthermore, in short distance behind the torch, high temperature contours around the cooling zone and low temperature inside, which revealed a big difference from that occurred in conventional welding process. Therefore, it may brought less stress during solidification temperature range, and reasonable longitudinal strain can be obtained. Behind the cooling zone the transient longitudinal residual stress profile seems to be decreases to somewhat value due to an increase in temperature as shown in figure 17. In this stage, the process became as heat treatment for the residual stress, and the metal may expand again due to heating which believed to be appeared in the expansion process in the rear of the cooling zone.

The drop in residual stress magnitude follows the change in temperature according to the thermal cycle may refer to the opposite change of the elastic strain when the temperature increases again by the surrounding hot metal. Therefore, the reasonable expression for this mechanism related to recovery process due to the heating process behind the cooling spot which may expand again, and then some of the plastic strain can be released. In practice, this process is quite logic during the heat treatment of materials suffering from residual stress induced by welding or other strengthening process such as cold working etc. Furthermore, the maximum longitudinal residual stress in titanium model is reduced to about (~326 MPa) from that in conventional welding, where in the aluminum model the maximum residual stress is minimized about (~55MPa) from that in conventional welding. The tested technique shows the significance influence on the final longitudinal residual stress through thickness, the clear evidence for such influence can be seen in figure 18. The residual stress at the upper surface became less in magnitude than that in the middle of plate thickness. It seems not only the over all stress minimization but the possibilities for balance the stresses around the center of the Thickness.

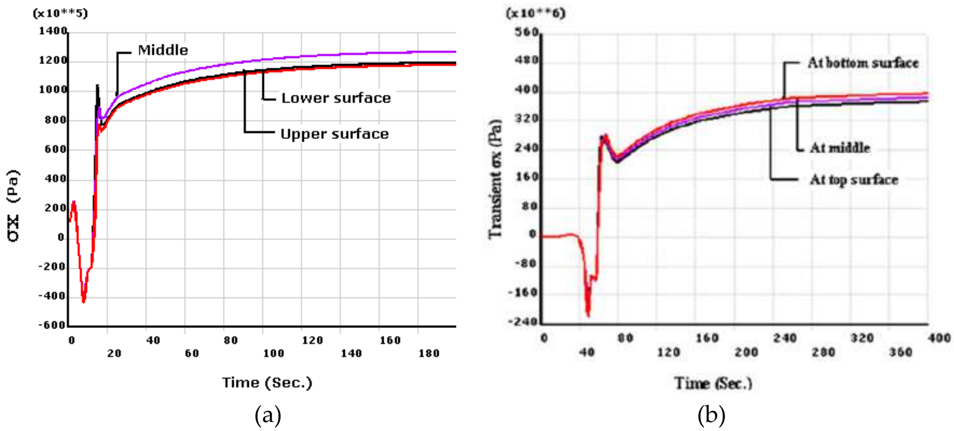
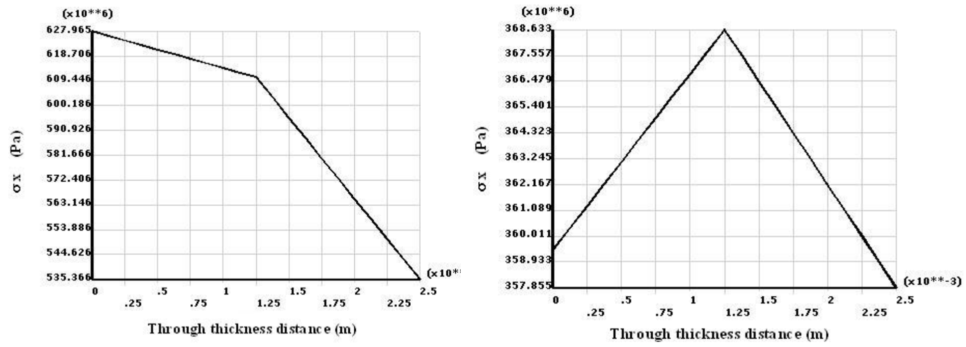


Figure 17. Transient longitudinal residual stress in moving cooling spot: (a) in Al-Mg alloy; (b) in Ti-6Al-4V alloy



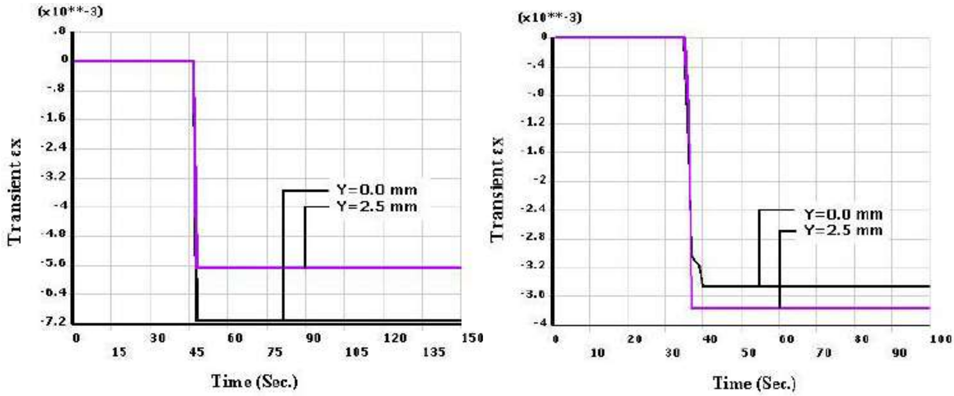
(a) (b)

Figure 18. Final longitudinal Residual Stress through Thickness: (a) In Conventional Welding; (b) In Trailing Heat Sink.

5.1.4. Longitudinal plastic strain behavior

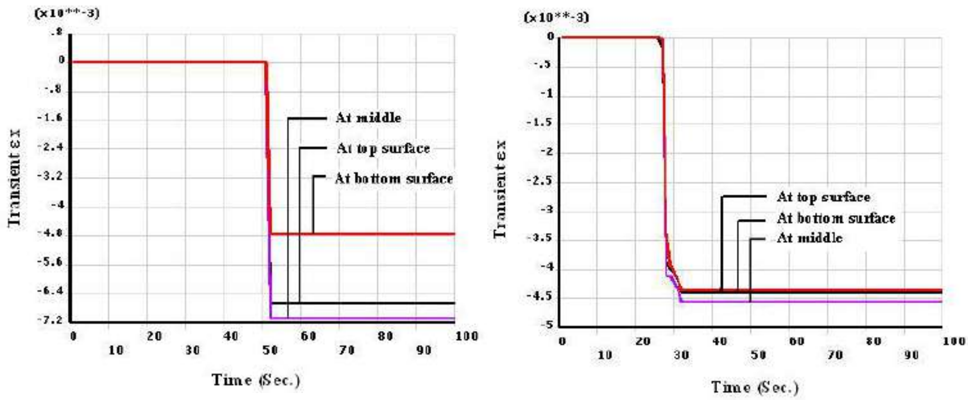
In welding process, the residual stress magnitude based on the inherent strain or plastic strain, so the analysis of strain behavior is important to characterize the minimization of residual stress. In the work done by (soul & yan hua,2006) the transient longitudinal plastic strain profiles were analyzed at two nodes and presented in figure 19. In conventional welding the plastic strain at the centerline (Y=0mm) seams to be higher than the point a little moved a way from the center line (Y=2.5mm). However; after including dynamic cooling spot figure 19b, significant change in plastic strain behavior was obtained. The plastic strain at the centerline became lower than that at (2.5mm), it is clear that the overall plastic strain magnitude were minimized due to the used technique.

The minimization behavior refers to the complex tensioning effect based on the temperature topography. Moreover, due to the surrounding hot material, the temperature increased again behind the trailing cooling spot, and some of strains is released or partial annealing process occurs. In practical welding, it is difficult to obtain constant temperature through thickness with respect to the time whatever it is thin. This non-homogeneity refers to the three heat transfer conditions which may occurs at the upper surface rather than at the lower surface, hence the temperature is still higher above. To characterize the change in plastic strain through the thickness, simulated result of 2.5 mm modeled welded titanium sheet is analyzed. However, when no backing used in welding, the cooling rate at upper surface is still more than at lower surface. Figure 20 reveals that the maximum plastic strain occurs at the upper surface but after trailing heat sink introduced figure 20b, all the plastic strain magnitude through the thickness became close to each other due to the process effects.



(a) (b)

Figure 19. Transient plastic strain: (a) in conventional welding; (b) in trailing heat sink.



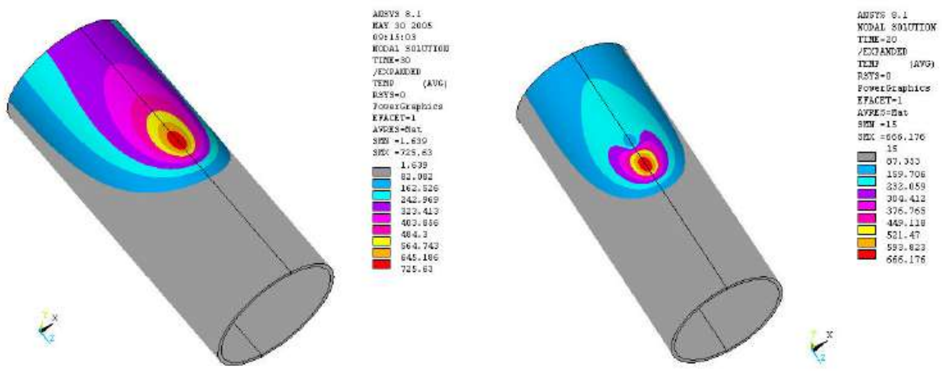
(a) (b)

Figure 20. Plastic strain through depth: (a) in conventional welding; (b) in trailing heat sink.

Moreover, the plastic strain magnitude at the upper surface is less or equal the strain at the lower surface which cause a balance in strains around the neutral axis. Therefore, balancing of forces occurred, and bending distortion minimized or can be eliminate depends on the degree of balancing. It is conclude that the reduction in overall longitudinal plastic strain magnitude is the source of longitudinal residual stress minimization. This results can be coupled with that obtained in Figs. 15b and 17b.

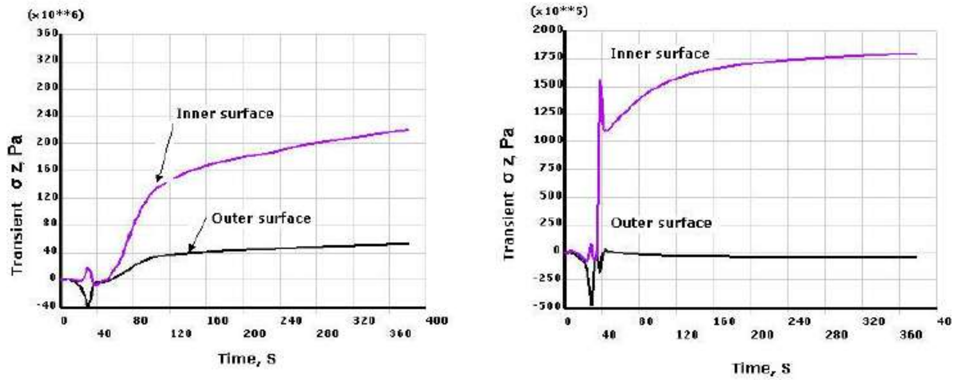
5.1.5. Effectiveness of the process on longitudinal welded cylinder model

In the cylindrical model the trailing heat sink considered to be moving behind the heat source at the bottom side. This consideration according to the results obtained in conventional welding which indicate that the maximum axial residual tensile stress occurred at inner the surface. The temperature distribution resulted from the thermal analysis of those conventional welding and that including trailing cooling spot welding process stated in the above sections are studied at welding time of 20s. Contour plots of the temperature distribution under the two conditions are shown in figure 21. Comparing the isotherms in both process results, the contours behind the heat source were shifted in the front of trailing cooling spot due to abnormal heat transfer process. The homogeneous heat transfer in conventional welding looses its stability after cooling spot was introduced. Moreover, the temperature magnitude in compressed contours was decreased due to the absorbed heat at high temperature behind the torch by the action of cooling. The effect of change in heat transfer mechanism on the distribution of axial residual stress can be seen in figure 22. the residual stress profile is completely different after introduced dynamic cooling spot. Because of the cylindrical shape is different from the flat from point of view the stiffness resistance from point of view, the reduction in final residual stress in cylindrical model is not sufficient when it is compared with the flat model which is still thicker.



(a) (b)

Figure 21. Temperature distribution at 20 s: (a) conventional welding; (b) trailing heat sink.



(a) (b)

Figure 22. Transient axial residual stress (a) conventional welding; (b) trailing heat sink.

5.1.6. Control of distortion by trailing cooling spot

As discussed in the previous sections, how the mechanism of heat transfer was changed after introducing heat sink. Therefore, it results in thermal tension that differs from what occurs in conventional one. The degree of tension depends on the position of the cooling spot with respect to the heat source, or the proper parameters as denoted in (Li et al, 2004, 2005; Soul et. al., 2006). All the above results show the minimization in longitudinal residual stress that refers to the decrease in responsible plastic strain. All of the previous parameters in addition of balancing stress and strain on the upper and under the neutral axis bring the elimination of the structure distortion as depicted in figure23 and figure 24.

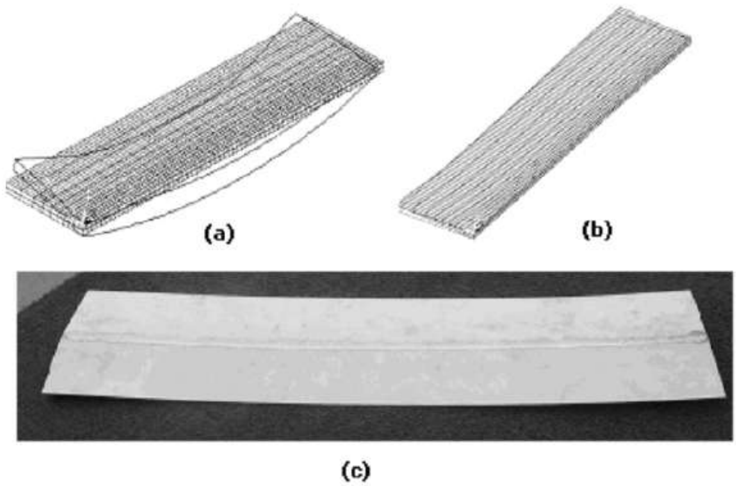


Figure 23. Final distortion: (a) conventional process; (b) with heat sink process; (c) welded experiment sample.

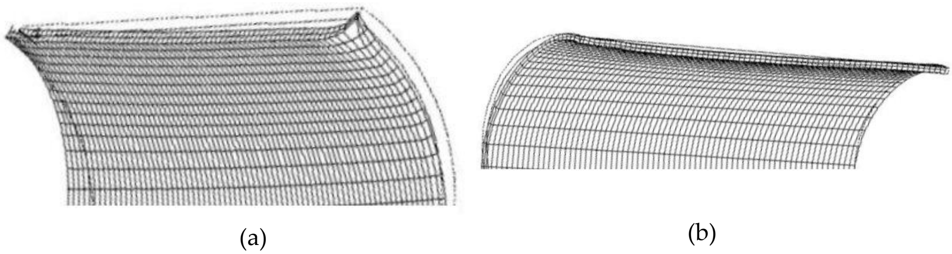


Figure 24. Final deformed model: (a) GTAW process; (b) DC-LSND process.

5.2. Optimization of thermal tensioning in welded shell element

There are many different methods of welding deformation and stress reduction. At the same time, the main principles are the same. Classification of the mitigation techniques helps to understand its performance capabilities and limitations. According to the basic mechanisms on which the techniques are based.

5.2.1. Effect of the laser heating spot on the temperature distribution

The Introducing of heating spot besides the welding reveals an increase in temperature at fusion zone and other near regions comparing with the conventional welding itself. So, to obtain the similar contours of temperature at welding line, the heat input from the torch were decreased about 19%. Figure 25 shows the predicted temperature distribution in conventional welding and moving heating spots respectively. The selected separated positions for laser spots were 34 mm from the centerline. It is clear, that the heating spot not only affects the temperature distribution in the front of heat source, but also enlarges the contours in transverse direction far way from centerline. This is due to the increasing of the total energy input with respect to small specimen width. However the contours change completely at the position of spots due to the concentration of laser heating.

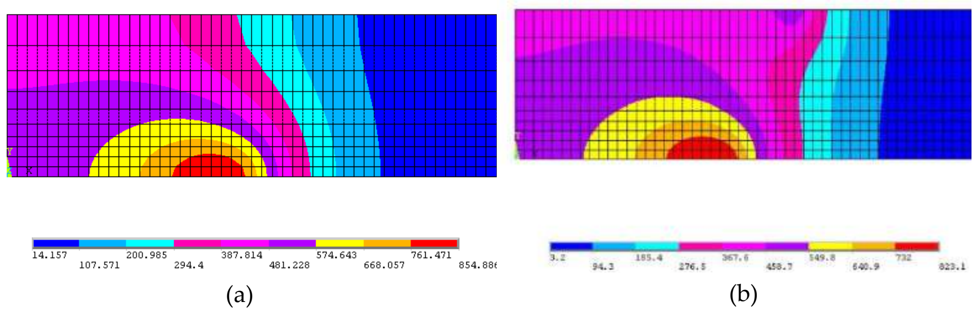
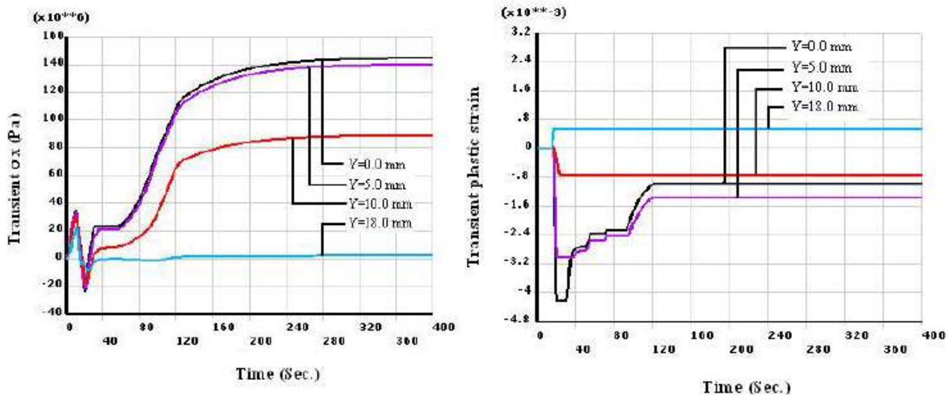


Figure 25. Temperature distribution contours: (a) conventional welding; (b) moving heat spot.

5.2.2. Effects of the laser heating spot on the stress and strain behavior

Longitudinal residual stresses and plastic strains in transverse direction with respect to the time are presented in figure 26. The analyzed points are taken at different distance from the centerline in the mid length of the model. The distance of heat spot from weld centerline is 25 mm. The tensile stress profile developed during cooling cycle show different behavior compared to the result obtained from the conventional welding figure 26a. However, the transient longitudinal residual stress stay constant during some period of time (~40s), Thus, at that time the heat source already switched off. This behavior is related to the effect of spot heating. The heated material by laser spot were expanded to the direction of welding centerline, in the same time the metal behind the torch vastly contracted, now there are two possibilities, first, if the material is heated for enough distance in transfer direction the contraction of welded material don’t meet the resistance from the heated material for mentioned period of time above, in the opposite of the conventional process were the cold material restrained the contraction. Second, when the material contacted at the welding line the heated material by spots expanded in the direction of welding line, hence the material may contracted without more tension due to the expanded material neighboring during the above mentioned period. Moreover the residual stress using this method still more than in cooling spot technique. Concerning the plastic strain behavior in this technique, the transient plastic strain result from laser heating spots reveals complicated profile too; the longitudinal plastic compressive strain is caused by the expansion of the heated material being constraint by the cooler material nearby.



(a) (a)

Figure 26. Simulated results in moving heating spots: (a) Transient residual stress; (b) Transient plastic strain

The rising of temperature far ways from zone induced by laser spots affects the material properties and decrease it is stiffness, hence the resistance of material to the weld metal contraction were reduced. Moreover the transient longitudinal plastic take long period of time to accomplished final magnitude due to increase of overall body temperature, and it's value less than from that obtained by trailing heat sink technique figure 17a, but the residual stress and distortion is still more. This phenomenon may refer to other strains results in transverse and through thickness direction, which need more details for their behavior under this process due to the complicated strain interaction in the three dimensional

5.2.3. *Processes parameters controlling distortion degree*

It is clear from the previous studies that any modifications in the longitudinal residual stress results from temperature modification or heat transfer enhancement. As what happen in the simulated techniques, and the main control on the twin problem is how the temperature topography looks like. However, the change of processes parameters will give changes in temperature topography. Therefore, different temperature topography generate different tensioning process or different strain interaction. According to the previous explanation, for the process optimization investigation of the effect of the distance between the heating spot and weld centerline on the cambering distortion magnitude was carried out. Figure 27 presents the degree of distortion obtained from computational results at different distance of the laser spot. The results show that the distortion increases as the distance increases. However, after introducing the heat sink process as depicted in figure 27b, the distortion may disappear and the calculated displacement is only 1.3 mm. The result is quite reasonable according to the minimized and balanced residual longitudinal stress and plastic strain or the balanced forces and moment which become insignificant to produce the curvature along welding line as mentioned in the previous sections. Moreover, the displacement in laser heating spot was reduced but still higher than that obtained in the cooling technique. At this point comparing both mitigation techniques, it can be concluded that at the same reduction of distortion, still the moving cooling spot more effective technique than thermal tensioning for residual stress minimization in thin element.

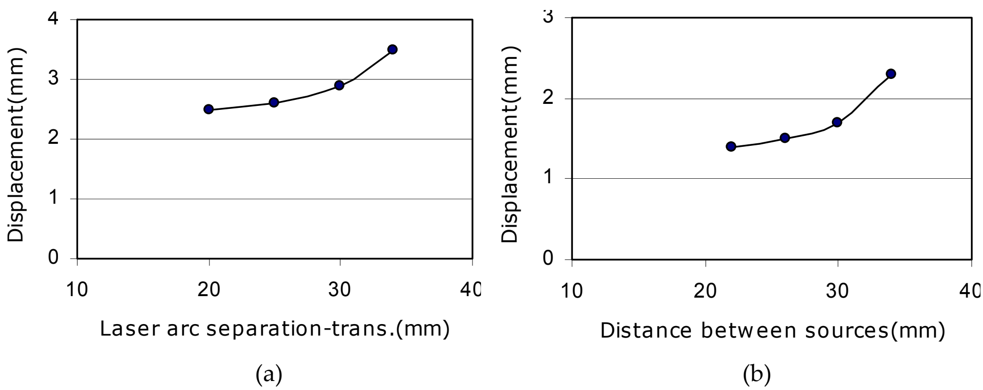


Figure 27. Parameters effects the processes performance: (a) heating spots; (b) cooling spot.

6. Conclusions

One of the major problems induced during welding of thin element structure are the twin Problem. Residual stresses reduce the performance of welded component when they have the same sense with the working stress in service. Other disadvantage of residual stress is promoting the stress corrosion cracking. Distortion from other side, impairs the structure appearance and causes misalignment during assemblies. During the years, many mitigating techniques are developed in literature to reduce the residual stress and elimination of distortion. In the end of last century, techniques introduced thermal tensioning or temperature modification were creative, that including (LSND) and heating techniques. When the dynamic action of these techniques applied, they became more suitable to approximate the solution of the problem, because it is dealing with temperature modification, and it is known that the temperature is the source of the problem. In this chapter, the two mentioned active mitigating techniques were investigated in dynamic action and correlated with each other. The main fields of interest for the investigation are temperature fields, longitudinal residual stress and strain in addition to the bending distortion. Atomized cooling water with heat transfer coefficient were proposed , also laser heating spot beside the torch with proper heat input were considered. The output results of this investigation summarized as following:

- The change of heat transfer enhancement produce temperature modification or different temperature topography.
- The modification of temperature distribution generate different tensioning inside the body, therefore new abnormal strain interaction in different direction.
- Due to complexity stiffness based-response for different shape, the transient stress behavior developed in the bead on plate model show different profile correlate with that in the cylinder model.
- One of the major advantages of FE optimization approach over welding trials was that the models enabled the transient stresses and strains during welding to be considered. This greatly simplified the understanding and optimization process.
- During the DC-LSND process, the thermal history for metal in the weld centerline and at closed region passed more than one thermal cycles, as (heating-cooling-heating-cooling) and the duration time for staying the metal at high temperature is shorter than in conventional process. This is found to reveal different stress and strain history profiles at this region compared with the profiles obtained in the conventional process.
- The significant reduction in the residual stress obtained at the top of surface and the maximum stress at the middle of the thickness. This helps to balance the shrinkage forces above and under the weld metal center, and distortion can be prevented
- The suggested techniques gave a reduction of the peak residual stress. Optimization of both DC-LSND and thermal tensioning can give similar reduction or elimination of bending distortion of such used models thickness. At this optimization still the DC-LSND method has a better effectiveness on longitudinal residual stress minimization

Future work analysis need for strains in other (Y and Z) directions, to see it is behavior after applying the above techniques and correlate with the longitudinal direction.

Author details

Farag Soul
University of Elmergeb, Faculty of Engineering, Libya

Hamdy Nada
University of Menoufia, Faculty of Engineering, Egypt

7. References

Withers P. J. & Bhadeshia H. (2000), Residual Stress – II: Nature and Origins, *Mat. Sci. Tech*. Rudd C. O. (199), Residual stresses and their measurement, *Proc. 1st Int. Conf. on Quenching & Control of Distortion, Chicago*, Illinois, USA, 193-198.

Borland D. W.(1994), Residual stress measurement – Methods, limitations and significance, *Proc. 2nd Australian Int. Conf. Surface Engineering*, Adelaide, 114-121.

Kandil F. A. et. al. (2001); A Review Of Residual Stress Measurement Methods -*A Guide To Technique Selection*, NPL Report MATC(A)O4.

Brien E. O. (2000), Residual Stress – Friend and Foe: *A Civil Aircraft Perspective*, ICRS-6, Oxford, UK, 10-12 July, vol. 1, 13-21.

Evans E. B.(1986), "Residual stresses in processing." *Encyclopaedia of Materials Science & Engineering*, Vol. 6, 4183-4188

Littmann W. E.(1964), Measurement and significance of residual macrostress in steel", SAE 793A, *Proc. of the Automatic Eng. Cong*., Detroit, MI, 13-17.

Airbus 2000, http://www.airbus.com /gmf99_1.html

Guan Q. (1999), A survey of development in welding stress and distortion controlling in aerospace manufacturing engineering in china *Welding in the world*, Pergamon press Ltd, 43(1).

Hansen B.(1968) , Welding stresses and deformation. *Svejse Copenhagen* report no. 68.07 edition, 1968. in Danish.

Okerblom N. O. (1955), *The Calculations Of Deformations Of Welded Metal Structures*. Mashgiz, Moscow-Leningrad, 1955.

Puchaicela J. (1997), Control of distortion of welded steel structures, *Welding J*., pp.49-52.

Masubuchi K. (1980), *Analysis of welded structures*, Pergamon Press, London.

Radaj R. (1992), *Heat Effects of Welding*, Spring-Verlag.

Goldak J. et. al. (1992), Coupling heat transfer, microstructure evolution and thermal stress analysis in weld mechanics, *Proc. of IUTAM Mechanical effects of welding*, Springer Verlag, Berlin.

Lindgren L. (2001), Finite element modeling and simulation of welding part 1: Increased Complexity, *Journal of thermal stress*, Vol. 24, pp 141-192.

Lindgren L. (2001), Finite element modeling and simulation of welding part 2: Improved materials modeling, *Journal of Thermal Stresses*, Vol. 24, pp 195-231.

Lindgren L. (2001), Finite element modeling and simulation of welding part 3: Efficiency and Integration, *Journal of thermal stress*, Vol. 24, 2001, pp 305-334.

Tall L. (1991), Residual Stresses In Welded Plates--A Theoretical Study, *Weld. J.,* Vol 43 (No. 1), P 10s-23s

Hibbit H.D. & Marcel P.V. (1972), A Numerical Thermomechanical Model For The Welding And Subsequent Loading of A Fabricated Structure, Nsrdc Contract No. N00014-67-A-019-0006, Tech. Rep. No. 2, Department Of The Navy.

Muraki T. et. al. (1975), Analysis Of Thermal Stresses And Metal Movement During Welding-- Part I: Analytical Study; Part Ii: Comparison Of Experimental Data And Analytical Results, *J. Eng. Mater. Technol. (Trans. Asme)*, 1975, P 81-84, 85-91

Rybicki E.F. et al. *(1978),* A Finite-Element Model For Residual Stresses And Deflection In Girth-Butt Welded Pipes, *J. Pressure Vessel Technol. (Trans. Asme),* Vol 100, P 256-262

Courant R. (1943), Variation Methods For The Solution Of Equilibrium And Vibration, *Bulletin Of The American Mathematical Society*, 49. Pp 1-23.

Dong P. et al. (1998), Residual Stress Analysis Of A Multi-Pass Girth Weld, *Asme Pvp-Fatigue, Fracture, And Residual Stresses*, 373, Pp. 421-431.

Feng Z. et al. (1996), A Finite Element Model For Residual Stress In Repair Welds, *Asme Pvp-Residual Stresses In Design, Fabrication, Assessment And Repair*, 327, Pp. 119-125.

Karlsson L. et al. (1989), Residual Stresses And Deformatins In A Welded Thin-Walled Pipe, *Asme Pvp- Weld Residual Stress Andplastic Deformation*, 173, Pp. 7-10.

Grong Q. & Myhr O. R. (1993), Modelling Of The Strength Distribution In The Heat Affected Zone Of 6082-T6 Aluminum Weldments" Mathematical Modelling Of Weld Phenomena, The Institute Of Materials, London, Pp. 300-311.

Voss O. et. al. (1999), Consideration Of Microstructure Transformations In The Calculation Of Residual Stresses And Distortion Of Larger Weldments, *Mathematical Modeling Of Weld Phenomena 4,* The Institute Of Materials, Pp584-596.

Tenga T. L. & Linb C. (1998), Effect Of Welding Conditions On Residual Stresses Due To Butt Welds, *International Journal Of Pressure Vessels And Piping* 75, 857–864.

Li J. et. al. (2004), Studies On Characteristics Of Temperature Field During Gtaw With A Trailing Heat Sink For Titanium Sheet, *J. Of Mater. Proc.Tech*. 147,328–335.

Karlsson R. I. & Josefson B. L. (1990), Three-Dimensional Finite Element Analysis Of Temperatures And Stresses In A Single-Pass Butt-Welded Pipe, Asme-*Journal Of Pressure Vessel Technology*, 112, Pp. 76-84.

Junek L. et. al. (1999), Residual Stress Simulation Incorporating Weld HAZ Microstructure, *Asme Pvp- Fracture, Fatigue And Weld Residual Stress*, 393, Pp. 179-192.

Vincent Y. et. al. (1999), On The Validation Of The Models Related To The Prevision Of The Haz Behavior, *Asme Pvp-Fracture, Fatigue And Weld Residual Stress*, 393, Pp. 193-200.

Dubois D. et. al. (1984), Numerical Simulation Of A Welding Operation: Calculation Of Residual Stresses And Hydrogen Diffusion, *Asme Fifth International Conference On Pressure Vessel Technology, Materials And Manufacturing*, Ii, San Francisco, Ca, Pp. 1210 - 1238

Gatovskii K. M. (1980) & Karkhin V. A. (1980), *Theory Of Welding Stresses And Deformations*, Leningrad Shipbuilding Institute, *Rus.*

Withers P. J. & Bhadeshia H. K. (20000), Residual Stress, Measurement Techniques, *Mat. Sci. Tech*., 2000.

Borland D. W. (1994), Residual Stress Measurement Methods, Limitations And Significance, *Proc. 2nd Australian Int. Conf. Surface Engineering*, Adelaide, March 1994, 114-121.

Noyan I. C. , Defining Residual Stresses In Thin Film Structures", *Advances In X-Ray Analysis*, Vol.35, 461-473.

Guan Q. et al. (1986), Transient Welding Strain Measurement By Moire Technique. *Transactions Of Chinese Welding Society*, 7(1)

Artem P.(2001). Ph.D thesis, computer simulation of residual stress and distortion of thick plates in multi-electrode submerged arc welding.

Soul F. & Yanhua Z.(2005), Numerical Study Of Residual Stress Field During Arc Welding With Trailing Heat Sink. *Fluid Structure Interaction And Moving Boundary Problem*, *Transaction Engineering Science*,Vol.84,683-692, Witpress.

Soul F. & Yanhua Z. (2005), Thermo-Mechanical Analysis of Longitudinal Welded Aluminum Alloy Cylinder Using 3D FEM, *The Fifth International Forum on Aluminum Ships*, Tokyo.

Huang T. D. et. al. (2004), Fabrication And Engineering Technology For Lightweight Ship Structures, Part 1: Distortions And Residual Stresses In Panel Fabrication , *Journal of Ship Production*, 20(1), P.43-59,

Andersen L. F. (2000), Residual Stress And Deformations In Steel Structures - *PhD, Technical University Of Denmark, Department Of Naval Architecture And Offshore Engineering*.

Conrady C. & Dull R. (1995), Prediction Techniques For Distortion Control, *Report-Edison Welding Institute*.

Michaleris P. et al. (1999), Minimization Of Welding Residual Stress And Distortion In Large Structures. *Welding Journal, Welding Research Supplement*, 361-366.

Michaleris P. & Sun X. (1997), Finite Element Analysis Of Thermal Tensioning Techniques Mitigating Weld Buckling Distortion. *Welding Journal*,Vol.76, 451-457.

Conrardy C. & Dull R. (1997), Control Of Distortion In Thin Ship Panels. *Journal Of Ship Production*, Vol.13, 83-92.

Guan Q. et a (1994) . Low Stress No-Distortion (Lsnd)Welding A New Technique For Thin Materials. Iiw Doc. X-1190-89, *Welding In The World*, Vol.33.

Guan Q. et al. (1993), Dynamically Controlled Low Stress No-Distortion Technology And Its Apparatus. *Chinese Patent* 9310690.8.

Guan Q. et al. (1996), Low Stress No Distortion Welding For Aerospace Structures. *China Welding,* Vol.5,1-9.

Li J. et al (2004). Stress And Distortion Mitigation Technique For Welding Titanium Alloy Thin Sheet. *Sci.Technol. Weld. Join.,* Vol.9(5),451-45

Soul F. & Yanhua Z. (2006), Numerical Study On Stress Induced Cambering Distortion And Its Mitigation In Welded Titanium Alloy Sheet. *J. Sci. Technol. Weld. Join.*, Uk, Vol.11, 688- 693.

Soul1 F. et. al. (2010), Residual Stress Correlation In Two Different Mitigation Techniques Using FEA, *Advanced Materials Research Vols. 83-86 (2010) Pp 1254-1261*

Pavelic V. et al. (1969), Experimental And Computed Temperature Histories In Gas Tungsten Arc Welding, *Welding Journal Research Supplement*, 48, 295s-305s.

Goldak J. et. al. (1984), A New Finite Element Model For Welding Heat Sources, *Metallurgical Transactions B*, Vol. 15b, 1984, P 229-305.

E.M. van der Aa(2007), PhD thesis, Delft University of Technology

Chapter 11

Analytical Model for Estimating the Amount of Heat Generated During Friction Stir Welding: Application on Plates Made of Aluminium Alloy 2024 T351

Miroslav Mijajlović and Dragan Milčić

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/53563

1. Introduction

Two decades after its invention, friction stir welding (FSW) has the status of a novel and promising welding technique that has not yet been fully described, investigated or utilized in industry [1]. It is a process of joining two metals/alloys, with relatively simple equipment, that initializes complex physical processes in/around the parts that are being joined, resulting in the monolith structure of these parts.

FSW is a patented [2-4] solid state welding technique that needs no consumables or shielding gasses (except in some special cases) for the creation of a welded joint. Welding is performed with a specialized, usually cylindrical, welding tool which mounts into the spindle of a machine that can rotate the tool around its axis (Fig. 1, a).

During the last few years, FSW has been standardized for the welding of aluminium [6, 7] and its principle of operation has been fully described for single welding tool application [7]. Welding parts (recognized as a base metal, workpieces) mount on the backing plate (anvil) [7] and rigidly clamp in such a manner that abutting or dilatation of the base metal is prevented. The rotating welding tool is inserted into the base metal by (axial) force at a start point on the joint line and travels along it [7]. While it travels, the welding tool “machines” material in the base metal in the zone near the traveling path and confines it in the working zone in a mixture that is deposed beside the welding tool as a weld. When the welding length is reached, the welding tool retracts from the base metal and welding is completed.

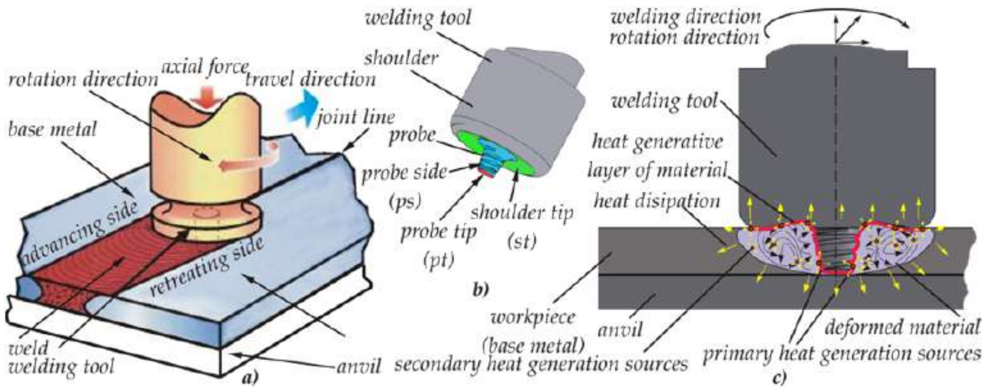


Figure 1. Schematic of FSW: a) principle of operation, b) welding tool, c) schematic of heat generation during FSW [5]

2. Heat generation during FSW

During FSW, the welding tool (Fig. 1, b) slides over the base metal, stirring, deforming, and mixing it. The base metal, anvil, and welding tool increase in temperature due the influence of the welding tool on the base metal. This change in temperature is a sure sign of heat generation caused by frictional contact that takes place during the welding process.

Thermodynamics recognizes several different types of heat transfer from a hotter to a colder body [8, 9]. Both the heat transfer and heat as an energy type have been investigated for a number of cases. However, a challenge appears when heat generation occurs as a result of the contact of two bodies. Heat generation is a process of energy transformation that takes place when one form of energy transforms into heat [8, 9]. This transformation is complex and it depends on the nature of the contact between the bodies, delivered loads, what materials are in contact, the surroundings, movement of the bodies etc. [9, 10]. Heat generated during FSW is the product of the transformation of mechanical energy delivered to the base metal by a welding tool. The transition of mechanical energy from the welding tool to the base metal happens between these bodies [10, 11]. Understanding that heat generates when a metallic body receives an "energy boost" and recognizing the dominant physical processes involved in the contact between the welding tool and base metal (friction, wear, adhesion, deformation, recrystallization of material, etc. [5, 11]), some might say that heat during FSW is primarily generated due to friction and deformation processes that appear during FSW [11]. Friction processes always appear in boundary layers and, therefore, the frictional heat generates in the boundary heat generative layer. Deformational heat appears wherever the deformation of base metal appears: in the boundary layer as well as in zone of deformed material around the welding tool [5, 11-13]. Heat generates due to other processes (e.g. infrared radiation, vibrations) but at a much lower intensity than results from friction and deformation.

Mechanical energy primarily transforms into heat when the welding tool contacts the base metal, while secondarily it transforms in deformed material around the welding tool (Fig. 1, c). That is the reason why the heat generative layer is the primary heat generation source while deformed material around the welding tool is the volume of material where secondary heat generation sources appear [5]. Understanding the process of heat generation and estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW are complex and challenging tasks that requires a multidisciplinary approach. Estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW aids in understanding the appearance of thermal stress and structural changes in base metals inflicted by heat. Understanding the heat generation in FSW might help in selecting the optimal technological parameters of FSW (e.g. rotation frequency, travel rate) from aspects of minimal thermal stresses and deformations, energy consumption etc.

2.1. State of the art

Heat generation and heat transfer became a topic of research related to FSW during mid 1990s. However, understanding heat generation and heat transfer processes within FSW requires understanding several other physical processes: material flow around the welding tool, contact pressure inflicted by the welding tool, the friction coefficient, wear, change of thermo-mechanical properties and heat transfer coefficients etc. Nandan et al. [14] gives a review of thermal processes in FSW, from the invention of FSW until 2008.

Chao and Qi [15] have introduced a 3-D heat transfer model in FSW with constant heat input. Constant heat flux at the shoulder of the welding tool, constant contact pressure and pure Coulomb’s friction law for estimating shear stress, and heat were the main assumptions of the model. The experimental welding of plates made of aluminum alloy 6061-T6 was performed and the temperature history of welding plates was estimated. Heat input was adjusted (“trial and error” principle) until numerical and experimental temperatures were matched. As such, this model is the first model developed for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW. Frigaard and Grong [16] presented a process model for heat flow in FSW, where they assumed that heat is generated only by friction on the tops of shoulders and probes. Heat input and friction coefficients were adjusted during the welding process to keep the calculated temperature below the melting point of base metal material. Heat input was a moving heat source with a linear distribution of heat flux at the contact surface. Gould and Feng [17], and later Russell and Shercliff [18], have applied the Rosenthal equation [19] for describing the moving heat source, heat flux distribution, and heat transport within base metals, welding tools and the surrounding area. Models consider friction heat only at the shoulder and use a finite difference method for a numerical solution of the heat equation. Russell and Shercliff [18] based the heat generation on a constant friction stress equal to the shear yield stress at elevated temperature, which is set to 5% of the yield stress at room temperature. The heat input is a pure point or line source. Colegrove et al. [20] have used an advanced analytical estimation of the heat generation on the welding tool with a threaded probe to estimate the heat generation distribution. The results show that the fraction of heat generated by the probe is about 20% of the total amount. Shercliff and Colegrove [21] developed a material flow model that investigates the influence of threads on the probe on material flow. An advanced viscous material model is introduced and the influence of different contact conditions prescribed as the boundary condition is analyzed. A thorough presentation of analytical estimates of the heat generation in FSW and influence of material flow on heat generation is given, as well. Khandkar et al. [22] introduced a torque based heat input model where experimentally estimated torque is a heat source. Khandkar modeled advanced heat transfer within the FSW process with frictional and deformational heat input into the process. Song and Kovačević [23] investigated the influence of the preheating period on the temperature fields in FSW. A sliding condition of the welding tool over the base metal was assumed and an effective friction coefficient and experimental plunge force are input into the heat source expression. Schmidt and Hattel [12] have defined an analytical model for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW that recognizes the shoulder and the probe of the welding tool as heat sources and concludes that about 89% of heat is generated at the shoulder. Heat has friction and deformation components and the total heat is a sum of both with influence of the contact state variable [12, 24]. The effective value of the friction coefficient was used in calculations. Reliability of the previously proposed ideas and principles of heat generation were summarized by Nandan et al. [25]. Nandan has performed FSW of dissimilar aluminum alloys and his results have shown that a constant state variable (also referred as an extent of slip) gives values close to sticking.

Further advances in heat generation and modeling included finite element analysis (FEA) in FSW. Ulysse [26] presented a 3-D visco-plastic FEA model using the commercial software FIDAP. The heat generation was determined to be a product of the effective stress and the effective strain-rate. Results show that the model consistently over predicted the measured temperatures probably from an inadequate representation of the constitutive behavior of the material used in FSW. Steuwer et al. [27] used the experimentally observed mechanical power as input in the model. The influence of tool loads on residual stresses was investigated. Chao et al. [28] recognizes two boundary value problems in heat transfer: heat transfer in the welding tool as steady state while considering heat transfer within workpieces as transient. The amount of the heat that flows to the tool dictates the life of the tool and the capability of the tool in the joining process. In discussions, it is shown that the majority of the heat generated from the friction, about 95%, is transferred into the workpiece and only 5% flows into the tool and the fraction of the rate of plastic work – deformation, dissipated as heat is about 80%. Heurtier et al. [29] presented a 3-D model based on the fluid-velocity fields where the tool shoulder and the plastic strain of base material near the welding tool were heat sources. The model has shown good agreement regarding the numerical and experimental results. Santiago et al. [30] introduced a model with rigid and visco-plastic materials in which the plates move towards the rotating tool and the material flow at the interface is specified as a boundary condition. The results estimated from the model correspond to the steady state of the FSW process that has been proposed by Chao [28]. Schmidt [31] has adopted a fully coupled thermo-mechanical dynamic analysis model also aiming to achieve the steady welding state in ABAQUS/Explicit.

Colligan [32] gave a conceptual model that describes dominant parameters affecting heat generation including a detailed description of the existing literature and the principles of specific physical processes in FSW, e.g. friction coefficient. Kalya et al. [33] investigated torque, specific energy and temperature during FSW and gave a correlation between torque, angular frequency and travel rate. The conclusion was a simple correlation between the friction coefficient and mathematically modeled torque. Kumar et al. [34] proposed an experimental setup for estimating the friction coefficient for different contact pressures, temperatures and materials of workpieces. A number of results showed that the friction coefficient varies during FSW from 0.1 up to 4. Setup and the mathematical model are limitedly applicable due to the design of the setup, kinematical complexity of the FSW and approximations involved in the mathematical model. Colligan [35] has investigated the material flow around the welding tool using a tracer embed and "stop action" technique. The results gave deep insight in the material flow patterns, influence of the thread on material flow, influence of rotation direction, as well as some metallurgic and details about heat transport in the zone of the deformed material. Nandan et al. [36] gave some numerically estimated results about viscoplastic material flow, heat transport, viscosity changing and material deposition behind the welding tool. Ouyang and Kovačević [37] have shown that material flow is always dissimilar along the joint line when welding either similar or dissimilar materials. Material flow-patterns can be easily traced in the vortex-like microstructure known as the welding nugget. Material in the zone of the nugget suffers significant plastic deformation, thermal recrystallization and acts like a quasi heat source. Lorrain [13] has explained in detail the shear layer of material and material flow patterns around the unthreaded probe. The existence of the rotating layer in the material near the welding tool is pointed out and it is concluded that material flow is significantly lower when a welding tool without threads is used. Lack of material flow had no influence of the strength of the weld.

2.2. Analytical model for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW

Heat generation is an unavoidable process following the friction stir weld-creation process. Since FSW is a welding procedure that uses a welding tool as an initiator of the joining process of workpieces, the welding tool delivers activation energy [38, 39] to workpieces and the joining of the workpieces is achieved while heat generates.

This study presents an analytical model for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW [5]. The model recognizes geometrical, kinematic, physical and energetic possibilities of heat generation during FSW, recognizes dominant parameters affecting the heat generation process and uses them to estimate how much mechanical power is transformed into heat. Existing models for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW [12, 15, 17, 20, 22, 23, 25, 26] recognize many parameters affecting the heat generation process. Some of them are topology and geometry of the welding tool, technological parameters (tool rotation speed n [rpm] or angular velocity ω [rad/s], travel rate v_x [mm/s], tilt angle, etc.), loading (axial force F_z, torque M_t etc.), physical phases of FSW, duration of the welding procedure, duration of certain phases of the welding procedure, etc. Furthermore, these parameters initiate other parameters that affect heat generation process: friction coefficient μ, contact pressure p, shear stress τ, temperature T, mechanism of heat generation (defined over e.g. the constant state variable δ), etc. However, presented models simplify FSW assuming e.g. constant friction coefficient [12], constant contact pressure [15], pure frictional heat generation [12, 15, 17, 23], heat generation only due work of the largest part of the welding tool [20, 23, 25, 26], no heat generation when temperature in the workpiece reaches melting point [22, 23] etc. Such assumptions are affecting the usability and the precision of results derived by developed models.

The model presented here considers many of the previously analyzed parameters. Special care in the model is given, beside estimating values of parameters, to the mutual dependences between parameters and their influence on the heat generation process. Such dependences are numerous and it is not possible to recognize all of them. Furthermore, many of them are too difficult to be explained analytically and require the numeric calculations and the experimental estimation/validation. These are the reasons why analytical model considers only the most important dependences (Fig. 2, a).

Because of the nature of this approach, the proposed analytical model relies on three major elements: analytic algebra, numerical calculations and experimental data [5]. The analytic algebra is based on existing research and results but includes some improvements. The algebra is developed for a complete welding tool, involves more dominant parameters in the calculations than in previous models, recognizes more dependencies between parameters, neglects fewer parameters and has a shorter calculation time. One of the improvements of the algebra is the implementation of a numerical material flow model with respect to energy balance in workpieces. The numerical calculations use adequate numerical procedures to give good precision and convergence during a short-computing time.

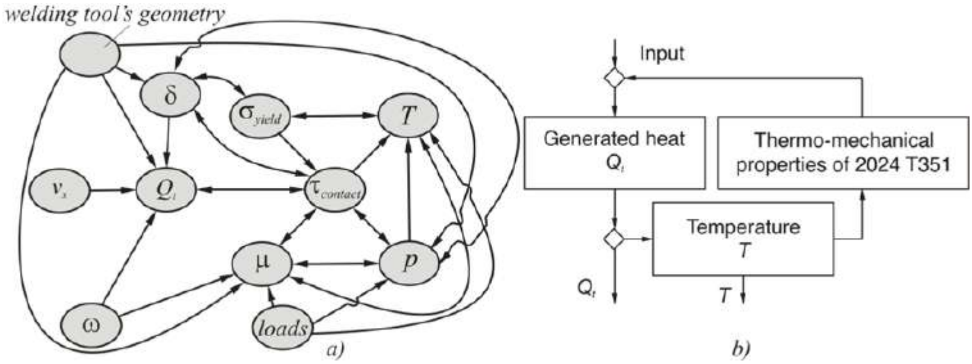


Figure 2. a) Schematic of mutual dependencies between generated heat and dominant influencing parameters [5, 44], b) Partial algorithm for generated heat estimation [5]

The analytical model gives precise results only if experimentally estimated parameters are involved in the model. Furthermore, verification of the analytical model can be done by comparing the results from analytical model with experimentally estimated results. Experimental data is obtained during the welding of the workpieces made of Al alloy 2024 T351 and is used as input and for verification of the analytical model. Mutual dependences of the parameters affecting the heat generation are derived in iterative work regime of the analytical model: time and space are discretized and conditions numerically estimated for the present discretized moment of time are the input for the future discretized moment of time (Fig. 2, b).

Since welding tool is the main initiator of the welding and the heat generation process, it s important to analyze the welding tool and its influence on workpieces as well as the physical engagement of the welding tool while welding.

2.2.1. Active surfaces, active surfaces engagement and physical phases of the FSW process

A number of different types of welding tools have been introduced from 1992 until the present [1, 40, 41]. They differ in shape, dimension, mechanical properties etc., and every tool is applicable to a specific material and limitedly applicable to some others. However, all welding tools have the same basics: they consist of at least one shoulder carrying at least one probe directly involved in welding. Recently advanced bobbin tools [7] have appeared when the welding tool has two shoulders. No matter how complex or simple the welding tool is, a limited portion of the welding tool is in constant contact with the base metal and performs the welding. The welding contact region (WCR) on the welding tool consists of three areas called the active surfaces of the welding tool (ASWT). There are always three of them: probe tip (pt), probe side (ps) and shoulder tip (st) (Fig. 1, b). Complete welding and all physical processes following it appear on these surfaces or close to them [5]. Probe tip is usually the smallest ASWT located at the top of the probe. It can be flat, curved or flanged, and rounded at the corner where it connects with the probe side. The probe side is cylindrical or conned ASWT sharing the same rotational axis with the probe tip. The area of the probe side is enlarged by various threads or flanges that help in more intensive mixing of material into the weld [41]. The root of the probe side connects with the shoulder. The shoulder tip is the largest ASWT, usually flat or curved in a manner that creates a "reservoir" for flashed material that come from the workpieces. It is confined to the top surface of the weld and has a role in imperfection-free weld creation [11].

At the beginning of the FSW process, the welding tool is positioned above the workpieces and the rotation axis of the welding tool is (nearly) perpendicular to the joint line.

After positioning, the welding tool starts to rotate at a constant rate (n revolutions per minute, angular velocity of ω [rad/sec]) and slowly plunges into the workpieces in the direction of the $-z$-axis. That is the start of the welding process starts $t=t_0$. Plunging stops when the plunging depth is reached ($t=t_1$, duration of the plunging is $t_{pl}=t_1-t_0$). The plunging depth is equal to the height of the workpieces or slightly smaller and it is achieved at a constant travel rate of the welding tool of v_z. The welding tool continues to rotate and dwells until $t=t_2$. During this time period ($t_{dw1}=t_2-t_1$) the workpiece material is being prepared for the welding: it heats and softens in the area near the welding tool. Afterwards the welding tool begins a translational movement along the joint line (x-axis) at a constant travel rate of v_x. The rotation and translation of the welding tool make the workpiece material (near the welding tool) deform, stick and mix into a monolith composition (weld) that is deposed in the area behind the welding tool. Movement of the welding tool along the joint line lasts until the welding length l is reached, at t=t_3. This period (t_w=t_3-t_2) is the productive phase of the welding process. Translation of the welding tool stops and the tool dwells at the end point until t=t_4 (t_{dw2}=t_4-t_3). The welding tool then moves in z direction and leaves the weld and workpieces. When the welding tool is completely removed from the workpieces (t=t_5, t_{po}=t_5-t_4) the welding process is over. The physical phases of FSW are shown in Fig. 3. In certain circumstances, dwelling can be excluded from the welding process, however, a full FSW process consist of the plunging phase (t_0 to t_1), first dwelling phase (t_1 to t_2), welding phase (t_2 to t_3), second dwelling phase (t_3 to t_4), and pulling out phase (t_4 to t_5) [5].

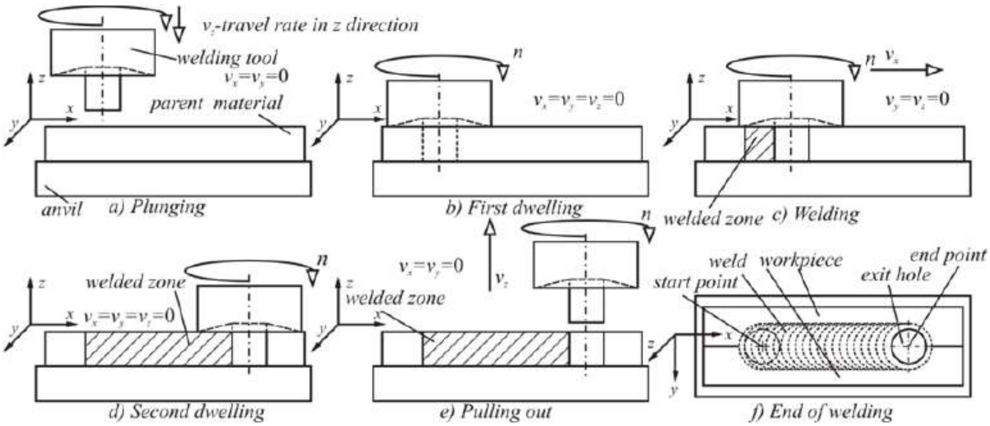


Figure 3. Physical phases of the friction stir welding process

Active surfaces of the welding tool are involved differently in the welding process during a complete cycle of welding, and engagement of every active surface varies during the cycle (Fig. 4, b). The probe tip is involved in welding from the beginning of the welding process until the end of the second dwelling phase (t_0 to t_4). Since the complete probe tip is fully involved in welding, engagement of the probe tip is considered as maximal. The probe side is involved in the welding process when intensive plunging appears (at $t_{pl'}$)[5, 42-46]. Engagement of the probe side rises with the rise of the probe plunge into workpieces. With the end of the plunging phase (t_1), engagement of the probe side reaches a certain value and keeps it during the complete first dwelling phase. When the welding phase starts (at t_2), engagement of the probe side rises toward maximal. This value is reached when the welding process stabilizes – travel rate (s) v_x reaches a steady value (at $t_{pl''}$) and it keeps constant until the end of the second dwelling phase (t_4) and afterwards it decreases. The shoulder tip is involved in the welding process before the end of the plunging phase (t_{st}) and it reaches full engagement when plunging stops (t_1) and keeps it until the end of the second dwelling phase.

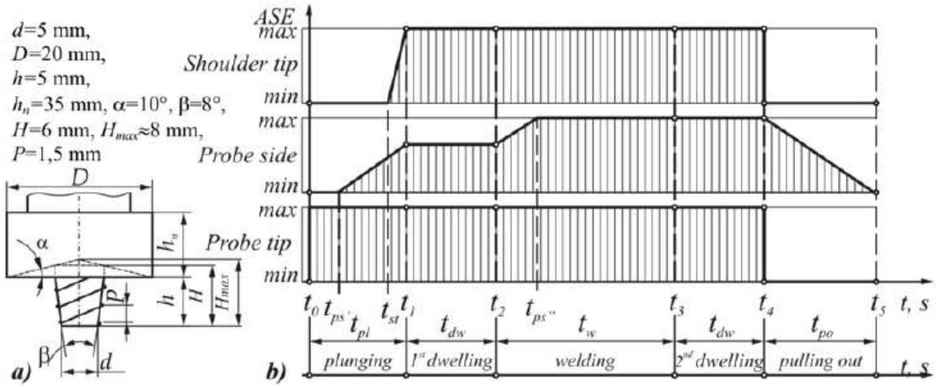


Figure 4. a) Welding tool used for experiments [5], b) Active surface engagement (ASE) [44]

2.2.2. *Estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW*

As previously mentioned, the heat generation process within FSW is a process that transforms mechanical energy (power) into heat. If η_Q represents a heat transformation [5], the total amount of heat generated during FSW - Q_t is a function of mechanical power P_a delivered to the welding tool:

$$Q_t = \eta_Q P_a \text{ [W]}, \quad \eta_Q = (0,\ 1) \tag{1}$$

The welding tool performs dual movement: translation (tr) and rotation (rot), and the total amount of generated heat is the sum of translation Q_{ttr} and rotational-generated heat Q_{trot}:

$$Q_t = Q_{ttr} + Q_{trot} = \cancelto{0}{Q_{ttr}} + Q_{trot} \tag{2}$$

The amount of translation heat is significantly smaller than amount of rotational heat [5, 12] and it can be neglected in analysis.

Heat is generated at or near the ASWT [5, 10, 12] and the total amount of generated heat is the sum of heat generated on every ASWT:

$$Q_t = Q_{pt} + Q_{ps} + Q_{st} \tag{3}$$

where Q_{pt} – the amount of heat generated at probe tip, Q_{ps} – the amount of heat generated at probe side and Q_{st} – the amount of heat generated at shoulder tip.

Simplifying the analysis and assuming that the total amount of mechanical power transforms into heat (η_Q =1), the total amount of heat becomes:

$$Q_t = Q_{tr} = P_a \tag{4}$$

Mechanical power depends on angular frequency ω and torque M_t and the total amount of generated heat is:

$$Q_t = \omega M_t \tag{5}$$

and

$$\mathrm{d}Q_t = \omega \mathrm{d}M_t = \omega r \mathrm{d}F_t = \omega r \tau_{cont} \mathrm{d}A \tag{6}$$

where $\mathrm{d}F_t$ - infinitesimal force, r - distance of a infinitesimal segment, $\mathrm{d}A$ - infinitesimal area, τ_{cont} - contact shear stress in material.

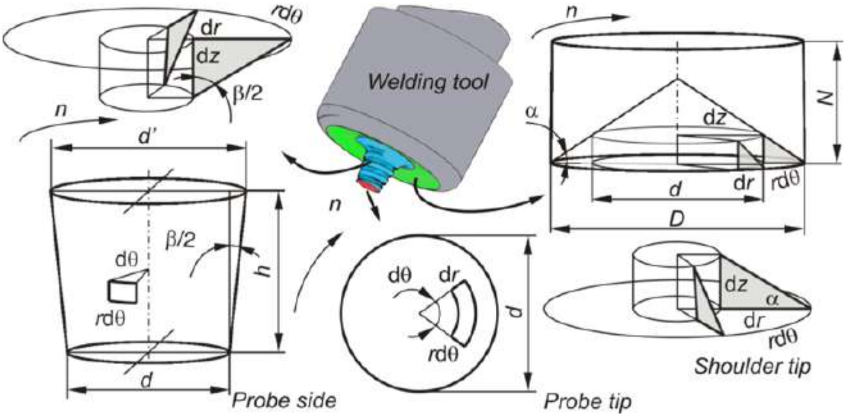


Figure 5. Active surfaces of the FSW welding tool

Different topologies of active surfaces result in different amounts of heat generated on them that give different expressions for estimating the amount of generated heat (Fig. 5). After the integration of Eq. 6, the expressions for the analytical amount of heat generated on every ASWT are, respectively:

$$Q_{pt} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{d/2} \omega r^2 \tau_{cont} \mathrm{d}\theta \mathrm{d}r = \frac{2}{3}\pi\omega\tau_{cont}\left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^3 \tag{7}$$

$$Q_{ps} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_0^{h} \omega \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 \tau_{cont}\left(1+\mathrm{tg}\frac{\beta}{2}\right)\mathrm{d}\theta \mathrm{d}z = 2\pi\omega\tau_{cont}\left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^2 h\left(1+\tan\frac{\beta}{2}\right) \tag{8}$$

$$Q_{st} = \int_0^{2\pi}\int_{d/2}^{D/2} \omega r^2 \tau_{cont}\left(1+\tan\alpha\right)\mathrm{d}r\mathrm{d}\theta = \frac{2}{3}\pi\omega\tau_{cont}\left[\left(\frac{D}{2}\right)^3 - \left(\frac{d}{2}\right)^3\right]\left(1+\tan\alpha\right) \tag{9}$$

where: d - nominal diameter of probe, D - diameter of shoulder, h - height of probe, α - cone angle of shoulder, β - cone angle of probe.

There is heat generated by friction (frictional heat) and heat generated by deformation (deformational heat) [5, 10-12]. Both types of heat appear simultaneously on every ASWT and both influence one another. Considering both types of heat and their mutual influence on one another, the total amount of heat generated on the probe tip, probe side, and shoulder tip are, respectively:

$$Q_{pt} = \left(1-\delta_{pt}\right)Q_{pt}^{fr} + \delta_{pt}Q_{pt}^{def} \tag{10}$$

$$Q_{st} = \left(1-\delta_{st}\right)Q_{st}^{fr} + \delta_{st}Q_{st}^{def} \tag{11}$$

$$Q_{ps} = \left(1-\delta_{ps}\right)Q_{ps}^{fr} + \delta_{ps}Q_{ps}^{def} \tag{12}$$

where heat indexed with *fr* represents frictional heat, heat indexed with *def* represents deformational heat, δ_{pt}, δ_{ps}, δ_{st} – a dimensionless contact state variable (extension of slip) at the probe tip, probe side and shoulder tip, respectively.

The frictional and deformational amount of heat in equations 10, 11 and 12 for every ASWT, using Equations 7, 8 and 9 with respect to the contact shear stress [12, 5] is:

$$\tau_{cont} = \begin{cases} \mu p \text{ , for frictional heat generation} \\ \tau_{yield} \text{ , for deformational heat generation} \end{cases} \tag{13}$$

where: μ-friction coefficient, p-contact pressure, τ_{yield}-shear yield strength of workpieces.

Beside geometrical dimensions of the welding tool (d, D, h, H, α, β, etc.) and technological parameters of the process (ω, v_x), all other parameters (μ, p, τ_{cont}, τ_{yield}, T, $F_z(t)$, $M_t(t)$, δ_{pt}, δ_{ps}, δ_{st}, t_1, t_2, $t_{ps'}$, t_{st}, etc.) necessary for the analytical model have to be estimated analytically, numerically, experimentally or combining the estimation procedures.

Estimating the friction coefficient: Due to the complex kinematics of the FSW, it is difficult to establish a straightforward procedure for estimating the friction coefficient in FSW. Previous research recognizes the friction coefficient as a variable in FSW, but neglects the variation and assumes a constant value throughout the complete cycle of FSW. Usually, the friction coefficient within FSW, for a welding tool made of steel and workpieces of aluminium is equal to 0.3-0.4 [12, 34].

Kumar et al. [34] proposed an experimental model for estimating the friction coefficient during FSW. The model is based on the experimental estimation of the momentum of friction and axial force, which are necessary for estimating the friction coefficient. Figure 6 gives the functional schematic of the measuring place for the estimation of the friction coefficient. To estimate the coefficient of friction during FSW, it is necessary to estimate the momentum of friction and axial force [5]. The momentum of friction is the multiplication of the tangential force $F_t(t)$ (measured at force sensor 10, Fig. 6) and length of the pole (friction pole) L_t. If the diameter of the welding tools probe in contact is $d(t)$ and axial force is $F_z(t)$, the friction coefficient μ can be estimated as [14, 34]:

$$\mu = \frac{3F_t(t)L_t}{F_z(t)d(t)},\ t_2 \geq t \geq t_0 \tag{14}$$

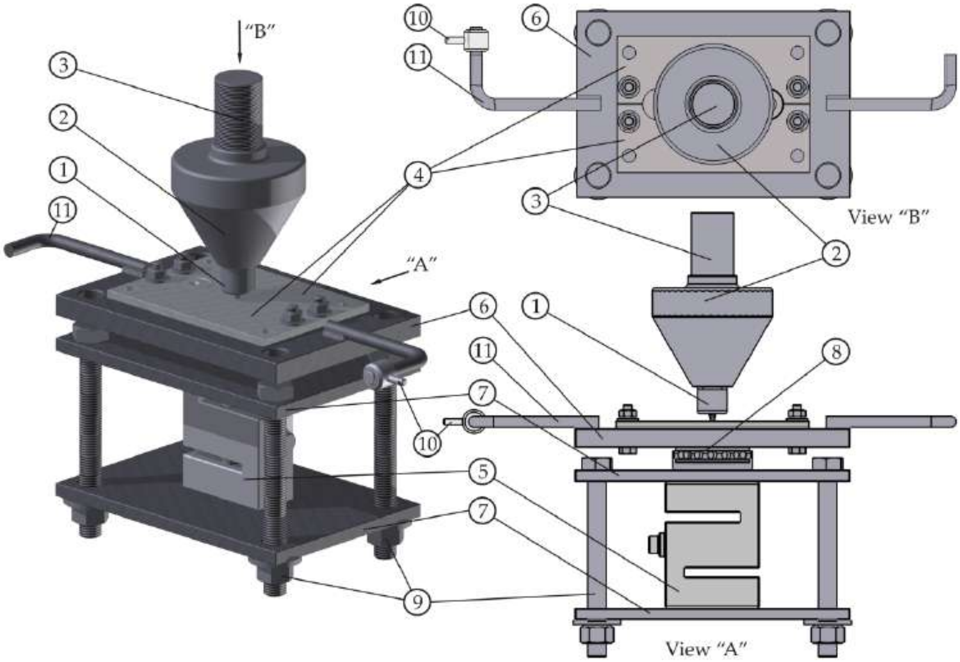


Figure 6. The measuring configuration for the momentum of friction and axial force: 1-welding tool, 2-welding tool's spindle, 3-shaft, 4-workpieces, 5-force sensor (axial force), 6-anvil, 7-backing plate, 8-ball bearing, 9-fundamental bolts, 10-force sensor (tangential force), 11-pole

The proposed model gives approximate results and only for the first two phases of FSW – plunging and first dwelling. The model is not applicable to the welding phase because the measuring system loses its stability when the welding tool travels along the join line and the momentum of friction cannot be measured [5]. Without proper model for estimating the friction coefficient during welding phase, friction coefficient has to be modeled. Friction coefficient used for the analytical model is estimated regarding the experimental results.

Estimating the contact pressure: Contact pressure p appears at the beginning of the plunging phase as a result of axial load $F_z(t)$ on the welding tool. Hertz [45] has proposed the first model for distributing contact pressure if a cylinder with a flat base punches into the plane, while Munisamy et al. [46] and Levytsky [47] have proposed models describing contact pressure distribution and heat generation when the axis of the cylinder is tilted.

Distribution of the contact pressure $p(r,t)$ delivered by the flat probe tip (Fig. 7, a) is [48]:

$$p(r,t) = \frac{2F_z(t)}{d\pi\sqrt{d^2 - 4r^2}},\ t_0 \le t < t_{st},\ 0 \le r \le \frac{d}{2} \tag{15}$$

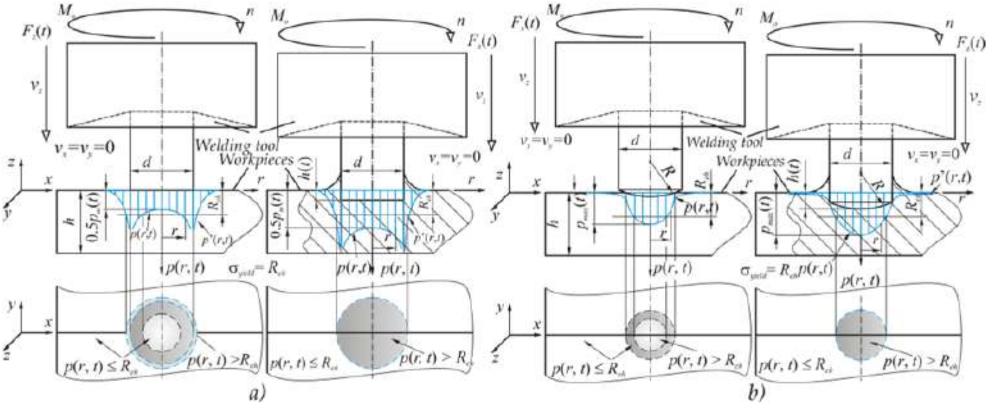


Figure 7. Contact pressure distribution for a) flat and b) spherical probe tips [4, 42, 43]

If the probe tip has a spherical shape, contact pressure is distributed (Fig. 7, b) as [48]:

$$p(r,t) = \frac{2}{\pi}\sqrt{d^2 - 4r^2}\sqrt[3]{\frac{3F_z(t)\bar{E}^2}{d^5}},\ t_0 \le t < t_{st},\ 0 \le r \le \frac{d}{2} \tag{16}$$

where $\bar{E}$ – represents the median modulus of elasticity estimated as:

$$\frac{1}{\bar{\bar{E}}} = \frac{1-\nu_{wt}{}^2}{E_{wt}} + \frac{1-\nu_{wp}{}^2}{E_{wp}} \tag{17}$$

and E_{wt} – the modulus of elasticity of welding tool's material, ν_{wt} – the Poison's ratio of welding tool material, E_{wp} – the modulus of elasticity of the workpieces's material, ν_{wp} – Poison's ratio of the workpieces's material.

For engineering practice median contact pressure $p_m(t)$ gives good results:

$$p \approx p_m(t) = \frac{4F_z(t)}{d(t)^2\pi},\ d(t) = d,\ t_0 \le t < t_{st},\ 0 \le r \le \frac{d}{2} \tag{18}$$

Research [5, 10, 42-44] has shown that contact pressure distributed to workpieces reaches different values in different zones – in some zones it overcomes the yield strength of workpieces, while in other zones it has values lower than the yield strength (Fig. 8, c).

Existence of such zones multiplies the resistance of workpieces and plunging and intensive plunging appears when [5, 10, 42-44]:

$$p_m(t) > k_{eh}\sigma_{yield}(T);\ k_{eh} = 1.5\text{-}3 \tag{19}$$

where: $\sigma_{yield}(T)$ – yield strength of workpieces in function dependence with temperature T.

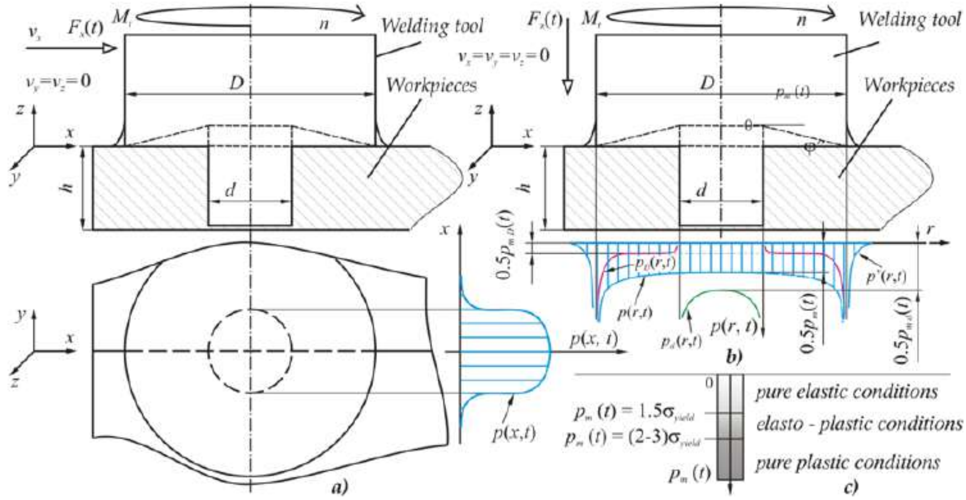


Figure 8. Contact pressure distribution [4, 42, 43]: a) probe side, b) shoulder tip, c) contact pressure defining contact conditions [5, 10, 42]

Contact pressure delivered by the shoulder tip is similarly distributed (Fig. 8, b) with a flat probe tip [5]. It appears smoothly since the shoulder tip is continuously involved in welding. Superposed contact pressure delivered by the probe tip and shoulder tip [5] is:

$$p \approx p_m(t) = \frac{4F_z(t)}{d(t)^2\pi}, \quad d(t)\begin{cases} \approx \dfrac{d-D}{t_{st}-t_1}\cdot(t-t_{st})+d, & t_{st} \le t < t_1 \\ = D, & t_1 \le t < t_4 \end{cases} \tag{20}$$

Contact pressure delivered by the probe side (Fig. 8, a) is a case of a modified "cylinder in cylinder" contact problem [45, 49]. Threads on the probe side increase the complexity of the analysis of the contact pressure distribution, however, with or without threads, median contact pressure on the probe side is:

$$p \approx p_m(t) \begin{cases} \approx \dfrac{F_x(t)}{dh}, & t_2 < t < t_3 \\ \approx 0, & t \le t_2,\ t \ge t_3 \end{cases} \tag{21}$$

where: $F_x(t)$ – force in welding direction, h – height of the probe/workpieces.

Estimating the tangential shear stress: When the deformation of workpieces appears, the rotational layer of the softened material travels around the welding tool [5, 12, 35, 37]. This is possible only if loads delivered by the welding tool inflict tangential stresses larger than the shear yield strength. The boundary value of such tangential shear (contact) stress, from von Misses yield criterion in uniaxial tension and pure shear [5, 12, 41, 42], is:

$$\tau_{cont} = \tau_{cont}(T) = \tau_{yield}(T,\varepsilon) = \sigma_{yield}(T,\varepsilon) / \sqrt{3} \tag{22}$$

where: $\tau_{cont}(T)$ – tangential contact stress in function of temperature T, $\tau_{yield}(T,\varepsilon)$ – shear yield strength of workpieces' material in function of temperature T and strain rate ε, $\sigma_{yield}(T,\varepsilon)$ – yield strength of workpieces' material in function of temperature T and strain rate ε. Yield strength of material is highly dependent on the temperature and strain rate, and the analysis of tangential stresses within FSW requires the full temperature and strain history in of the workpieces in a wide zone around the welding tool [5, 11, 14, 17, 23, 24, 27, 30]. However, analysis of heat generation in FSW can neglect the influence of strain on the decrease of yield strength and still maintain sufficient precision [12]. Neglecting is possible since the maximal temperatures of the material reach about 80% [38] of the melting temperature when strain has significant values due to near melting conditions in the material [18, 22]. Tangential contact shear stress is:

$$\tau_{cont} = \sigma_{yield}(T) / \sqrt{3} \tag{23}$$

where: $\sigma_{yield}(T)$ –yield strength of workpieces' material in function of temperature T. Thermo-mechanical properties of Al 2024 T351 are given in [5, 12, 50-53].

Estimating the contact state variable: The contact state variable or extent of slip is a parameter defining the influence of slipping in the heat generation process following the difference in the velocity of the welding tool and material, and relates frictional vs. deformational heat. It is obtained after curve fitting the experimental data regarding measured velocities [12, 14, 54, 55]:

$$\delta = \delta_{\min} + \left(1-\delta_{\min}\right)\left(1-e^{A_R}\right),\; A_R = -\delta_0 \frac{\omega r}{\omega_0 R} \tag{24}$$

where: δ_{min} – minimal measured slip, δ_0 – adjustable parameter depending on the material of the workpieces, R – maximal radius of the welding tool, ω_0 – normalized angular frequency of the welding tool (often the mid-point of the diapason of the measured angular frequencies).

Early works [12] considered the extent of slip as a single value for a complete welding tool. Experiments [5] have shown that the decomposition of the welding tool provides more precise results for the extent of slip if estimated for every ASWT separately. For example, when welding Al alloys with a steel welding tool with a threaded probe [12], with concern for the ASE of ASWT, the partial extent of slip is:

$$\delta_{pt} = \begin{cases} 0, & t_0 \le t < t_2,\; t_3 \le t < t_4 \\ \delta_{pt\ \min} + \left(1-\delta_{pt\ \min}\right)\left(1-e^{A_d}\right),\; A_d = -\delta_0 \dfrac{2\omega r}{\omega_0 d}, & t_2 \le t < t_3 \end{cases} \tag{25}$$

$$\delta_{ps} = \begin{cases} 0, & t_1 \le t < t_2,\; t_3 \le t < t_4 \\ \delta_{ps\ \min} + \left(1-\delta_{ps\ \min}\right)\left(1-e^{A_d}\right),\; A_d = -\delta_0 \dfrac{2\omega r}{\omega_0 d}, & t_{ps'} \le t < t_1,\; t_2 \le t < t_3 \end{cases} \tag{26}$$

$$\delta_{st} = \begin{cases} 0, & t_{st} > t \geq t_4 \\ \delta_{st\ \min} + \left(1 - \delta_{st\ \min}\right)\left(1 - e^{A_D}\right),\ A_D = -\delta_0 \dfrac{2\omega r}{\omega_0 D}, & t_{st} \leq t < t_4 \end{cases} \tag{27}$$

where: $\delta_{pt} = 0.1$, $\delta_{ps} = 0.2$, $\delta_{st} = 0.1$, $\delta_0 = 0\text{-}1$ from [5].

Estimating the temperature history of workpieces: Estimation of workpiece temperature requires knowing how much heat is generated during welding since heat influences temperature increase and it has to be done in an iterative regime . An iterative regime requires the discretization of time and space (Fig. 9, b), numeric calculations and significant computing time [5]. Temperature history of workpieces and welding tool can be estimated solving heat equations:

$$\rho_w c_w \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \lambda_w \left(\frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 T}{\partial z^2} \right) + q_v \quad \text{(for workpieces)} \tag{28}$$

$$\rho_{wt} c_{wt} \frac{\partial T}{\partial t} = \frac{\lambda_{wt}}{r} \frac{\partial}{\partial r}\left(r \frac{\partial T}{\partial r} \right) + \frac{\lambda_{wt}}{r^2} \cdot \frac{\partial}{\partial \varphi}\left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial \varphi} \right) + \lambda_{wt} \frac{\partial}{\partial z}\left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right) + q_v \quad \text{(for welding tool)} \tag{29}$$

where: ρ_w – density of the workpiece, c_w – specific heat capacity of the workpiece, λ_w – thermal conductivity of the workpiece, ρ_{wt} – density of the welding tool, c_{wt} – specific heat capacity of the welding tool, λ_{wt} – thermal conductivity of the welding tool.

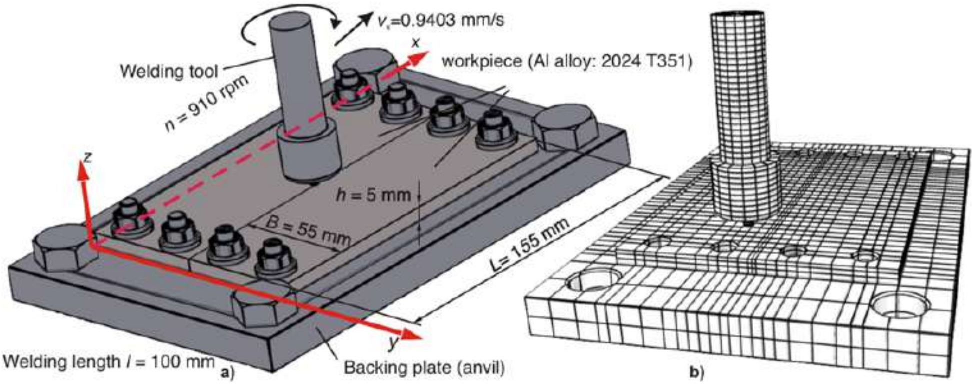


Figure 9. Workpieces, welding tool, bolts and anvil positioned for welding: a) realistic view with dimensions and some technological parameters used in experiment [5], b) discretized view (primarily and secondarily meshed with adaptive grid) [5]

Thermal energy generation source q_v is directly affected by generated heat Q_t and volume receiving generated heat V_t:

$$q_v = Q_t / V_t \tag{30}$$

Initial conditions for such a system include the recognition of the initial temperature:

$$T(x,\ y,\ z,\ t_0) = T(r,\ \varphi,\ z,\ t_0) = T_0 \tag{31}$$

Boundary conditions are complex due to the complex geometry of the welding tool and complex kinematics. As an example, boundary conditions for the top surface of workpieces involve convective and radiation heat transfer:

$$\lambda_w \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right)_{z=h} = \alpha \left(T_0 - T_{i,j,k} \right) + \sigma \overline{\varepsilon} \left({T_0}^4 - {T_{i,j,k}}^4 \right) \tag{32}$$

where: α - heat transfer coefficient, σ - Stefan-Boltzmann constant, $\overline{\varepsilon}$ - thermal emissivity of workpieces, T_0 – ambient temperature.

Boundary conditions on the contact between workpieces and anvil:

$$\lambda_w \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right)_{z=0} = \lambda_a \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right)_{z=0} \ \rightarrow \ \lambda_w \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial z} \right)_{z=0} = \alpha_{\text{aprox}} \left(T_{i,j,k} - T_0 \right) \tag{33}$$

where: λ_a – the thermal conductivity of anvil, α_{aprox} – approximated heat transfer coefficient.

Boundary conditions between the welding tool and workpieces involve conduction between the parts. Such condition is decomposed to a classical conductive boundary condition:

$$\lambda_w \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial r} \right)_{r=d/2} = \lambda_{wt} \left(\frac{\partial T}{\partial r} \right)_{r=d/2} \tag{34}$$

and influence of heat transfer due to material flow [5]. The material of the workpieces in the welding zone travels around the welding tool and partially carries its energy balance with it. If analyzed in discretized space and during discretized time, nodes "travel" from one discretized position to another and they "carry" its temperature, and while traveling they get and lose a burst of heat. This model of material travel is based on research concerning material flow around the welding tool [5, 13, 14, 20, 25, 26, 30, 34, 37], and applied in numerical calculations of temperature and heat flow. The model is named "node substitution and replacement method - NSRM" [5].

Results can be obtained analytically and numerically – for temperature estimation, a finite difference method, an explicit scheme with an adaptive grid were used, with the application of algorithm NSRM. The numerical solution of Eqs. 29-30 with the application of Taylor series for approximation of 2nd order derives and node positioning in discretized space is:

$$T_{i,j,k}^{m+1} = \frac{\Delta t}{\rho_w c_w} \left[\lambda_w \left(K_{x''} + K_{y''} + K_{z''} \right) + q_v \right] + T_{i,j,k}^{m} \quad \text{(for workpiece)} \tag{35}$$

$$T_{i,j,k}^{m+1} = \frac{\Delta t}{\rho_{wt} c_{wt}} \left[\lambda_{wt} \left(\frac{K_{r'}}{r_i} + \frac{K_{\varphi''}}{r_i^2} + K_{z''} \right) + q_v \right] + T_{i,j,k}^{m} \quad \text{(for welding tool)} \tag{36}$$

where:

$$K_{x''} = \frac{T^m_{i+1,j,k} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(x_{i+1} - x_i\right)\left(x_i - x_{i-1}\right)} - \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i-1,j,k}}{\left(x_i - x_{i-1}\right)^2}, K_{y''} = \frac{T^m_{i,j+1,k} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(y_{i+1} - y_i\right)\left(y_i - y_{i-1}\right)} - \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i,j-1,k}}{\left(y_i - y_{i-1}\right)^2}, \quad \text{(a)}$$

$$K_{z''} = \frac{T^m_{i,j,k+1} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(z_{i+1} - z_i\right)\left(z_i - z_{i-1}\right)} - \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i,j,k-1}}{\left(z_i - z_{i-1}\right)^2}, \; K_{\varphi''} = \frac{T^m_{i,j+1,k} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(\varphi_{i+1} - \varphi_i\right)\left(\varphi_i - \varphi_{i-1}\right)} - \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i,j-1,k}}{\left(\varphi_i - \varphi_{i-1}\right)^2}, \quad \text{(b)} \tag{37}$$

$$K_{r'} \approx r_{i+1/2} \frac{T^m_{i+1,j,k} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(r_{i+1} - r_i\right)\left(r_i - r_{i-1}\right)} - r_{i-1/2} \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i-1,j,k}}{\left(r_i - r_{i-1}\right)\left(r_i - r_{i-1}\right)}, \; r_{i+1/2} \approx r_i + \frac{r_{i+1} - r_i}{2}, \quad \text{(c)}$$

$$K_{r''} \approx \frac{T^m_{i+1,j,k} - T^m_{i,j,k}}{\left(r_{i+1} - r_i\right)\left(r_i - r_{i-1}\right)} - \frac{T^m_{i,j,k} - T^m_{i-1,j,k}}{\left(r_i - r_{i-1}\right)^2}, \; r_{i-1/2} = r_i - \frac{r_i - r_{i-1}}{2} \quad \text{(d)}$$

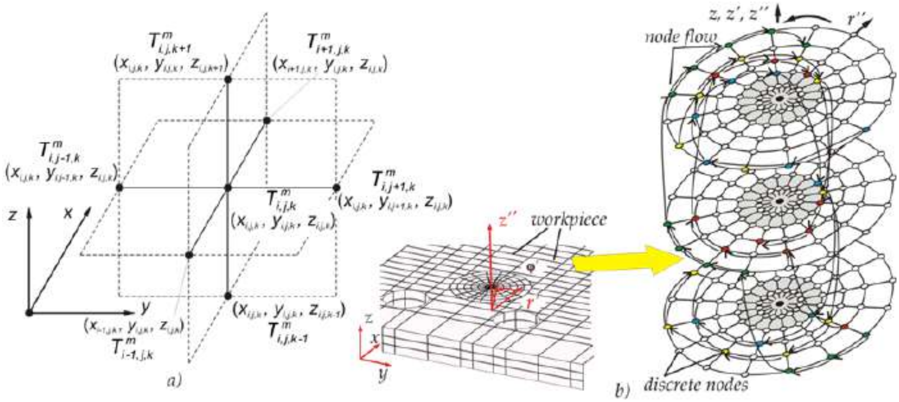


Figure 10. a) Discrete nodes with coordinates and temperatures, b) discretised space with a schematic of “node replacement and substitution” method [5]

3. Experimental procedure applied on aluminium alloy 2024 T351

The analytical model for estimating the amount of heat generated during FSW [5] is closely bound to the experimental research:

The analytical model gives realistic results only if some inputs into the model (axial force, torque, momentum of friction etc.) are obtained during realistic welding;

Validation of the analytical model and verification of gained results is possible only if some outputs from the model (e.g. numerically estimated temperature history of workpieces) are compared with the experimentally obtained results.

Such demands of the analytical model require a workplace with measuring equipment. Figure 11 gives a model of a realized workplace [5] where the welding of plates of Al 2024 T351 (some details given in Fig. 10, a) with the welding tool (given in Fig. 2, a) was performed.

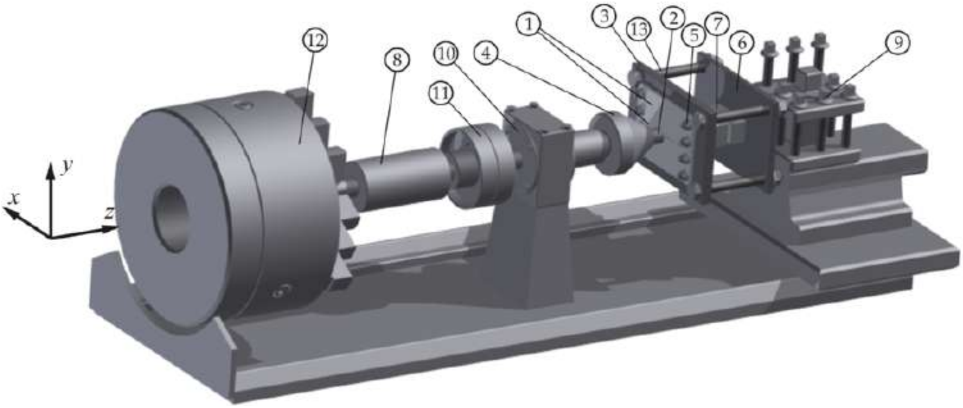


Figure 11. Workplace for FSW with measuring equipment: 1-workpiece, 2-welding tool, 3-anvil, 4-welding tool's spindle, 5-bolts, 6-backing plate, 7-force sensor, 8-torque sensor, 9-machine's tool rest, 10-bearing house, 11-clutch, 12-machine's spindle, 13-fundamental bolts

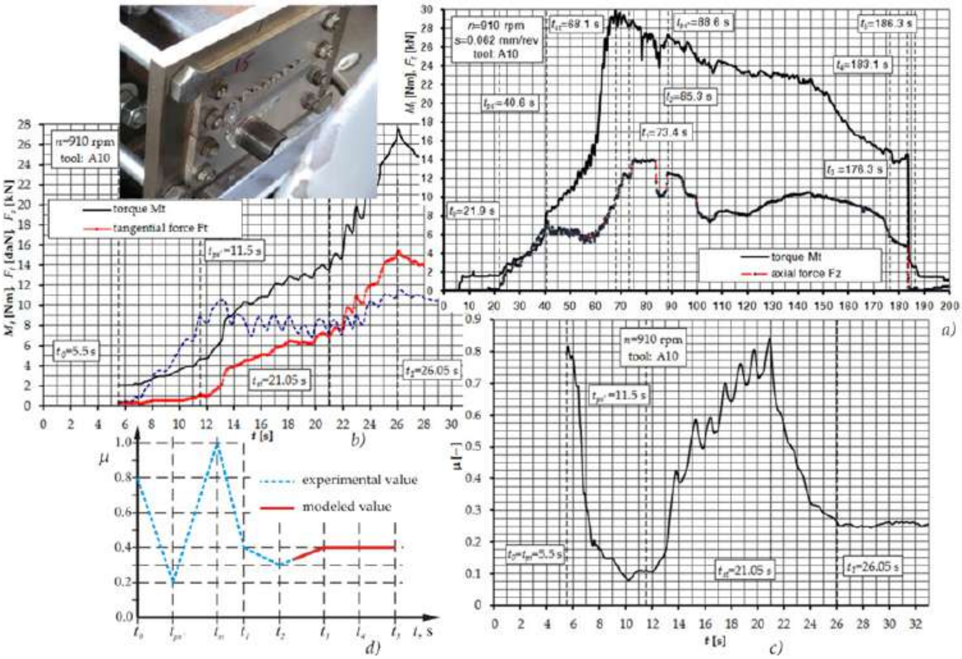


Figure 12. a) Typical diagram of measured torque and axial force, b) Typical diagram of measured torque, axial and tangential forces during FSW (plunging, first dwelling), c) Calculated friction coefficient, d) Modeled friction coefficient [5]

Welding was performed on a universal lathe with a horizontal operational axis (*z*-axis). Anvil, force sensor and backing plate are assembled and mounted on the machine's tool rest. Holes in the anvil (where fundamental bolts assemble force sensors) and the anvil and backing plate are larger than the diameter of the bolts and allow for the axial translation of the force sensor and measurement of axial force. Workpieces (dimensions given in Fig. 9, a) are bolted to the anvil and tilted over the machine's tool rest at an angle of 1°. The welding tool and its spindle are clutched to the torque sensor that is mounted into machine's spindle. A rigid axial-radial bearing house between the clutch and the welding tool disables the transmission of axial and radial forces from the welding tool to the torque sensor and machine's spindle. Such a design provides the correct measuring of axial force on the welding tool. Second working/measuring configuration (given in Fig. 6) is used for measuring the momentum of friction, axial, and tangential force at the welding tool in order to estimate the experimental friction coefficient. The machines used for this measuring configuration are vertical milling machines. The anvil and workpieces are mounted on an axial bearing above the axial force sensor. The anvil carries a tangential friction pole engaged in measuring the tangential force delivered by the torque of the spindle. As previously mentioned, such a design of the measuring equipment provides usable results only for plunging and the first dwelling phases. An infrared camera was used for measuring both the configurations that were used to estimate the thermal history of workpieces and the welding tool.

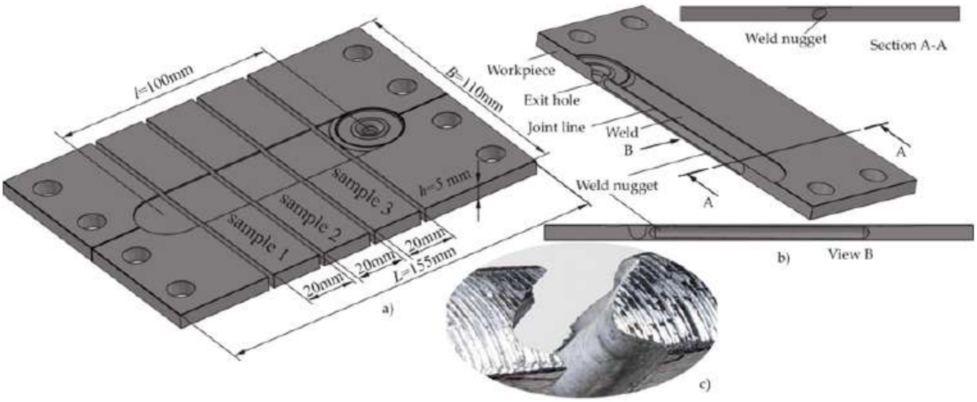
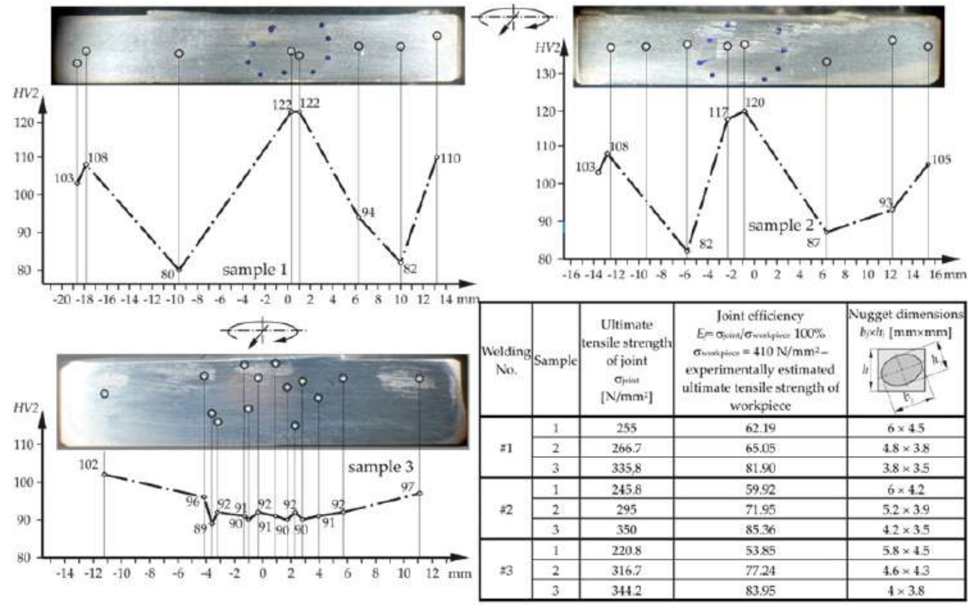


Figure 13. a) Schematic of sample extraction; b) Schematic of weld nugget's position; c) Tension sample destroyed at boundary of weld nugget

The experimental procedure of welding had three stages: to get familiar with the welding process, to get optimal technological parameters and to measure parameters necessary for the analytical model while creating qualitative welds [5]. Figure 12, a represents a typical diagram of torque and axial force measured during welding resulting in a qualitative weld.

Using a second measuring configuration, torque, axial and tangential force are obtained for numerous conditions. Figure 12, b shows a typical diagram of these parameters, obtained with optimal technological parameters. These values are used for estimating the experimental value of the friction coefficient (Fig. 12, c). However, since the proposed method gives limitedly usable values of the friction coefficient, based on experimental results, the friction coefficient is modeled for usage in the analytical model (Fig. 12, d).



Welding No.	Sample	Ultimate tensile strength of joint σ_{joint} [N/mm²]	Joint efficiency $E_f = \sigma_{joint}/\sigma_{workpiece}$ 100% $\sigma_{workpiece}$ = 410 N/mm² – experimentally estimated ultimate tensile strength of workpiece	Nugget dimensions $b_l \times h_l$ [mm×mm]
#1	1	255	62.19	6 × 4.5
	2	266.7	65.05	4.8 × 3.8
	3	335,8	81.90	3.8 × 3.5
#2	1	245.8	59.92	6 × 4.2
	2	295	71.95	5.2 × 3.9
	3	350	85.36	4.2 × 3.5
#3	1	220.8	53.85	5.8 × 4.5
	2	316.7	77.24	4.6 × 4.3
	3	344.2	83.95	4 × 3.8

Figure 14. Hardness, joint (tensile) efficiency and observed dimensions of the welding nugget in samples 1, 2, 3 extracted from welded workpieces

In order to investigate the properties of welds (tensile and bending efficiency, hardness, metallic structure etc.), test samples were extracted from welded workpieces. Figure 13, a gives a schematic of the sample dimensions and positions of samples in workpieces. All welded joints used for sampling had a vortex-like structure of material called weld nugget, located along the joint line (Fig. 13, b). All tested samples (1-3) from all tested welds have a crack in the weld zone at the border of the nugget (Fig. 13, c).

Tested samples have shown a bending efficiency of about 12% (reaching a bending angle of about 11° while samples from parent material have reached an angle of about 89°). Results of joint (tensile) efficiency, the samples' hardness and the dimensions of the weld nugget in test samples are shown in Fig. 14.

4. Results and discussion

Whereas the experimentally obtained results included in analytical model makes use of some the necessary parameters affecting the heat generation process within FSW (contact pressure, shear stress etc.) and the amount of generated heat is relatively easily estimated, the numerical estimation of the temperature field of the wokpieces requires some computational time [5]. Experimentally estimated temperature can be easily inputted into analytical model in order to estimate the amount of heat generated during FSW and computational time can be significantly shorten. However, temperature change is the main product of heat generation and the verification of analytical model can be done via temperature comparison [56].

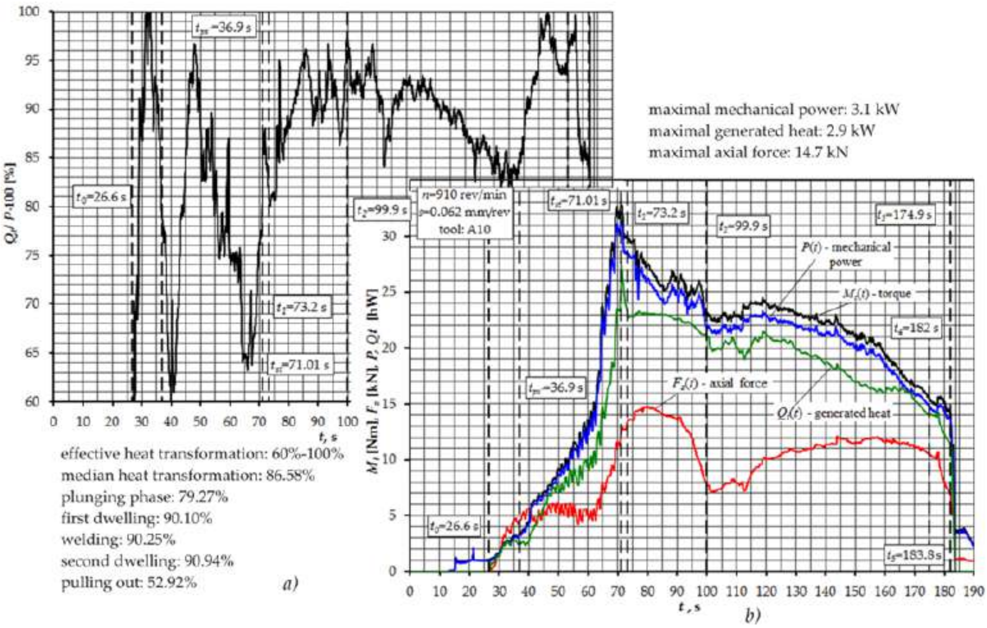


Figure 15. a) Effective heat transformation, b) Analytically estimated amount of generated heat [5, 56, 57]

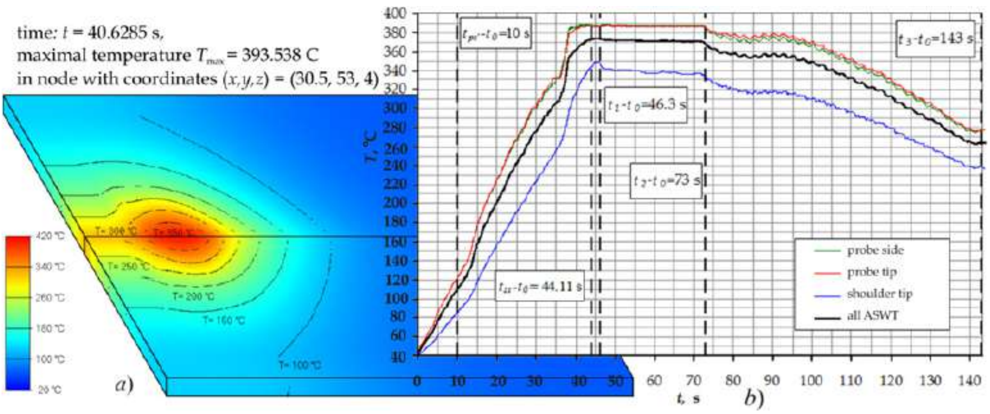


Figure 16. a) Numerically estimated temperature T of welding plates (rendered image); b) Median temperature of the material on contact with ASWT [5]

Figure 15, b gives the analytically estimated amount of generated heat during the welding of plates made of Al 2024 T351 (the dimensions of plates and technological parameters of the process are given in Fig. 9, a) with the welding tool with conned, threaded probe (given in Fig. 3, a). There were six repetitions of the welding procedure and the same number of applications of the analytical model. Characteristic moments of the process, operational technological parameters, values of measured axial force and torque delivered to the welding tool are given in Fig. 15, b, as well. The ratio of generated heat and engaged mechanical power is effective heat transformation η_{Qef} (Fig. 15, a) and it varies between 60%-100% in this application. The median value of effective heat transformation is 86.58% while it reaches 90.25% during welding phase. The maximum generated heat is 2.9 kW, reached during the plunging phase (when the shoulder tip is involved in the welding process at t_{st}).

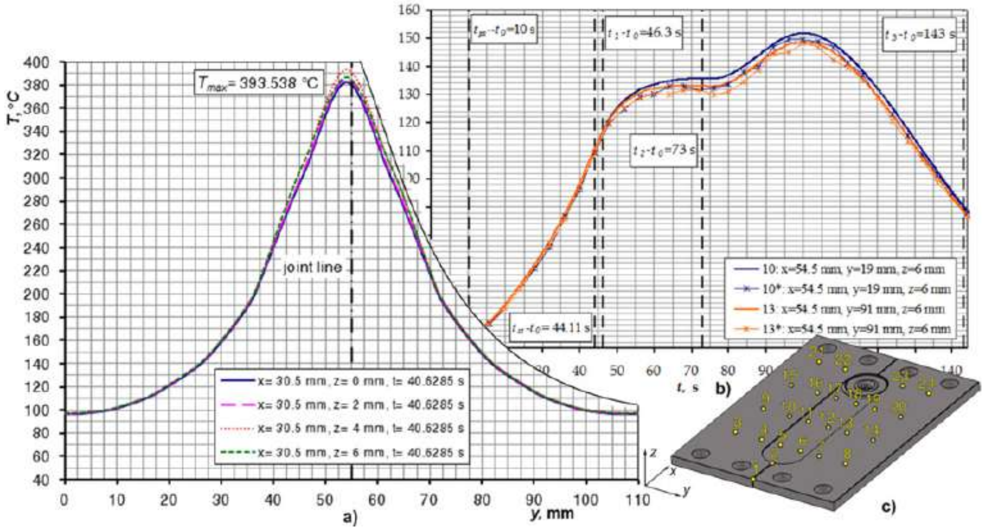


Figure 17. a) Temperature distribution in workpieces in plane normal to the joint line, b) temperature history (experimental and numerical) of specific discrete nodes, c) location of selected discrete nodes [56, 57]

Figure 16, a gives a rendered image of numerically estimated temperature in workpieces. Rendering is done for the moment the temperature reached maximal value – a few seconds before the tool shoulder was involved in the welding process. Figure 17, a gives the temperature distribution in a plane normal to the joint line for the same moment of time. The temperature peak is slightly dislocated from joint line to the advancing side of the weld. Analysis of heat generation required information about temperatures on contact between ASWT and the workpieces. Figure 16, b gives the median temperatures of all ASWT during the welding cycle. A comparison of the numerically and experimentally derived temperatures is done for 24 discrete points on the workpieces with adequate points from the numerical simulation (Fig. 17, c). Figure 17, b gives a diagram of both temperatures for two selected points. The largest difference between temperatures was about 11% in point 1 (absolute of 12°C) while other points had differences of 0.5-3.5% (absolute of 2-13°C) [5].

If the engaged mechanical power and generated heat are compared, it is clear that they have the same trend and notable changes in both are mostly connected with the characteristic moments of time. Mechanical power consumption and heat generation are more intense in the plunging and the first dwelling phases than in other phases. With a drop in the axial force (at the beginning of the first dwelling phase), torque drops as well, which results in the stabilization of the heat generation process and a drop in the temperature of the workpieces. The welding process is always in a quasi-equilibrium state: increase in temperature lowers the generated heat, engages mechanical power and axial force; decreases of the temperature, and increases power consumption and heat generation (almost sinusoidal temperature character, Fig. 16, b). At the end of the first dwelling and the beginning of the welding phase, the system (tool-workpieces-anvil) has reached nearly the maximal observed temperatures. During the welding phase, the system constantly decreases the temperature – probably workpieces were "overheated" due to the long lasting first dwelling phase (t_{dw1}≈27 s). Power consumption and heat generation drop as well while axial force steadily rises until the moment when effective heat transformation reaches app. 85% (t≥150 s, Fig. 15, b) and axial force reaches a value of 11-12 kN. Analyzed results from tensile and hardness testing (Fig. 14), best distribution of hardness, smallest weld nugget and the most efficient welds of app. 80% are reached in test samples no. 3 – at the end of welding, where heat transformation has a value near 85%. Samples 1 have the worst joint efficiency (app. 55%), exhibiting W-shaped hardness distribution with great variation of hardness and largest weld nugget. Welding in the zone of samples 1 is performed at highest temperatures and with an effective heat transformation of app. 90% and the lowest axial force (7-9 kN).

5. Conclusions

The analytical model developed here utilizes analytical algebra, experimentally gathered data and numerical calculations to estimate how much of the mechanical power delivered to the welding tool is transformed into heat. The novel approach in the model focuses on the recognition of the active surfaces involved in welding, engagement of active surfaces during welding, recognition of dominant parameters involving heat generation and their estimation, recognition of mechanisms of heat generation and their utilization, and implementation of a new numerical model for defining the material flow around the welding tool. Experiments and temperature based validation of the model are done on Al 2024 T351 5 mm thick plates.

Results from the model have shown that 60-100% of the mechanical power of the welding tool transform into heat during FSW with a median of 86.58% in a complete welding cycle. The median value of heat transformation during welding is about 90% which is in agreement with previous results. Comparison of workpiece temperatures from numerical calculations and experiments has shown a maximal relative error of 11% (about 13°C) while the maximal temperature of workpieces reached a maximal temperature of app. 394°C (79% of Al 2024 T351 melting temperature).

Heat generation appeared to be extreme in the welding-procedure-dependent process: preheating of welding plates, derived by a long dwell of the welding tool at the beginning of the welding, has significant influence on heat generation and the quality of the welded joint. Too long dwelling "overheats" workpieces and the welding phase happens during continuous transient cooling. In such conditions, heat transformation is near (and above) 90%, joints have 50% tensile efficiency and a large weld nugget. For conditions of heat transformation of app. 85%, joints reach app. 80% of tensile efficiency and have the smallest weld nugget. In both situations, it was necessary to have minimally 11kN of axial force to acquire a qualitative weld. If the optimal technological parameters of FSW and the welding tool are selected, heat management in FSW is of great importance for the quality of the weld. Due to the low bending efficiency of investigated welding, alloy 2024 T351 is legally considered to be a tough and a limitedly weldable alloy.

Author details

Miroslav Mijajlović* and Dragan Milčić
University of Niš, Faculty of Mechanical Engineering Niš, Serbia

6. References

[1] TWI, official web page: http://www.twi.co.uk/technologies/welding-coating-and-fabrication/friction-stir-welding/ (01.12.2011.)
[2] Thomas W M et al., Friction stir butt-welding, Int. Patent App., PCT/GB92/02203, 1991.
[3] Thomas W M et al., Friction stir butt welding, GB Patent App., No 9125978.8, 1995.
[4] Thomas W M et al., Friction stir butt welding, UP Patent, No 5 460 317, 1995.
[5] Mijajlović M. Investigation and Development of Analytical Model for Estimation of Amount of Heat Generated During FSW (in Serbian), Ph. D. thesis, Faculty of Mechanical Engineering Nis, University of Nis, Nis, Serbia, 2012.
[6] AWS D17.3/D17.3M:2010 Specification for FSW of Al Alloys for Aerospace Applications.
[7] ISO 25239: Friction stir welding – Aluminium, parts: 1-5, 2011.
[8] Maxwell JC. Theory of Heat. Dover Publications, Inc. ISBN 0-486-41735-2, 1871
[9] Ilić G. Radojković N. Stojanović I. Thermodynamics II: Basics of heat distribution (in Serbian), Vranje, Yugoslavia, 1996.
[10] Stamenković D. Djurdjanović M. Tribology of the Press Fit Joints (in Serbian), Faculty of Mechanical Engineering, Nis, Serbia, ISBN–86–80587–48–6, 2005.
[11] Djurdjanović M. Mijajlović M. Milčić D. Stamenković D. Heat Generation During Friction Stir Welding Process. Tribology in Industry. 2009; 31(1-2):8-14.
[12] Schmidt H.J. Hattel J.W. An analytical model for the heat generation in friction stir welding. Model. Simul. Mater. Sci. Eng. 2004; 12 (2004): 143–157.
[13] Lorrain O. Favierb V. Zahrounic H. Lawrjaniec D. Understanding the material flow path of friction stir welding process using unthreaded tools, Journal of Materials Processing Technology, 2010; 210 (2010): 603–609
[14] Nandan R. DebRoy T. Bhadeshia H.K.D.H. Recent advances in friction-stir welding – Process, weldment structure and properties. Progress in Mat. Sci. 2008; 53 (6): 980–1023.
[15] Chao YJ. Qi X. Thermal and thermo-mechanical modeling of friction stir welding of aluminum alloy 6061-T6, J. Mater. Proc. Mfg. Sci. 1998; 7 (1998): 215–233.

* Corresponding Author

[16] Frigaard O. Grong O. Modeling of the heat flow phenomena in friction stir welding of aluminum alloys, Paper presented at: INALCO '98. Proceedings of the Seventh International Conference on Joints in Aluminum, Cambridge, 15–17. April, 1998.

[17] Gould J.E. Feng Z. Heat flow model for friction stir welding of aluminum alloys, Journal of Material Processing and Manufacturing Science. 1998; 7(1998): 185-194.

[18] Russell M.J. Shercliff H.R. Analytical modeling of microstructure development in friction stir welding, Proceedings of the first International Symposium on Friction Stir Welding, Thousand Oaks, CA June 1999.

[19] Rosenthal D. The theory of moving sources of heat and its application to metal treatments [J]. Transaction ASME, 1946, 43(11): 849−866.

[20] Colegrove P. Painter M. Graham D. Miller, T. 3 Dimensional Flow and Thermal Modeling of the Friction Stir Welding Process, Proceedings of the Second International Symposium on Friction Stir Welding, June 26–28, 2000, Gothenburg, Sweden.

[21] Shercliff H.R. Colegrove P.A. Modelling of friction stir welding, Mathematical Modelling of Weld Phenomen. Maney Publishing, London, UK, 2002; 6(2002): 927-974.

[22] Khandkar M.Z.H. Khan J.A. Reynolds A.P. Prediction of temperature distribution and thermal history during friction stir welding: input torque based model. Science and Technology of Welding & Joining. 2003; 8(3): 165-174.

[23] Song M. Kovačević R. Thermal modeling of friction stir welding in a moving coordinate and its validation, Int. J. Machine Tool Manufacturing. 2003; 43 (6): 605–615.

[24] Hamilton C. Dymek S. Sommers A. A Thermal Model of Friction Stir Welding Applied to Sc-Modified Al-Zn-Mg-Cu Alloy Extrusions. International Journal of Machine Tools and Manufacture. 2008; 49 (2008): 230 – 238.

[25] Nandan, G.G. Roy, T.J. Lienert, T. Debroy, Three-dimensional heat and material flow during friction stir welding of mild steel, Acta Materialia. 2007; 55 (2007): 883–895.

[26] Ulysse, P. Three-dimensional Modelling of the Friction Stir-welding Process. International Journal of Machine Tools & Manufacture. 2002; 42(2002): 1549-1557.

[27] Steuwer A. Peel M. Withers, P.J. Dickerson, T.L. Shi, Q. Shercliff, H.R. Measurement and prediction of residual stresses in aluminium friction stir welds. Journal of Neutron Research. 2003; 11(2003): 267-272.

[28] Chao Y. J. Qi X. Tang W. Heat transfer in friction stir welding-experimental, and numerical studies. Transactions of the ASME. 2003; 125(2003): 138–145.

[29] Heurtier P. et al. Mechanical and thermal modelling of Friction Stir Welding Journal of Materials Processing Technology. 2006; 171 (2006): 348–357

[30] Santiago D.H et al. Numerical Modeling of Welded Joints by the Friction Stir Welding Process. Materials Research. 2004; 7(4): 569-574.

[31] Schmidt H. Hattel J. A Local Model for the Thermo-mechanical Conditions in Friction Stir Welding. Modelling and Simulation in Mat. Science and Eng. 2005; 13(2005): 77-93.

[32] Colligan KJ. Mishra RS. A conceptual model for the process variables related to heat generation in friction stir welding of aluminium. Scripta Mat. 2008; 58(2008): 327–331.

[33] Kalya P. Krishnamurthy K. Mishra RS. Baumann J. Specific Energy and Temperature Mechanistic Models for Friction Stir Processing of Al–F35. Presented at: 2007 TMS Annual Meeting Friction Stir Welding and Processing IV. Orlando, FL; 2007, pp. 113-126

[34] Kumar K. Kalyan C. Kaias SV. Srivatsan TS. An Investigation of Friction During Friction Stir Welding of Metallic Materials. Mat. and Man. Proc. 2009; 24(4): 438-445.
[35] Colligan K. Material Flow Behavior during Friction Stir Welding of Aluminum. Weld. J. Suppl. 1999; 78(7): 229s–237.
[36] Nandan R. et al. Improving reliability of heat transfer and materials flow calculations during friction stir welding of dissimilar aluminum alloys. Welding Journal, 2007; 86(10): 313S-322S.
[37] Ouyang JH. Kovačević R. Material Flow and Microstructure in the Friction Stir Butt Welds of the Same and Dissimilar Aluminum Alloys. The Journal of Materials Engineering and Performance. ASM International. 2002; 11(1): 51-63.
[38] Djurdjanović M. Tribology, Welding, Friction Welding. [unpublished materials used in studies at University of Nis, Faculty of Mechanical Engineering Nis, Serbia]. 2000-.
[39] Vukicevic M. Petrovic Z. Djuric S. Bjelic M. Oxy-fuel welding (in Serbian). Faculty of Mechanical Engineering. Kraljevo. Serbia. 2007
[40] Živković A. Influence of Friction Stir Welding Tool Geometry on Properties of Welded Joint of Alloys Al 2024 T351 (in Serbian) Ph. D. thesis. Faculty of Mechanical Engineering University of Belgrade, Belgrade, Serbia 2011.
[41] Rai R. De R. Bhadeshia HKDH. DebRoy T. Review: friction stir welding tools. Science and Technology of Welding and Joining. 2011; 16(4): 325-342.
[42] Mijajlović M. Milčić D. Anđelković B. Vukićević M. Bjelić M. Mathematical Model for Analytical Estimation of Generated Heat During Friction Stir Welding Part 1. Journal of Balkan Tribological Association. 2011; 17(2) 179-191.
[43] Mijajlović M. Milčić D. Anđelković B. Vukićević M. Bjelić M. Mathematical Model for Analytical Estimation of Generated Heat During Friction Stir Welding Part 2. Journal of Balkan Tribological Association. 2011; 17(3): 361-370
[44] Mijajlović M. et al. Study About Friction Coefficient Estimation in Friction Stir Welding. 2011; Presented at: Balkantrib 11, The 7th International Conference on Tribology, Proceedings, Thessaloniki, Greece, pp. 323-330.
[45] Hertz HR. On Contact Between Elastic Bodies(in German), Collected Works, 1(1885). Leipzig. Germany. 1895.
[46] Munisamy RL. Hills DA. Nowell D. The solution of the contact between a tilted circular rigid punch and an elastic half-space. Wear. 1995; 184(1995): 93-95.
[47] Levytsky VP. Interaction of Rigid Cylinder with Elastic Half-Space by Heat Generation on The Contact Area. Int. J. Engng. Sci. 1994; 32(11): 1693-1702.
[48] Galin LA. Contact Problems; The legacy of L.A. Galin. Series: Solid Mechanics and Its Applications (in Russian). Nauka. Moscow, Russia. 15(2008). 2008.
[49] Goryacheva I. Sadeghi F. Contact characteristics of a rolling/sliding cylinder and a viscoelastic layer bonded to an elastic substrate. Wear. 1995; 184(1995): 125-132.
[50] EN 573-3:2007, Al and Al alloys Part 3: Chemical composition and form of products.
[51] EN 485-2:2008-10, Al and Al alloys —Part 2: Mechanical properties.
[52] Metals Handbook: Properties and Selection: Non Ferrous Alloys and Special – Purpose Materials. 1992; 10(2). The American Society for Metals, ASM International, 1992

[53] ASM Aerospace Specification Metals Inc. Aluminium 2024 T351 Data Sheet. c2012 [Cited 27 August 2012]. Available from http://asm.matweb.com.
[54] Deng Z. Lovell MR. Tagavi KA. Influence of material properties and forming velocity on the interfacial slip characteristics of cross wedge rolling. Man. Science and Eng. 2001; 123(2001) :647–653, 2001.
[55] Khandkar H. Zahedul M. Khan J. Thermal modeling of overlap friction stir welding for Al-alloys, J. Mater. Process. Mfg Sci. 2001; 10 (2): 91–106.
[56] Milčić D. et al. Temperature Based Validation of the Analytical Model for Estimation of the Amount of Heat Generated During FSW. Thermal Science. In press. 2012.
[57] Mijajlović M. *et al*. Experimental Studies of the Parameters Affecting the Heat Generation in the Friction Stir Welding Process. Thermal Science. In press. 2012.

Section 3

Sensing of Welding Processes

Chapter 12

Visual Analysis of Welding Processes

Yoji Ogawa

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/53519

1. Introduction

Fusion welding process is very convenient method to join metal structures. It plays the most important role on industrial production. The process itself is quite simple. The generated heat sources such as arc and/or laser melt the limited parts of work pieces to be joined, and the joint zone is unified after solidification of melting metal in the groove. However fusion welding process contains much interesting research targets(Ogawa,2011). For example, metal contains many elements those thermal properties are quite different. The surface is oxidized. When the concentrated heat source strikes on the metal surface, some elements are evaporating away from the original work piece. If the shielding is insufficient, some amount of hydrogen and oxygen invades into the hot metal. Hydrogen reduces mechanical property of the structure. And quick re-solidification produces quite different structure compared to the original base metal which was qualified by thermal refining process. Usual fusion welding process contains four phases such as solid, liquid, gas and plasma. Plasma is quite hot, maximum temperature exceeds 10,000K. The temperature of metal in solid phase to be joined is normally in room temperature. The temperature of molten pool in the base metal is raised up more than melting point. But, this temperature is about 3,000K or less. Then the temperature gap between liquid parts and plasma is tremendous. The physical reactions in those regions include many unknown factors(Zacharia & David,1993). These reactions occur in quite small area about one centimetre cubic space. Therefor the moving speed of target in observing area is quite high. This is the main reason why high-speed imaging technique is necessary on visual analyssis of fusion welding processes. Almost all of welding processes are carried out in factories on the earth. However, some welding processes must be carried out in deep water or in space. These are another interesting area to study.

2. Basics on imaging for fusion welding phenomena

2.1. General instruction for Gas Tungsten Arc Welding process

Basic concepts to study arc welding process had been constructed before 1970s(Pattee et al.,1973). The most useful signals to understand arc welding process is arc voltage and current. However, these two electrical signals are insufficient to understand actual process. Then, high-speed filming technique was introduced. The most important matter to get reasonable image of arc welding process is how to eliminate the meaningless light from the process. Very strong light is radiated from the arc. This strong light protects to observe actual welding procedure.

Figure 1 shows a fundamental concept of Gas Tungsten Arc welding (GTAW) process. GTAW is one of the simplest of fusion welding process. Electrons emitted from tungsten cathode impinge a base metal. Some parts of argon atoms, those are normal inactive shielding gas to avoid oxidation of molten metal, ionize in an arc column. The arc column is a channel of current between cathode and anode, and it includes the same number of ions and electrons. The strong light is radiated by recombination reaction with ions and electrons. Understanding of current density distribution is important to know thermal transportation, and the distribution of this radiation suggests the temperature of arc column. The GTAW process is materialized by the tight energy balance among the cathode, arc column and weld pool. And there exist very complicated physical and chemical reactions in each region.

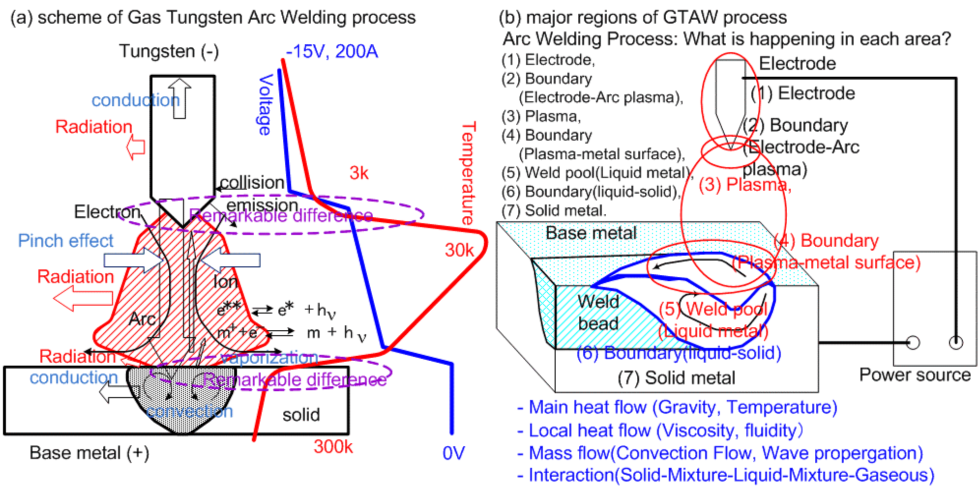


Figure 1. Scheme of Gas Tungsten Arc Welding(GTAW) process.

Figure 1(b) shows the main typical regions of interests during GTAW process. There are three major zones such as base metal, arc column and the tungsten electrode. The base metal has three different regions. They are melting zone, solid zone and boundary between solid and liquid. The boundary zone is the most important on metallurgical point of view. Crystal structure in boundary becomes large, and the mechanical property of the metal changes as a result. Some defects like blowhole or undercut occur in this region. A melting area as called weld pool is complicated. Electrons and atoms hit on the molten surface, and some atoms invade into the pool. A surface of the base metal in front of the pool contains much oxide. The melted oxide also invades on the pool. Many physical and chemical reactions occur on and in the pool. Rapid liquid metal flow also occurs on and in the pool.

The tungsten electrode is expected as a non-consumable cathode. The cathode is mainly heated by Joule heating by current passing through the electrode. The surface of the cathode is heated by collision of atoms and ions from the outer space, and the top area, which called cathode spot, is cooled by electron emission. Normal tungsten electrode contains a few per cents of thorium oxide to improve emission ability. Thorium oxide on the cathode surface evaporates during arc process. A cool surface of the electrode is normally oxidized. And tungsten oxide is much easier to melt and evaporate compared to pure tungsten, then some amount of tungsten oxide, 3 or more millimetres from the top, melt and move toward the top where the arc generates. And the temperature near the top is hot enough to evaporate the invading tungsten oxide. Evaporated tungsten oxide is easy to dissociate to tungsten and oxygen. A temperature of middle region between the top and the area where tungsten oxide evaporates is cool enough to crystallize the impinged tungsten atom from the outer space. Very complicated physical and chemical reactions are occurred on the cathode surface. A microscopic observation is required because normal diameter of the tungsten electrode is 1.6-3.2mm.

The arc column existing between cathode and anode is hot enough where ionization, dissociation, and recombination frequently occur. Particles in this region are heated and forced by electro-magnetic field. Much power is conducted to the work piece by moving electrons. Some power is lost to open air by radiation and conduction. Arc light is the radiation loss of arc, and the frequency distribution of radiation has important information of arc characteristics. It contains temperature distribution information in arc column. The approximate power of arc radiation is very strong, and it protects precise observation of cathode and anode surfaces. The energy transfer from the arc is crucial in the weld pool formation. And the energy transfer due to convection becomes important in the weld pool compared to heat conduction. Total thermal radiations from the weld pool and solid surface are very weak compared to arc light. How to observe actual motion in and on the weld pool under luminous arc column is the issue to study(Shaw,1975; Inoue,1981; Ogawa,2011) .

2.2. How to get good image

2.2.1. Spatial effect

Figure 2 shows basic principles to show spatial effect of arc light. Suitable selections of exposure time, diaphragm and filtering set-up of camera are essential to get high quality image. An external light is usually used to improve image quality of target which has a strong light source in it. When the arc region is very small as shown in figure 2(a), normal light source is enough. When the arc region becomes large as shown in figure 2(b), stronger light source is required to get clear image of the whole apparatus. Some halation occurs on and near the arc. However, the arc region is also small enough to get clear image of experimental set-up. When the arc region becomes larger as shown in figure 2(c), normal light source is insufficient because arc radiation is quite high. The size of this figure is normally used for observation of high speed imaging. We need some special technique to improve image quality. Details of how to get high quality image of fusion welding process are described in section 3.

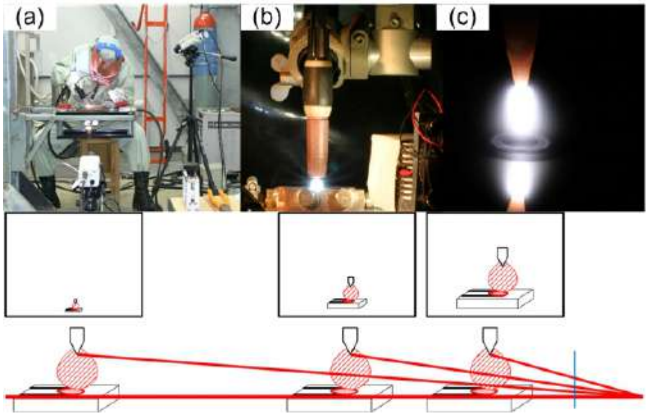


Figure 2. Size effect on image quality.

2.2.2. Fundamentals of high speed imaging

High speed video camera is a digital processor with huge memory. Captured high speed image data are processed as digital data inside of the camera. Depth of the captured data in the camera is normally 10 to 14bits. However, data depth of output image/movie is normally less than 8bits to fit normal picture/movie standards. Objects in three dimensional space are captured onto two dimensional digital data. Many two dimensional data sets are stored time by time as shown in figure 3(a). In case of monochrome camera, only one colour information on each pixel is stored. In case of colour camera, it captures three kinds of colour information on each pixel. They are red, green and blue. The arc light itself contains from ultra violet to infrared regions. Normal colour camera is set to fit human eyes, so light which is out of visible range of human eyes are avoided. But, ultra violet and infrared lights from arc are so strong compared to normal scene, so it affects the colour tone of the captured image(Ogawa,2008).

When the camera condition is set to get clear arc image, almost all back ground become black as shown in figure 2(c). One simple solution to capture clear background image is using a strong external light. Another good solution is using narrow banded interference filter which protects arc light and pass the light from back ground. Spectroscopic data is also useful to understand arc characteristics. Factors of interest to understand arc welding process are three dimensional space information, wavelength information and temporal variations as shown in figure 3(b). Dynamic range of camera device or data depth of image is also important factors for precise analysis.

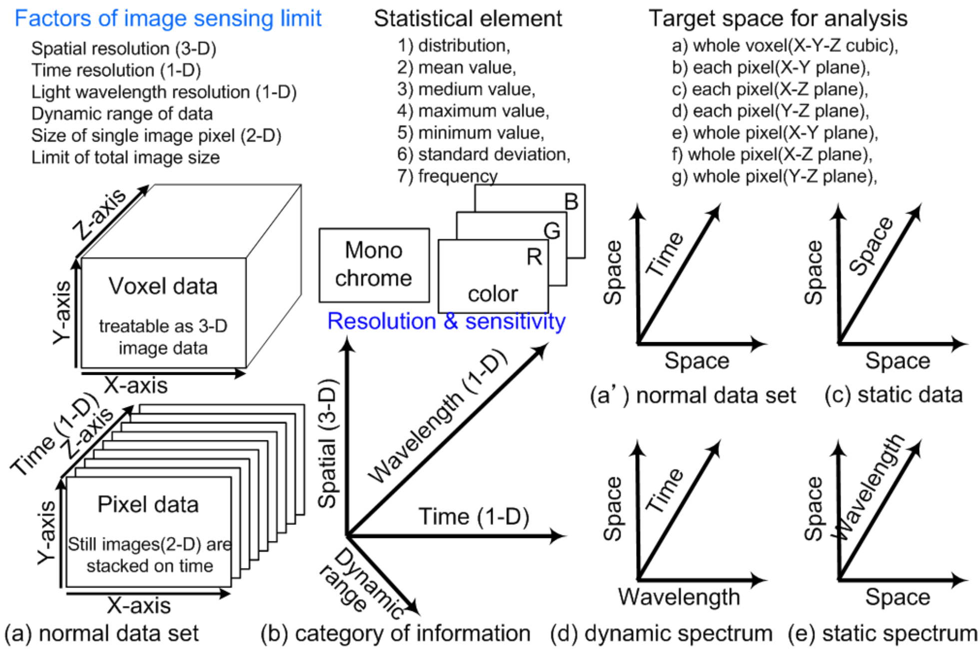


Figure 3. Data structures of high speed imaging.

The image of object just on the focal plane is clear, and the brightness of captured data is higher than those from out of focus position. When the objects is static, range information can be detected by changing the camera position or focal distance as shown in figure 3(c). Spectroscopic imaging is also important to understand the process behaviour as shown in figure 3(d). If the object is stable and constant, static spectrum information can be detected as shown in figure 3(e). Two dimensional digital data of each still images are stacked time by time in case of high speed imaging. The data itself can be treated as voxel data as shown in figure 3. Then statistical analysis becomes possible, and it becomes easy to choose numerous points of view to analyse the whole process. This is the remarkable benefit of high speed imaging to study on welding process.

2.2.3. Non-linearity on brightness

However, we need careful selection and understanding of observation conditions. Usual camera is fabricated to fit human sense. Figure 4 shows effects of exposure time on data brightness. The same static object is captured by different exposure time. One important fact to realize is an effect of dark noise. Some special camera has special cooling system for sensor device to avoid dark noise. However normal high speed camera has no special cooling system, then some dark noise is added on the data. And the values are affected by temperature and exposure time. Another important fact is special fitting process on too bright objects. There are no linearity in the highest range as shown in figure 5. Halation is protected by this process, and the picture looks very clear. However, quantitative analysis cannot guaranteed. The relation of actual brightness on object and captured data value depends on camera. One typical relation is shown in figure 5. When we try to use high speed camera for quantitative analysis like detecting temperatures, we need precise correction of several different temperature object before actual observation.

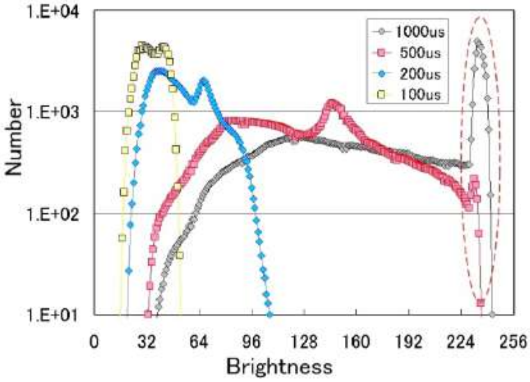


Figure 4. Effect of exposure time on brightness distribution of data.

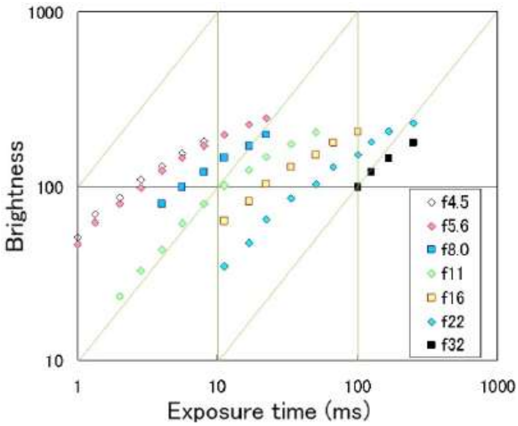


Figure 5. Typical relation between actual brightness of objects and data value.

2.3. Radiation effect

Surface conditions of a molten pool and a solid metal are quite different. The surface of the molten pool is smooth like mirror, because of surface tension, and a light illuminated on the molten pool reflects totally to the geometrical direction. On the contrary, solid surface has rough surface, and the light illuminated on the solid surface is scattered to wide directions.

This is an important difference for imaging of arc phenomena. Another important difference is radiation efficiency by surface condition. Radiation from oxides is greater than that from pure surface.

One of the major purposes of an imaging of arc is to provide a monochromatic two dimensional image from a polychromatic object. Optical frequency distribution at appropriate point has important information on arc temperatures at that point, such as electron temperature, atom temperature and ion temperature. Normal colour picture is a mapping of colour information from three dimensional scene on to a two dimensional frame. In case of normal picture of arc column, one point of the picture contains integrated intensity information in depth and integrated intensity on wavelength information. A single colour picture which means a picture at appropriate wavelength, as called monochromatic photography, and/or emission spectroscopy which measures information on wavelength distribution at appropriate point are required to estimate the temperature at that point. They are two dimensional data, and each point has information of intensity. The situations are also a matter of time. Static or quasi-static phenomena is not usual for arc welding processes, they usually changes time by time. So the time domain analysis is also required. Time domain information is easily recorded as time series of two dimensional data as shown in figure 3.

The intensity of the data show integrated values across the depth of the space. The image density measurements, as integrated intensity in depth, are input data for the Abel Integral Equation. Radiance (at each wavelength) is obtained as a function of position. The local ratio of radiances for two spectral lines then yields the temperature as a function of position. Monochromatic imaging also has more direct value. Arc light is an exponential function of radiation temperature. Total power of radiation is more than 1000 times of thermal radiation from molten metal. This is the major difficulty to get clear image and weld pool simultaneously. The highest value of radiation is estimated by Wien's law. The highest radiation just near the boiling temperature of iron is in near infrared region between 950 and 1000nm. And radiation from arc at this region is low enough to get clear image of the molten metal. Following formula are used to calculate temperature from image.

$$E_\lambda = \frac{2\pi hc^2}{\lambda^5}\,\frac{1}{e^{hc/kT^\lambda}-1} \tag{1}$$
$$h = 6.6256\times10^{-34}\,Js \quad \left(\text{Planck's Constant}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &E = \sigma\,T^4 \quad \left(\text{Stefan-Boltzmann's Law}\right)\\ &\sigma = 5.67\times10^{-8}\ Jm^{-2}s^{-1}\deg^{-4} \quad \left(\text{Stefan-Boltzmann's Constant}\right)\end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

$$\lambda_m T = 2.898\times10^{-3}\ m\ \deg \quad \left(\text{Wien's Transition Law}\right) \tag{3}$$

$$\begin{aligned} &I = A\,T^2\exp\left(-e\phi/kT\right) \quad \left(\text{Richardson's Theory}\right)\\ &e\phi = \text{work function}\\ &k = 1.387\times10^{-23}\ J\,K^{-1} \quad \left(\text{Boltzmann's Constant}\right)\end{aligned} \tag{4}$$

2.4. Spectroscopic and monochromatic imaging

Figure 6 shows examples of argon arc images on mild steel and SUS304 stainless steel. Left hand-side pictures are over exposure images. Information of arc column is saturated, but image of cathode is clear. Weld pool and base metal can be detected. In right hand-side pictures, exposure time is too short to identify whole cathode surface, but plasma shape and metal vapour from the weld pool can be recognized. The pictures on middle part are suitable camera condition to recognize whole parts.

One good way to improve image quality is using circumferential filter of narrow band. Figure 7 shows the effect of band-pass filter on arc images. Figure 7(a) shows normal colour image, which reduce the intensity of all wavelength by ND(Neutral Density) filter. Images of different wavelength are quite different, but all of each image are captured in the same welding condition.

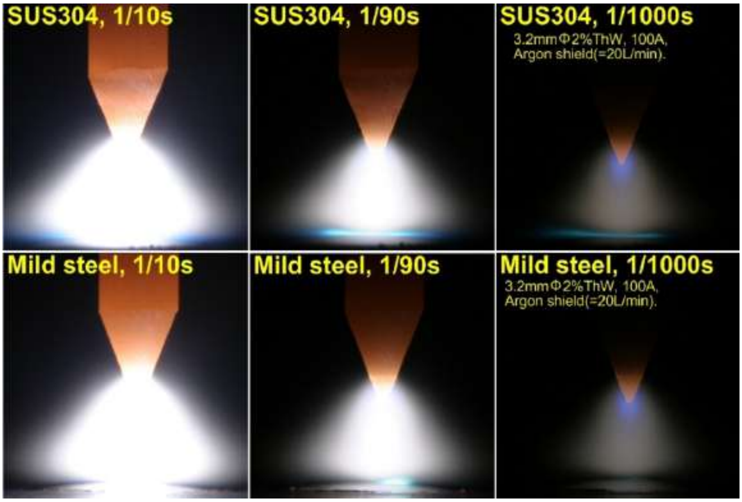


Figure 6. Example of argon arc image on metal plates.

The spectroscopic measurement of plasma condition is essential to understand plasma temperature. Plasma temperature is a key element to understand energy and mass balances in arc welding process. The problem for spectroscopic study on arc welding process is existence of metal vapour from work piece and electrode. Ionization potential of metal is much less than shielding gas. The metal vapour influences not only on ionization of plasma but also an energy transfer in boundary regions between plasma and electrodes. A grating monochromator is usually used to record spectra from representative arcs. Radiation strength is a function of wavelength depends on particle temperature. Typical line spectra due to transition of energy level indicate probabilistic number of temperature. In case of argon shielded arc, suitable lines in the Ar I (neutral) and Ar II (singly ionized) spectra are identified, measured and used to determine mean temperature of the species from the Saha’s equation, Boltzmann distribution and the radiation law, by the two line method. The ratio of typical two spectra indicates the temperature, and this method is a good way to reduce measuring error caused by measuring device such as transmission loss of lens and sensitivity of sensor device.

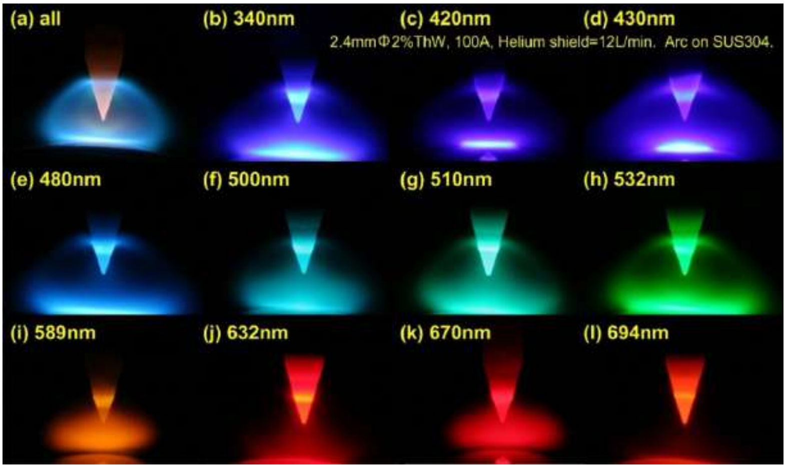


Figure 7. Example of single colour images.

The tendency is the same for thermometry. A monochromatic imaging is used to identify the measuring point of spectroscopy, and it is also used to identify spatial distribution of radiation. Spectroscopy by a prism is the simplest way to measure an interaction between radiation and matter as a function of wavelength, but resolution is much less compared to the grating monochromator. Figure 7 shows typical colour images, single colour images and spectroscopic images for several shielding gases. A single colour image at 694nm and spectroscopic image along the central line of the torch centre are captured by the same lens simultaneously. Image through the lens is divided by a prism. One half of light is passing through the band-pass filter of 694nm. The other half image is passing through the special prism which is called Imspector, and it reaches to the sensing device. Monochrome sensing devices are used for both cameras. Spectroscopic images are shown by pseudo colour system to identify the quantitative differences. Helium has a few spectra, so it can be used to identify the actual wavelength on horizontal position. Sensitivity of the image sensor is affected by wavelength. Normally, it is the highest between 500nm to 700nm range. The sensitivity over 900nm is one fourth of visible range or less. The sensitivity in the short wavelength less than 400nm is also low. Reduction loss of lens is affected by the wavelength also. Therefor precise quantitative comparison is difficult without correction of sensitivity and resolution. However, qualitative consideration becomes easy by spectroscopic imaging.

Dynamic ranges of data depth and optical frequency range are the most important factors to use measurement. A dynamic range in computer vision means data depth, and common data depth is 8 bits. The data depth of 8 bits is completely small for optical diagnostic. It usually requires more than 12 bits. Another important dynamic range is sensitivity of the solid imaging devices such as CCD (Charge Coupled Device) and CMOS (Complementary

Metal Oxide Semiconductor). Normal dynamic range of CCD camera is about 10^3. This value is much less for accurate measurements. A CMOS camera with specially tuned electronic device for sensitivity as a wide dynamic range of 10^{10-12} is available to use. However data depth is still a major matter to protect scientific use. Practical methods to use a solid devices for imaging are (1) using an well designed optical filter, (2) controlling the shutter timing and duration, (3) using a wide dynamic sensor, and (4) correction of image data those taken under different capture conditions as shutter speed, iris, and different neutral density filters.

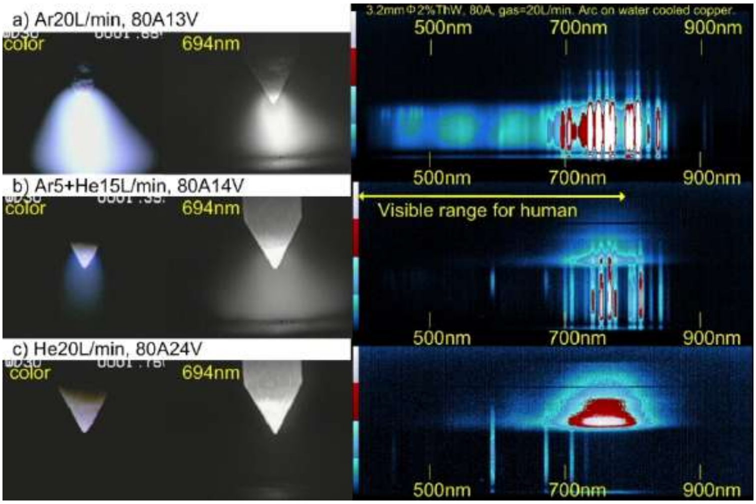


Figure 8. Effect of gas contents on arc plasma condition.

3. Observation of transient response

3.1. Observation of meta-stable stage of arc ignition

Argon and helium are usually used in GTAW process. Much smut covers on and around the welding bead in case of helium arc welding. This is a quite simple evident of metal vaporization during arc welding. Metal has much less ionization potential compared to argon or helium. Therefore, effects of metal vapours on arc properties and subsequently on weld bead configuration have been studied since 1950s(Pattee, 1973). Emission spectroscopy and monochromatic imaging were used to determine the prominent metal species present and distribution in arcs.

Temperatures of base metal and tungsten electrode are the same as room temperature until welding process is starting. Temperatures of base metal and tungsten electrode are quickly raised high. However they have some amount of heat capacity, so there are time rags to be stable temperatures. High speed video is a good tool to capture the dynamic behaviour. But, it is not so good to show movies to understand the dynamic behaviour. Capturing the video finishes very short time. But watching the captured movie takes a quite long time. Showing the behaviour of dynamic response is another problem. Showing picture cue in time order is one answer, but numbers of pictures to show and time step are difficult to decide. Using streaking image on important location is good answer to understand the dynamic behaviour at glance as shown in figure 9. Vertical line on the centre line of the electrode is drawn by time. The top time chart shows the dynamic behaviour of centre line between arc start and 15seconds later. The behaviour at first 1 seconds changes much. It takes about 4-5 seconds to be a stable condition. The second top picture shows the detail behaviour of transient state. The third and the fourth pictures show the behaviour of the horizontal lines at cathode tip and 0.5mm below the cathode tip. These pictures show the behaviour of plasma behaviour. These streak images are good way to understand time response qualitatively. The pictures shown on the right are single colour pictures at 694nm. They are taken simultaneously. Taking pictures of different wavelength is a good way to consider actual behaviour of the process. When the cathode becomes stable condition, upper range of the cathode becomes brighter. Tungsten oxide on the surface becomes wet in this region, because temperature of the tungsten electrode becomes high enough to melt tungsten oxide on and near the surface. This high speed image shows from arc ignition to stable stage. However, video rate and image resolution are insufficient to understand actual dynamic behaviour.

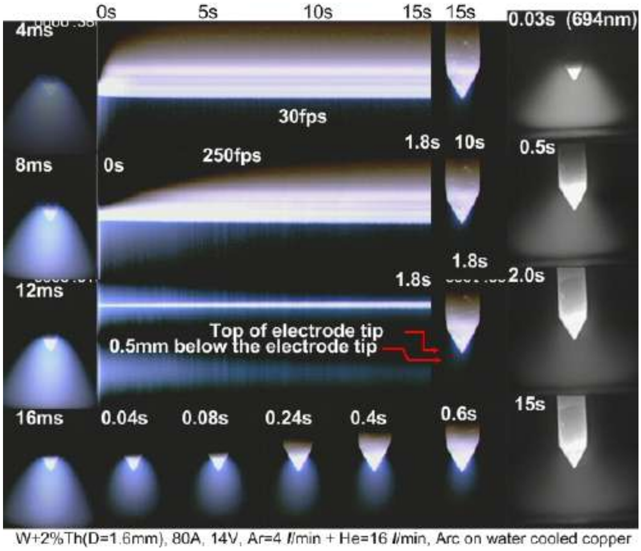


Figure 9. Typical example of GTAW at arc ignition stage.

3.2. Qualitative methods to show transient phenomena

Figure 10 shows examples of ultra-high speed pictures taken at 54k frames per seconds (fps). A picture before No.1 is absolutely in black. There is a big change between No.1 and No.2 pictures. There is brown coloured channel between the electrode and the base metal in No.1 image. This brown colour, which envelops the electrode top, is brighter than the other area. And three bright spots are shown on the base metal. These three spots have blue colour, which is a colour of recombination from metal vapour. One bright spot is remained in No.2 picture. Blue colour zone looks like aurora occupies almost all space between the electrode and the base metal. Brown coloured zone is disappeared. One bright spot appears on the upper place of the electrode. There is a drastic change on arc behaviour at the ignition moment. Using higher video rate is better to analyse in this arc ignition period, but this video rate is the highest in this space resolution (320x256pixels) of this high speed camera. Pictures among No.3 and No.12 look almost similar. This is another problem, when we consider the process from captured high speed video. Capturing times of ultra-high speed video is a few seconds, but it takes too much time to watch whole video. Much time to save the data into a hard disk is another troublesome issue. One solution to recognize typical transient behaviour is reconstructed the stacked images into streak image which contains important information of time response.

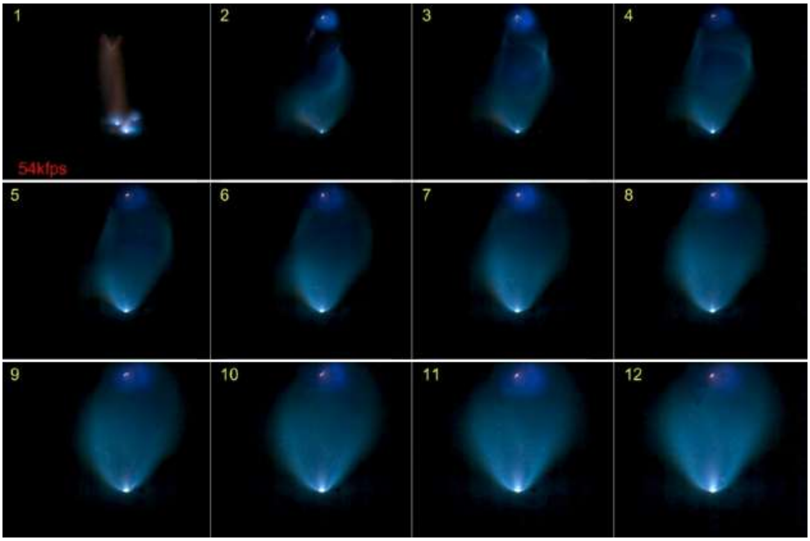


Figure 10. Time series of high speed video at arc ignition stage.

Figure 11 shows an example how to reconstruct the movie to a still picture. Left picture is a typical one shot at ignition stage. This is a typical case of arc ignition. Arc ignites in air, there is no shielding gas. Cathode and anode are easily oxidized, and their reactions produce much heat. Arc ignition in good shielding is shown in figure 12. Arc is very stable in this case, but some drastic behaviour occurs in first 5 ms.

The video rate of 250fps as shown in figure 9 is insufficient to understand actual arc ignition, because only two pictures in arc ignition stage can be captured in this video rate. Ultra high video rate as shown in figure 11 and 12 indicates that quite complicated response is appeared during first 5ms. High video rate is required for understanding of precise transient behaviour, but transient states of welding process happens only short time range. Welding process usually continues order of 10 to 100 minutes. And some unexpected transient behaviour during steady condition also occurs in short time. Therefore, high speed video needs very huge memory size.

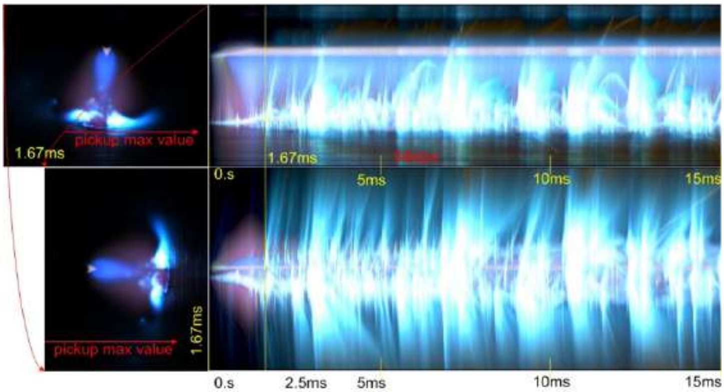


Figure 11. Example of time charts to recognize arc ignition stage in air.

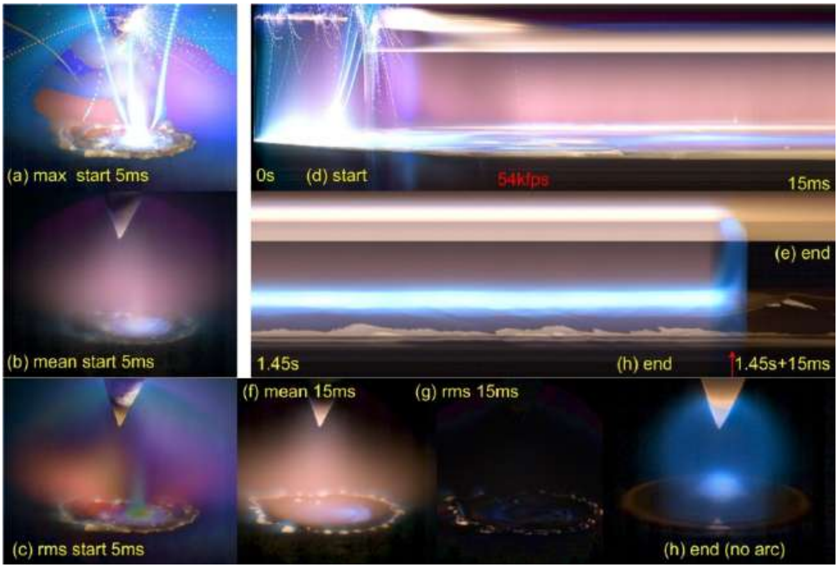


Figure 12. Methods to show process behaviour GTAW in helium shield.

Using statistical data on time axis is another good way to understand spatial behaviour. High speed camera captures many images in time series. Picking up the brightest value, mean value and/or deviation for each pixel gives us good information. Figure 12(a) shows the maximum value during arc ignition stage of 5ms. A whole time chart in this arc start duration along 15ms is shown in figure 12(d). The picture of maximum values gives us typical quantitative information on spatial behaviour. A locus of spatters indicates particle size, velocity and flying direction with its origin. Sizes and positions of anode and cathode are apparently appeared as bright zone. A picture of mean value is almost the same as normal still picture. An image of standard deviation indicates the active regions. The image of maximum values emphasizes singular situation like sputtering. So, this image is useful to identify the place somewhat abnormal situation exists. On the other hand, image of standard deviation usually hides one time irregular event.

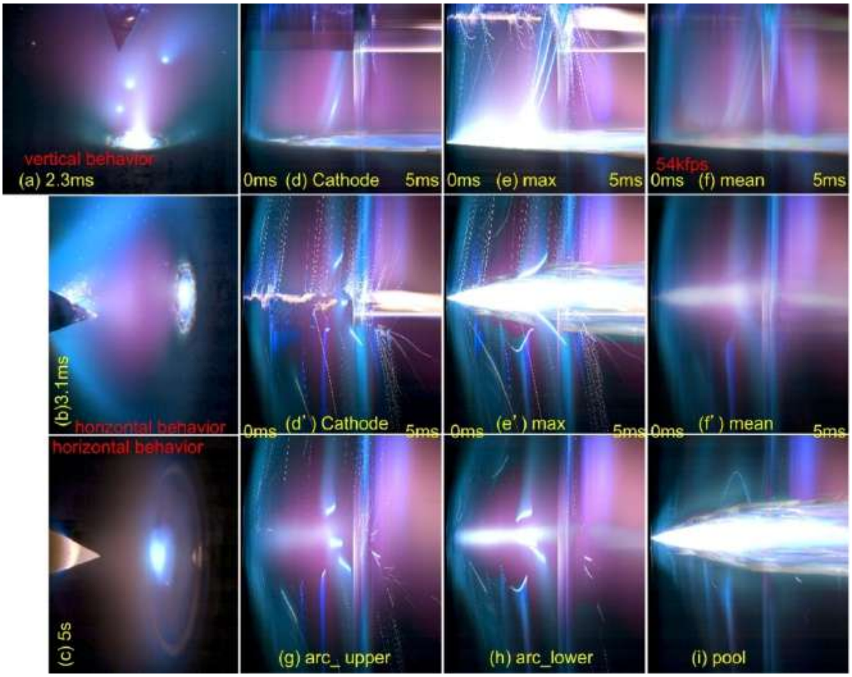


Figure 13. Examples of drawing methods to show time response.

Streak image is convenient for quick understanding of time response. And there are many points of view to get valuable information on time response as shown in figure 13. One is to check the typical line like centre line of the cathode as shown in figure 13(d). The arc process usually assumes as cylindrical symmetry, however this assumption is always wrong during arc ignition stage and improper welding condition. These conditions are main cases when we need the analysis by high speed camera. However, difference between the streak image of max value and it on the centre line suggests much good information for analysis. A streak image of mean value is also important to recognize global time response of the process. Vertical streak image is simple compared from the horizontal streak image. There are typical three different area such as the cathode region, plasma region and the anode region on the horizontal streak image. They are shown in figure 13(d', g, h and i), respectively. Pictures on typical moments are essentially important to understand the process. We can reconstruct the three dimensional behaviour of the process to use typical features of streak images in our brains. However, we need some other pictures for reconstruction of spatial features.

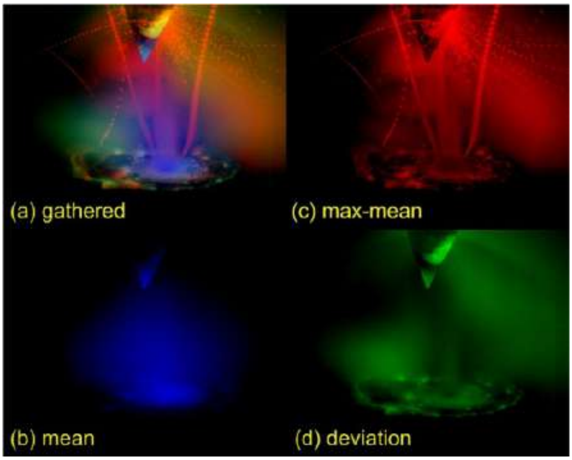


Figure 14. Examples of methods to show typical characters.

Figure 14 shows a synthotic image assembled different feature images. Figure 14(b) shows mean values of stacked images in blue colour. Figure 14(c) stresses one time feature in red, used values are maximum values minus mean value. Figure 14(d) shows deviation in green colour. Figure 14(a) is a gathered image among these three colours of different features. This kind of synthotic image which contains different feature helps to understand the spatial property at any periods. Discussions of this paragraph are somewhat sensitive or qualitative. Merit of using high speed camera is that captured huge data is digital, and quantitative analysis is expected in this field.

Figure 15 shows time response of unsuitable welding condition. Behaviour of arc ignition stage is almost the same as suitable condition. Because high frequency power source assists arc ignition. But current is too low to heat up the cathode temperature to keep steady arc. When the high frequency power is shut off, cathode spot (arc ignition area) becomes to move irregularly. It becomes stable from after 243ms of arc ignition. However, arc spot exists on the shoulder of the cathode. A single colour image of 957nm is captured in this case to get in good contrast to show arc and cathode spot. Reactions on cathode and anode are high-lighted in green, and reaction in plasma is high-lighted in red. Colour tone suggests the location of happening.

Colour image contains much information. But, colours captured by cameras have different characteristics. Captured image by usual colour camera is set to fit human sensitivity on natural scene. Radiation from arc has discrete line spectra. Therefore colour tone of captured arc image is very different by the makers and sensor kinds. We usually use (R,G,B) colour sets on pictures. Some cameras use (Y,U,V) colour system to proceed data in the camera. YUV colour system is reasonable on natural scene which has continuous property on colour frequency. Colour tones on arc welding process are different by camera kinds. Some good cameras have ability to correct colour tones, but it is very difficult to make the same colour tone from different cameras.

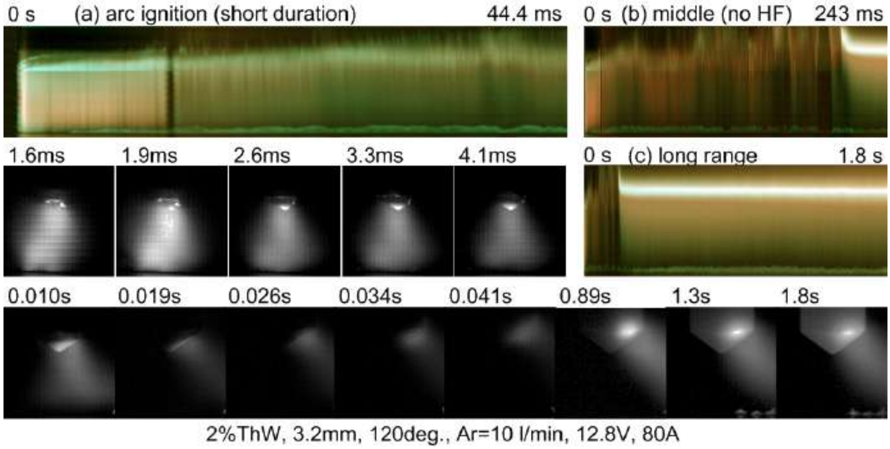


Figure 15. Examples of time response on not suitable cathode geometry.

3.3. Quantitative methods to show transient phenomena

Brightness is only apparent quantitative data at the first stage of analysis. Many quantitative elements such as cathode size and brightness distribution of cathode spot, maximum brightness of arc, arc area size, brightness distribution in arc, pool size, mean brightness of pool, metal flow speed on pool, etc.. The brightness is a good indicator to pick up unusual feature. One problem for analysis of captured data is a data depth. Normal data depth is 8bit, this means that digital range of brightness value is from 0 to 255. This data range is so small for actual arc welding process. When we focus the analysis in arc ignition period, brightness value of major target on this stage is less than those in steady state.

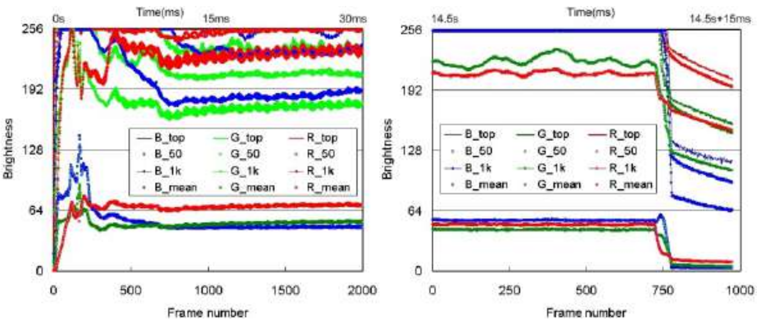


Figure 16. Time response of brightness in each frames.

Figure 16 shows the example of brightness values. This figure show maximum value(top), 50th value from the top, 1000th value from the top and mean values for each colour. Camera condition is set to get clear image of sputters during arc igniton period, so rather over exposure condition is used, and some data in bright area are saturated. Top 1000th data is appeared in the graph, and many of top 50th data also appeared in the figure. Data size of this video is 320x256(=81,920elements), then top 1000th data means top 3% value. In this meaning, capturing condition of this figure is almost the best to understand on arc ignition stage. Figure 16 also shows brightness on the end stage. Brightness increases with time until being on the steady state. So, all top values are saturated. Radiation of plasma suddenly stops with arc expiration, however many hot particles remains in space. Radiation from hot metal vapour is only appeared on this ending stage as shown in figure 12(h), so mean value of blue is increased at this ending moment.

Mean value is low compared to top values, because it contains low values in dark back ground. Figure 17 shows the difference of mean level for total image and it on arc and relating area. Tendency of both data is almost the same except sensitivity on alteration. A power source uses inverter control at high frequency. Brightness of arc changes with this frequency, and the frequency is close to image capturing rate of 54kfps. So some interference occurs as beat plotted in figure 17(b). However area size of target is almost the same, so mean value for whole image has some sense. Spectroscopic high speed imaging is also carried out, but video rate is 2kfps. Time charts of horizontal distribution shows the difference. Radiation by recombination of atom is essential at arc ignition duration until ion produces.

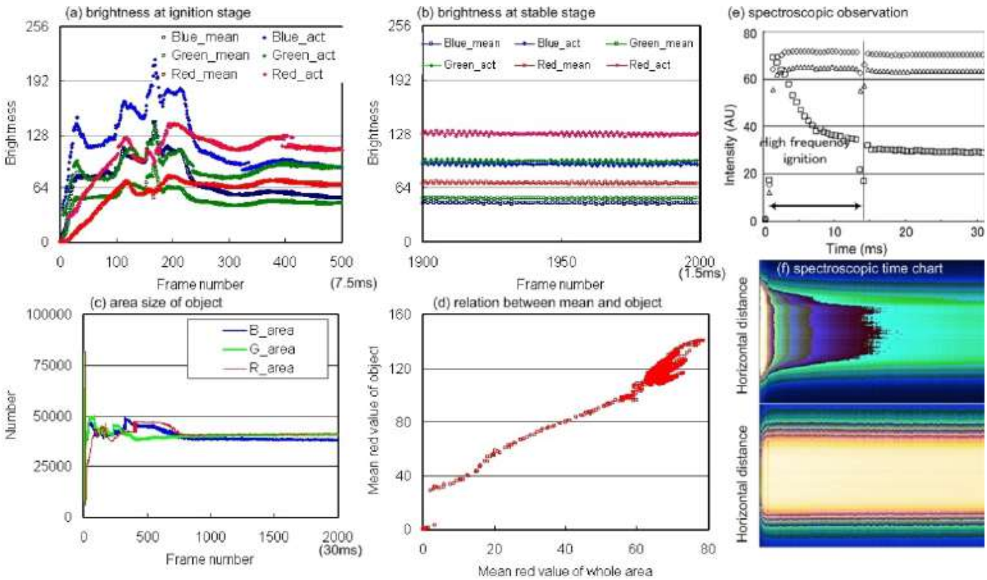


Figure 17. Examples of brightness characteristics.

Estimation of temperature on cathode and anode is important to understand welding process. Using thermal radiation value is good way to estimate temperature distribution even it usually over estimates the temperature by arc influence. Another way to estimate cathode temperature is using cathode spot area size. Electron density is a function of temperature, so estimation of mean temperature of cathode spot becomes possible when we count this area size from image. Figure 18 shows effect of gas contents on cathode temperature. Cathode spot in argon is concentrated on tip. Spot area size increases with helium addition. Cathode spot size suddenly increases when helium content exceeds 25%. Cathode temperature becomes high with cathode size enlargement. This sudden change causes by cooling effect of electrode. When the cathode spot is small and it locates on the top, current passing through the cone shaped electrode is heated efficiently by concentrated current in the cone shaped electrode. Cooling effect acts also efficiently by conduction in the cone. When cathode spot is enlarged by helium addition in argon, heating efficiency decreases. Heating by hot helium collision onto the upper position of the electrode also increases.

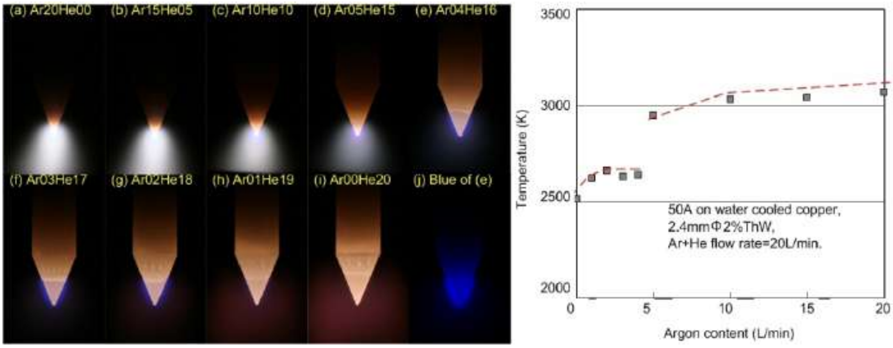


Figure 18. Effect of gas contents on arc behaviour.

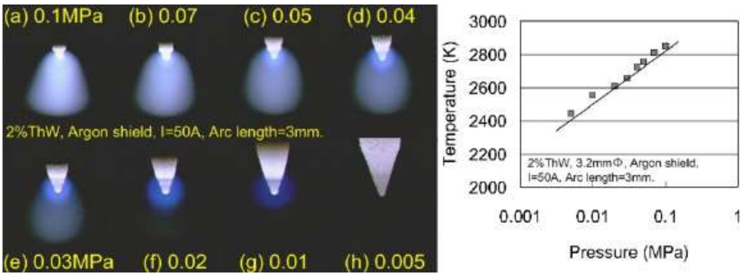


Figure 19. Effect of pressure on arc behaviour and electrode temperature.

Temperature change by ambient pressure is also estimated as shown in figure 19. Shielding gas is pure argon in this case, but argon is fulfilled in an experimental pressure chamber in this case. So, there is no flow of argon along the electrode, cooling action by shielding gas is not existed. And cooling system of cathode is different, those are reactions that cathode temperature at atmospheric condition is higher than the temperature shown in figure 18. Argon arc in low pressure looks like helium arc at atmospheric condition.

Figure 20 shows dynamic response of thermal radiation. Both electrodes are tungsten. Upper one is cathode, and lower one is anode. This movie is captured through interference filter of 532nm. Pseudo colour display is chosen to show brightness difference, because data depth of this high speed camera is 10bit. Much heat is lost by emission of electron at cathode. Anode is heated by impingement of electrons. This is the reason why anode is much brighter than cathode. Figure 21 shows effects of wavelength on brightness. Upper pictures show original monochrome image, and lower pictures show pseudo colour image. Thermal radiation at short wavelength is much less compared to long wavelength, because the highest radiation occurs at about 950-1100nm. Capturing conditions are set in proper value for each wavelength. Brightness is also normalized, so contour line shows approximate brightness distribution.

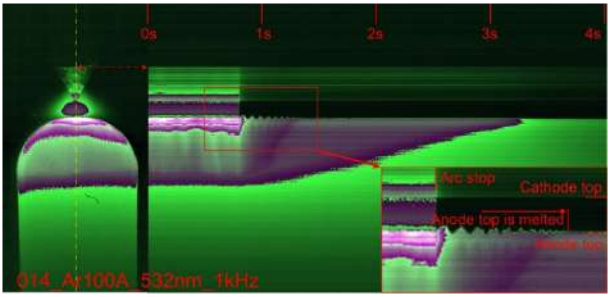


Figure 20. Dynamic response of thermal radiation.

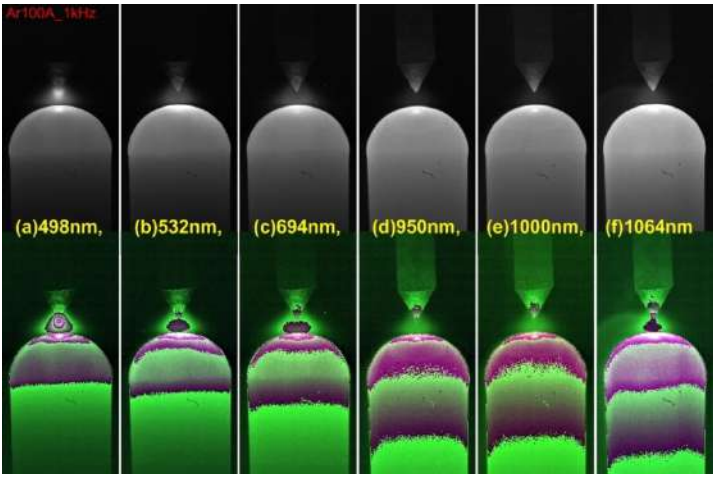


Figure 21. Effect of wavelength on radiation.

Estimation of temperature from brightness is simple method. But correction of obtained data is difficult. There are many unknown factors to correct. One simple way to correct the data is using the data at solidification area. Latent heat of solidification causes some typical feature around this area. When the brightness data is arranged as time chart, the same value continues at solidification stage as shown among point b and c in figure 22. Period between 'a' and 'b' is melting stage without arc influence. Dropped values from arc stage to no arc stage are about 1500 at point D, 1000 at point C and 750 at point A. These values are affected by radiation from arc. Point A is not melted. Solidification starts at b, and it ends at c when almost all metal near the point c is solidified. Data during melting period, which is between 'a' and 'b', are almost the same. Brightness data increases when solidification starts, surface of solid state is rough and it is covered by oxide, so radiation efficiency is high than the liquid state. One problem is why brightness data at C and D are different. Time period during solidification is longer at Point D, this is reasonable because heat capacity on fat area is higher.

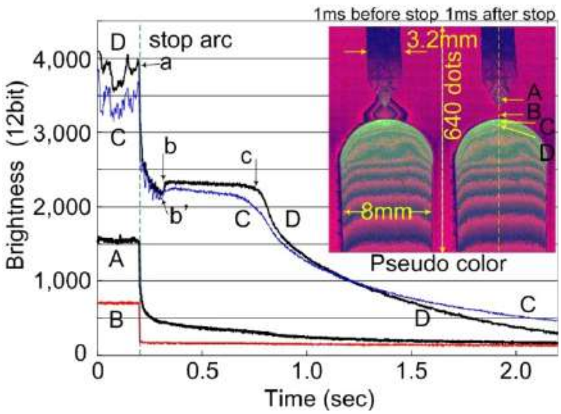


Figure 22. Measurement of surface temperature.

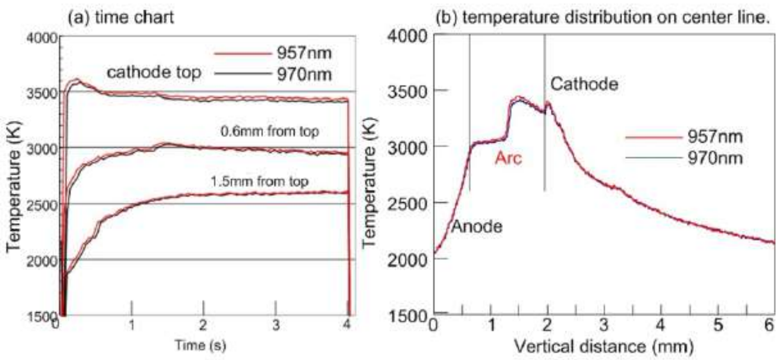


Figure 23. Example of single colour video for arc ignition stage.

Figure 23 shows temperature distribution calculated by brightness data. Argon is used as shielding gas in this case, and bead on plate welding is carried out. Used band-pass filters are 957nm and 970nm. Capturing condition is set to fit the brightness on tungsten electrode becomes just below the saturation. The reason why near wavelength is used is to estimate the influence from arc radiation. Calculated results for both cases are almost the same. Temperature at top position becomes high at early stage of arc ignition. The arc is concentrated at the top, therefor the temperature becomes high. Temperature becomes stable about 2 to 3 seconds later. Values of temperatures are higher compared to those as shown in figure18. Reasonable correction of brightness data is necessary.

Figure 24 shows temperature distribution of bottom surface of the welding pool. There is no affection by arc radiation, and boundary between liquid and solid is clearly recognized in this case. Melting temperature can be used to correct brightness data to temperature. Brightness on solid area is higher than that on solid area, therefore different fitting formula are used to determine the temperature value. Inside of red colour region is molten pool, and precise temperature distribution on welding pool is drawn in right. Upper picture shows early stage of welding, and lower one is the distribution in steady state. Length of welding pool becomes longer.

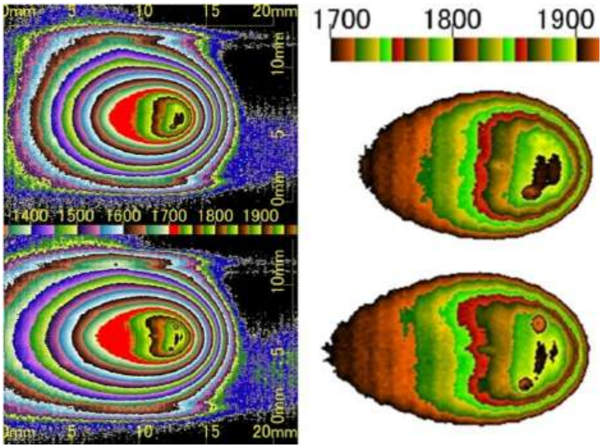


Figure 24. Pseudo colour image of temperature distribution.

4. Analysis of steady state

4.1. Effect of active flux on arc behaviour

Figure25 shows effect of active flux on behaviour of welding process. Upper pictures are captured on slant position. Lower pictures are capture in horizontal position to watch metal vapor on the pool. Major difference is size of anode area. Anode area for normal welding is wide. Anode area for active flux is narrow, and some vapor jet is shown on anode area. Next difference is position of metallic vapour color on the cathode. Metal vapour in arc decreases plasma temperature, because ionization potential of metal is much lower than argon and helium. And metal vapour is fully ionized in arc. Metal ion moves to cathode by electric field. Anode area for active flux is very narrow. This means that electron is constricted to this size, and almost all electrons impinge on this area. On the contrary, electron for normal case is wide spread to broad anode area.

Figure 26 shows the dynamic response of arc behaviour from normal area to an area where active flux is painted. Arc starts from left(normal area) to right(active flux area). Anode area on normal case is wide. When an welding pool reaches to active flux area, melted active flux invades on to the pool. And anode area is pushed to rear side by invaded flux layer. Upper pictures and lower pictures were captured by different maker's camera. A camera captured images in figure 26 is also made by different maker. Cone angle of electrodes, and surface treatment, and captured date are, but welding condition and material are the same. Tones of colour are quite different for these pictures. Another difference between normal arc and active flux is pool behaviour. Front position of the pool becomes closer on active flux case. And there is no change on pool length, so pool end moves to rear on active flux. Vibration level increases on active flux, many small ripples are produced.

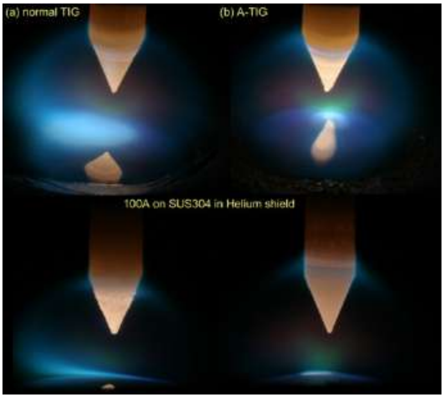


Figure 25. Effect of active flux on arc process.

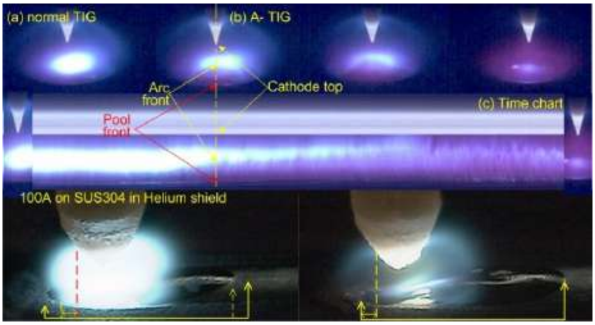


Figure 26. Effect of active flux on arc and pool behaviour.

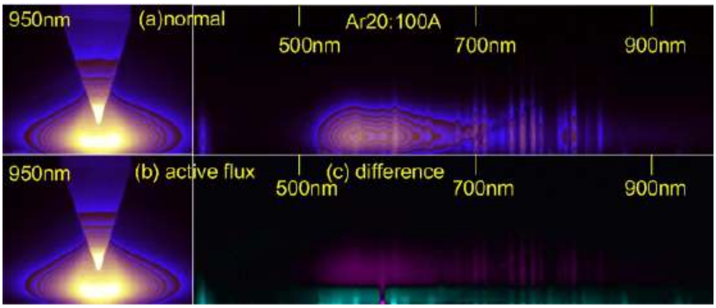


Figure 27. Effect of active flux on arc plasma.

Figure 27 shows typical pictures of plasma configuration and spectrum distribution in pseudo colour. Arc is generated in argon. Left pictures are single colour images at 950nm, which range has no strong spectra for argon, for normal stainless steel and stainless steel with active flux. These pictures are displayed in pseudo colour to intense the difference of both conditions. These are single colour images, and brighter point indicates higher temperature. Upper right picture shows spectrum distribution along central line of cathode for normal welding. Lower right picture shows the difference between normal case and active flux. The region where the brightness for normal plate is higher than it for active flux, displayed in green colour. Red colour shows the opposite case. The intensity shows amount of the difference of brightness. Radiation from normal plate near the molten pool is larger. On the contrary, the brightness for active flux is higher in the electrode surface and outer space of main plasma as shown in red colour. Radiation from active flux area near surface is very low.

Actual physical and chemical process acts on brightness. Brightness on cathode is low. It is difficult to recognize the difference to watch normal video by human eye. However there is some difference of frequency on space and/or time. Pseudo colour display is good method to show spatial difference as shown in figure 28(a,b). Small difference due to chemical reaction also can be extracted as shown in figure 28(c,d). Melted thorium oxide on electrode moves from upper side to top position. Behaviour of this chemical and physical reaction becomes visible by some numerical treatment. These reactions remain the evidence on the electrode. These evidence can be watched by SEM and EDM.

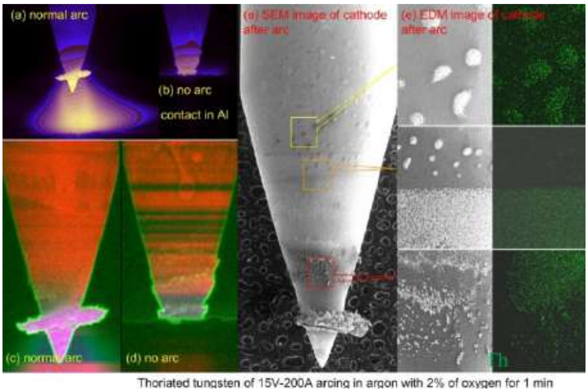


Figure 28. Effect of oxygen for reactions on cathode.

4.2. Effect of gravity on arc behaviour

Figure 29 shows effects of gravity on welding process. High speed video is captured by drop tower experiment. Height of free drop zone is 10m, and time duration of micro gravity is 1.3sec. This time period is short, but it is enough to detect transient motion from normal gravity condition to micro gravity condition. There is no time limit to continue welding process before drop trial. Shape of molten metal is clearly affected by gravity. There is no apparent change on molten metal flow on the weld pool. However, inertial force acts on metal flow, and the time response of inertial force is unknown. Reconstruction period to balance static forces is finished in 10ms, and some vibration by overshoot motion remains around 10ms.

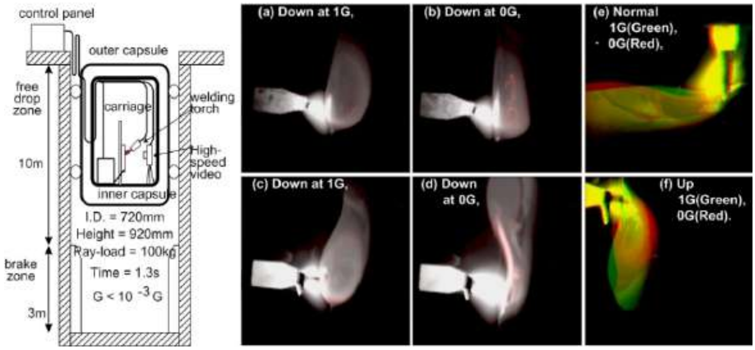


Figure 29. Results of drop tower experiment.

4.3. High speed imaging of metal transfer on GMAW process

High speed imaging of wire melting and droplet transfer phenomena have been carried out for long time. Silhouette imaging by using of strong external light was essential for observing metal transfer during Gas Metal Arc Welding (GMAW) process. GMAW process has some periodical vibration on metal transfer. Using band pass filters in near infrared wavelength becomes convenient because it contains information on temperature(Ogawa, 2004).

Figure 30 shows the typical metal transfer of GMA welding by interference filter of 950 nm without external lighting. Streak imaging is also useful to show dynamic behaviour. The reactions at the plasma/metal interface include oxygen removal at the anode and the discharge and pick-up of oxygen ions at the cathode. Figure 30 shows the reaction of oxygen invaded into the molten metal in the melted wire. A combination of invaded oxygen and carbon in wire makes carbon oxide gas. The gas is abruptly expanded by high temperature and exploded on the way to the work piece. Streak image shows points for spattering and unusual situation. Spatters are recognised as spike lines to the outsides from the wire centre, and the flying speed is recognised as its locus angle. Abrupt expansion of the droplet is recognised as an irregular knot. This scene is automatically detected by image processing of this figure. The merit of the high speed imaging system is that it uses digital data; therefore, effective analysis can proceed automatically(Ogawa et al., 2003).

A single colour video is a kind of thermal image, and it is presented in pseudo colour to emphasise the physical changes. Cathode spot exists in the first frame. The melting part at the top of the wire is growing, and the region between this melting part and the solid wire becomes slender. Current density of this slender portion becomes high, and temperature of this region increases quickly. Pinch force is also acted in this region. The combination of these forces drives to release the metal. Arc is soon generated between new tip and droplet with some small spatters. This set of images gives a visual representation of transfer modes in GMAW.

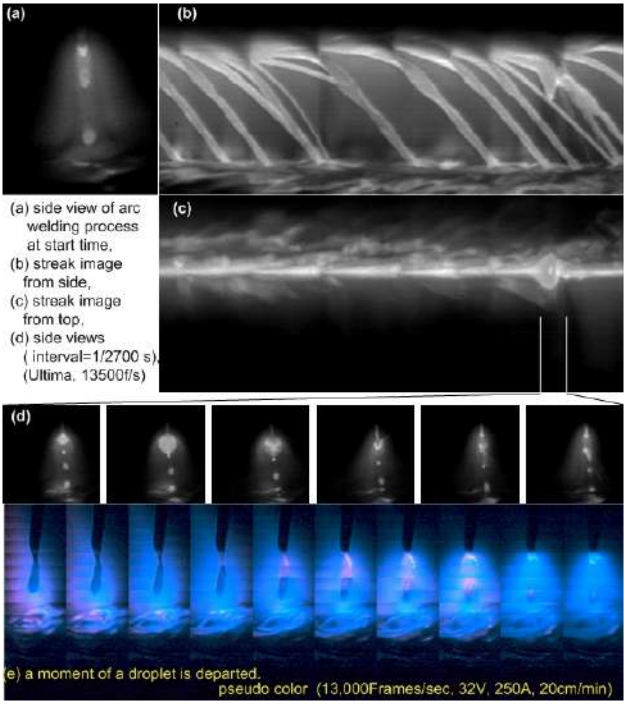


Figure 30. Time chart to pick up abnormal condition.

4.4. High speed imaging of Laser Welding process

Laser welding is very high speed welding method. Hybrid system such as Laser Arc hybrid and Laser Hot wire hybrid are often used to improve joining efficiency of large structures. Normal observation of arc welding process uses fixed torch system. Work piece moves during welding. High speed camera is heavy and big to carry on laser torch. When moving object is captured by fixed camera, object to watch moves in the scene as shown in figure 31(a). Reconstructing the scene as static torch system is easy as shown in figure 31(b). However, this system needs wide range of image size. Static coordinate observation system saves image size and/or improve spatial resolution as shown in figure 31(c).

Torch moving system has good points to present information on quality of whole welding result as shown in figure 32. These pictures are produced by using of histogram information. Lights have several infomations of their origin, and they appear in statistical features. Behaviours of arc, fume and sputters are apparently drawn by statistical features. Laser itself is invisible. But laser acts on fume and plume, and some statistical change appeares on its value. So laser channel can be shown from reconstructed image as shown in figure 33. Figure 33 shows pseudo color display of mean value image, original mean image and deviation images, respectively. Laser beam channel is apparent in this figure.

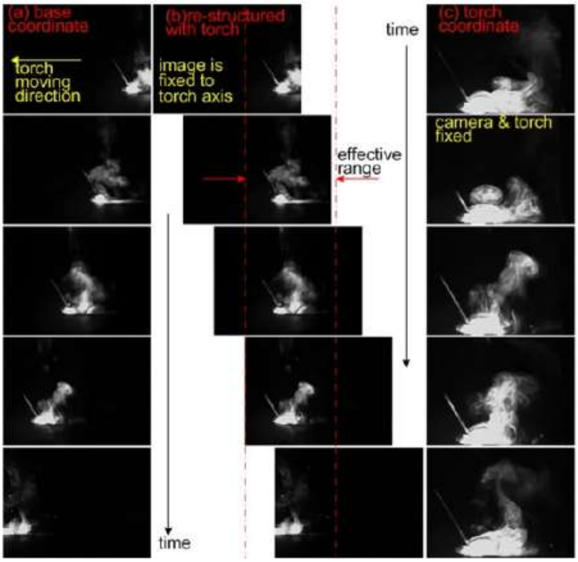


Figure 31. Comparison of coordinate system.

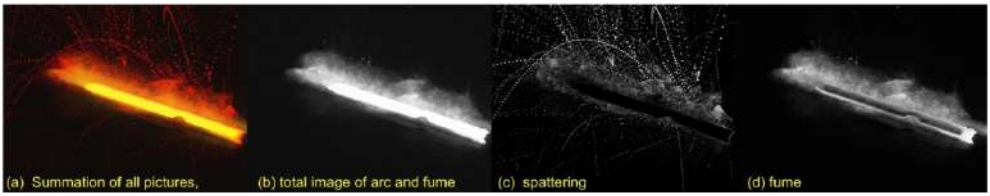


Figure 32. Exsample of imaging methods..

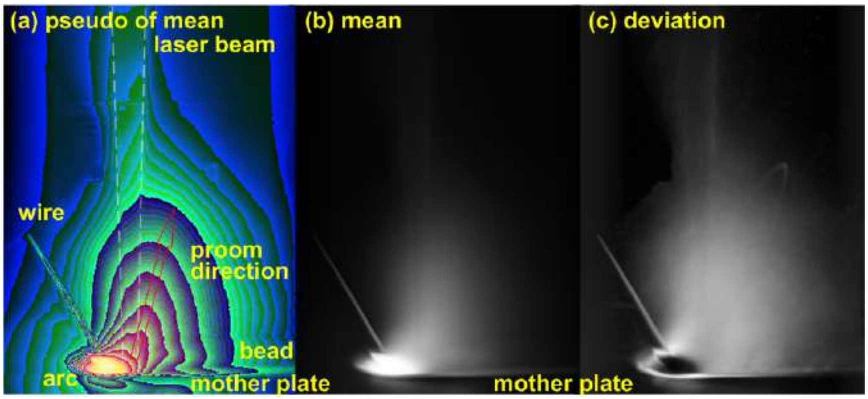


Figure 33. Statistical image of laser arc hybrid welding.

4.5. Monitoring and evaluation of GTAW process

Figure 34 shows a training system for weldrs of one side butt welding of thin stainless steel. This system uses four cameras to identify welder's skill. Welding trials are carried out by manual operation. A torch camera captures weld pool and arc. Camera 2 and 3 are fixed on carriage to capture surface and bottom situations of welded plate. Camera 4 is a fixed camera to observe welders motion. The camera 3 is the most important camera to identify the weld quality. This camera captures the conditon of bottom pool, and the system indicates analysed status of penetrated condition by sound on real time. Five tones are used to notice the actual condition to the welder. The welder can watch bottom situation by small LCD monitor inside the cover face. This monitor indicates only the image from camera 3. Voltage and current signals are also recorded and shown on the screen with colour. When the signal is out of suitable range, normal green colour changes to red. The collected data is stored in the data folder. In the same moment, a mentor of the welder tells to the welder about important points, and this voice is also recorded in the system. The welder can watch his own operation to select his data. Almost the same features are reproduced by the system with mentors indicated voice. Several reference information on mentors' operation and editorial videos are stored in the reference folder. The trainee can watch the reference video at any time. So he can learn his skill without any stress of actual welding operation. Another purpose of this system is to study relationship among voltage and amperage signals, torch camera image, and penetrated situation. Data of more than 200 welders of several welding companies were acquired to improve evaluation algorithm from torch camera image and electrical signals of manual welding. The same data on automatic welding operation are also acquired in various welding conditions. Evaluation of weld quality by one camera system becomes possible, when the feature of the welder was stored in the data base. One camera system is used on actual production process, and whole manual process is recorded to evaluate the quality of the products.

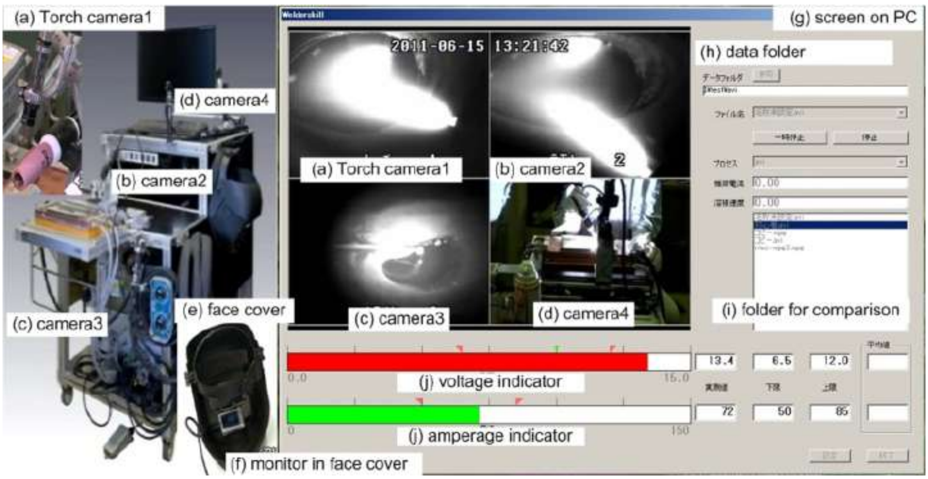


Figure 34. Training machine of GTA welders of one sided full penetration butt welding.

5. Conclusion

High speed imaging on welding process is a powerful tool to understand their nature. Deep knowledge on principle of target process is necessary to take and analyse succesfully. Some fundamental technique on high speed imaging are described in this paper.

Author details

Yoji Ogawa
Ogawa Giken Co.ltd. & AIST, Japan

6. References

Inoue, K. (1981) Image processing for on-line detection of weld process, Trans. JWRI, No.10, pp.13-18

Ogawa, Y. (2008) Accurate three dimensional measurement of arc welding phenomena, J. Soc. Instrum. Control Eng., Vol.47, pp.65-68 (in Japanese)

Ogawa, Y. (2011). High speed imaging technique Part 1, Science and Technology of Welding and Joining, Vol.16, No.1, pp.16-26

Pattee, H. E. et al. (1973). Effect of arc radiation and heat on welders, Welding Journal, Vol.52, pp.297-308

Shaw, C. B. Jr (1975). Diagnostic studies of the GTAW arc. Part 1. observational studies, Welding Journal, Vol.54, pp.33s-44s

Zacharia, T. & David, S.A. (1993). Mathematical Modeling of Weld Phenomena, Welding Journal, Vol.52, pp.3-23

Chapter 13

Monitoring of Arc Welding Process Based on Arc Light Emission

Marek Stanisław Węglowski

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/49987

1. Introduction

A welding process may be expressed as a system shown in Figure 1 whose outputs depends on the welding conditions or their nominal constants (which determine the dynamic model of the system), controlled by the variables or inputs (adjustable welding parameters), and affected by the disturbances (fluctuations or variations of welding conditions from their nominal constants), (Zhang Y.M., 2008).

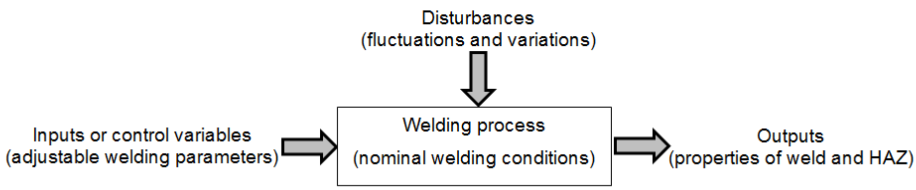


Figure 1. The welding process as a system (Zhang Y.M., 2008)

One of the major goals of the process monitoring in welding is to assure that the required welding parameters are being applied into the process to make a quality of welds. In case abnormal welding parameters are detected, the resultant segment of welds may be post-examined using the more precise methods, (Blakeley P. J., 1990; Siewert T., et al, 1992; Chen X.Q., 2002; Pan J., 2003). This would help to reduce the need of strict/expensive process controls and reduce an extensive use of the costly post NDT (Non-destructive Testing) of all welds. To this end, the monitoring devices are required to be fully automatic and the data analysis of sensed signals including welding parameters and signal generated from the welding arc need to be optimized. In addition, the monitoring devices must also incorporate the criteria so that they can judge if the welds are acceptable or need the additional examinations/repairs.

Monitoring of the welding processes can be divided into the traditional and non-traditional methods (Fig. 2). The traditional methods are based on the monitoring of the electrical and other direct welding parameters, (Kim J.W., et al, 1991; Johnson J.A., et al, 1991; Modenesi P. J., Nixon J.H., 1994; Luksa K., 2006). The non-traditional ones use many different signals, for example: x-ray radiation (Guu A.C., et al, 1992), IR and UV emission (Fan H., et al, 2003), ultrasonic wave (Carlson N.M., et al, 1992), acoustic emission (Taylor-Burge K.L., Harris T.J., 1993) and sound (Saini D., Floyd S., 1998; Luksa K., 2003) to analyse and detect the process.

The traditional methods have been effectively used in the welding process monitoring and control. For example, the measurements of the welding current and arc voltage can be used to estimate the stability of the welding processes, especially with the advanced methods of the signal analysis and AI methods, (Smith J., Lucas B., 1999). The so-called "through the arc sensing", which is based on the measurement and analysis of the welding current and arc voltage, is a widely used traditional method which has been accepted as one of the effective methods for the weld seam tracking. The synergic control of GMAW machines (Amin M., Naseer A., 1987) is also based on the measurements of the current and arc voltage. One interesting case where on-line control of the weld quality is based on the characteristics of the welding arc signal is the narrow groove GMAW with an electromagnetic arc oscillation (Kang Y.H., Na S.J., 2003). The relatively complex plasma arc welding process can be also monitored by using of an electrical signal from the pilot arc (Lu W., Zhang Y.M., 2004). In addition, traditional methods are also useful for detecting of disturbances of the welding process in the form of surface impurities and insufficient shield in GMAW. Monitoring is carried out using specialized monitoring equipment or universal measurement cards.

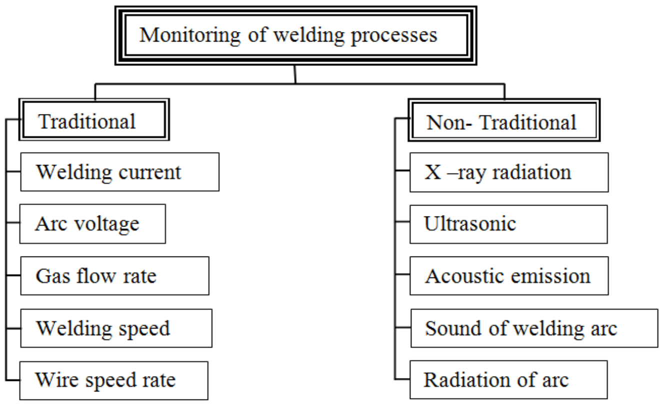


Figure 2. Monitoring methods of welding processes and typical signals

While the traditional methods have advantages of being low-cost and have achieved many successes as aforementioned, many existing issues may require the use of the signals more than the welding current, arc voltage, and the other direct welding parameters. For example, monitoring and control of a weld penetration is an important issue in welding, (Zheng B., et al, 2009) which may require the use of the non-traditional methods. The real-time vision systems take the lead in the non-traditional monitoring methods especially on the robotic welding applications. The CCD (Charge Coupled Devices) video cameras which can be used with the fast algorithms can give us real-time estimates of stability of the process, quality of welds, for example depth of the penetration, (Zhang Y.M., et al, 1993). However, the investment for non-traditional methods is typically high. Cost effective non-traditional methods such as the arc light radiation monitoring which can measure and analyse the intensity of the whole range of the arc light spectrum or intensity of a single emission line (Li P.J., et al, 2001; Wang Q.L., et al, 1997; Yoo C.D., et al, 1997; Ancona A., et al, 2004; Sadek C.A., et al, 2006; Li Z.Y., et al, 2009; Mirapeix J., et al, 2008) are thus desired. This method was first used to determine the length of the arc in the method of MAG in 1966 (Johnson C.A., et al, 1966). The spectroscopy methods are also finding application in the other welding processes such as laser welding (Stabillano T., et al, 2009; Bruncko J., et al, 2003; Kong F., et al, 2012). However, new methods of monitoring require the use of sophisticated measuring equipment, which in most cases need to be adapted for the measurement in welding.

2. Arc light radiation

They are many sources of an electromagnetic radiation of the welding arc area. It can be: the arc column, the regions close to the electrodes, the liquid metal transported across the welding arc, the molten pool, the heated region of the base material around the molten pool, the heated end of the electrode wire ((Pattee H.E., et al, 1973). The welding parameters strongly influence on the range of the wavelength of the electromagnetic radiation and their spectral composition (Hinrichs J.F., 1978). The intensity of the radiation produced by the welding arc is a function of the welding process itself and of the welding variables. The welding arc spectrum can be divided according to wavelength as shown in Table 1. The welding arc in the TIG method are shown in Figure 3.

Type	Wavelength [nm]
Extreme ultraviolet	4 – 200
Ultraviolet	200 – 400
Visible	400 – 750
Infrared	750 – 1300
Far infrared	1300 – Hertzian wavelength

Table 1. Radiation from welding arcs (Hinrichs J.F., 1978)

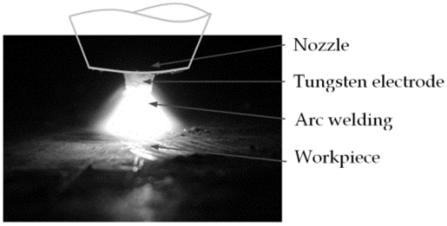


Figure 3. The shape of the TIG arc (welding current 100 A, arc length 2 mm)

The energy dissipated in the arc column is mainly dissipated by the conduction and convection. Emission of an electromagnetic radiation is 10 to 15% of the energy supplied to the arc (Marzec S., Janosik E., 1995). Thermal radiation, whose source is a body of high temperature, is characterized by a continuous spectrum of radiation. The source of the continuous spectrum in the arc is mostly a liquid weld pool (Quigley M., 1977). Radiation characteristics of ions and atoms in the arc is a discrete (Glickstein S., 1976). This type of radiation is analysed in the literature as a plasma radiation.

The plasma at a temperature within the range between several tens of eV and keV (the energy scale 1 eV = 11 600 K) emits an infrared radiation, visible, ultraviolet or X-rays, which, due to the emission mechanism can be divided into the three basic types (Huddlestone R., 1965):

- the line radiation of atoms or ions sent during the move from the one discrete energy level to another (transition between states related);
- the recombination radiation associated with the free-electron uptake by one of the discrete levels of atoms or ions (the transition between the state of the free and associated states);
- braking radiation in the free-electron zone's ion (transitions between free states).

The total radiation of the plasma arc is the sum of a continuous radiation and line radiation of the spectral lines (Szymański A., 1991). This sum can be written as:

$$\varepsilon_{\lambda} = \varepsilon_{\lambda,c} + \sum \varepsilon_{\lambda,L} \tag{1}$$

where: $\varepsilon_{\lambda,c}$ - intensity of radiation with a continuous spectrum, $\varepsilon_{\lambda,L}$ - intensity of spectral lines; sum appearing on the right side of the equation is carried out after all lines lying in the area.

For the optically thin plasma radiation intensity with the continuous spectrum can be written as (Szymański A., 1991):

$$\varepsilon_{\lambda,c} = k_{\lambda,c}(T) \cdot B_{\lambda}(T) \cdot \left(1 - \exp\left(-\frac{hc}{\lambda kT} \right) \right) \tag{2}$$

where: $B_{\lambda}(T)$ - the Planck function for blackbody, $k_{\lambda,c}(T)$ - the total absorption coefficient, T – arc temperature [K], h - Planck's constant ($6{,}6262 \cdot 10^{-34}$ [Js]), c - speed of light in vacuum ($2{,}9979 \cdot 10^{8}$ [ms^{-1}]), λ - wavelength [nm], k - Boltzmann constant $1{,}38 \cdot 10^{-23}$ [JK^{-1}].

The formula for the intensity of the continuous radiation is valid regardless of whether the plasma is in a state of the local thermal equilibrium (LRT) or not. The intensity of a spectral line $\varepsilon_{\lambda,L}$ data is an expression (Szymański A., 1991):

$$\varepsilon_{\lambda,L} = \frac{hcg_q A_{qp} N_e N_i}{8\pi\lambda U_i(T)} \left(\frac{h^3}{2\pi mkT} \right) \cdot \exp\left(\frac{E_{i,q} - \Delta E_i}{kT} \right) \cdot P_{qp}(\lambda) \tag{3}$$

where: g_q – the statistical weight of upper level; A_{qp} – probability of transition; $E_{i,q}$ – ionization energy of the upper level; ΔE_i – decrease of the ionization potential; P_{qp} –line profile, N_e – electron density, N_i – joins density, U_i - the statistical sum of the ion, m – mass of particle.

A spectral distribution and an intensity of the thermal radiation depends on the body temperature. Black bodies with the temperatures up to 500 K emit mostly the infrared radiation at a wavelength > 2 μm. Body with a temperature above about 1000 K, in addition to a long-term infrared radiation also emit the infrared radiation close to the wavelength range 0,78 ÷ 1,4 μm, and very little, because less than 1% of visible radiation. Only body at a temperature higher than 3000 K emits infrared and a visible radiation is also a slightly (0,1%) long-term ultraviolet radiation. Only the body with a temperature above 4000 K emits ultraviolet radiation shorter than 315 nm (Marzec S., Janosik E., 1995). The welding arc radiation intensity is the greatest at the wavelengths between 200 and 1300 nm [16]. The share of the infrared radiation, visible light and ultraviolet radiation in the spectrum depends on the welding method, and the welding parameters (H.E. Pattee, et al, 1973).

The highest intensity of the visible radiation of the arc welding processes is observed in the MIG/MAG and next MMA, TIG and plasma welding. It was also found that the intensity of the ultraviolet radiation increases with the square of the welding current and the intensity of visible radiation is not growing so vigorously (H.E. Pattee, et al, 1973). The intensity of the ultraviolet radiation and visible light emission when welding with the coated electrodes and cored wires (MIG/MAG and self-shielding wires) in the presence of welding fumes is less than that in case of TIG process (for similar welding current). Under the same conditions, the intensity of the infrared radiation does not change dramatically. When a submerged arc welding process is used the visible and ultraviolet radiation is absorbed by a layer of a flux.

Radiation characteristics of the ions and atoms in the arc has a discrete character, and the source of radiation is mainly argon atoms and ions, iron, oxygen and nitrogen. The intensity of radiation of the other elements is much lower. In the wavelength range of the visible radiation spectrum iron, oxygen and nitrogen lines, and only partially spectrum of argon, which the ionization potential is much higher are mainly composed (Petrie T.W., Pfender E. 1970). This also means, that the emission of the light by atoms and ions of argon occurs at the higher temperatures than the temperatures reached at the arc welding for example, in a mixture of $Ar+CO_2$.

The discrete spectral studies provide information about the temperature of the radiation-emitting particles, because the excitation of particles required to provide it with a certain amount of the energy, and for this reason the temperature can be measured. The source of this type of radiation in the arc welding is mainly plasma arc column, but also the metal transported by the arc, slag, and the surface of the welded components (Etemadi K., Pfender E., 1982). The energy regions close to the anode and cathode arc are consumed for heating and melting of the electrode and the base material. It is known that the potential and kinetic energy of the electrons are converted into the surface of the anode heat causing it to intense heat (Petrie T.W., Pfender E., 1970).

The arc radiation is a complex phenomenon and dependent on a number of the welding parameters. To apply for monitoring the radiation of the arc welding process with a high accuracy and reliability is necessary to create the model of the binding intensity of the visible radiation from the arc welding parameters (Yoo C.D., et al, 1997). The welding arc can be regarded as a point source of the radiation. However, this approach in many applications seems to be insufficient. A better approach is to treat the arc as a cylindrical source of the radiation. This model accurately reproduces the actual shape of the welding arc and makes examination of the arc radiation easier. For this reason, it will be elaborated. Cylindrical model can also be simplified and presented as a half-sphere of the welding arc, which is used in the design of the monitoring systems of automated welding process, based on the machine vision systems (Lee C.W., Na S.J., 1996; Yu J.Y., et al, 2003).

Arc column consists of the three types of particles: electrons, ions and neutral atoms. It is assumed that the arc column is in the state of a local thermodynamic equilibrium, in which the electron collisions play an important role in the excitation and ionization.

Equation 2 describes the arc emission of the radiation with a continuous spectrum. Given the relationship between the wavelength and frequency $c / \lambda = \nu$, and the Planck function for the black body, as well as when $h\nu / kT \ll 1$, the Rayleigh-Jeans'a law is performed. Then the equation 2 can be simplified to:

$$\varepsilon_{\nu} = k'(\nu)\frac{2\nu^2}{c^2}kT_e \tag{4}$$

where: υ - frequence [Hz], T_e - the kinetic temperature of electrons [K].

Compatibility equations 2 with 4 is better than 5% for $\lambda_L T>4{,}3$ cmK, where λ_L is wavelength [cm]. The right side of equation 4 has a value equal to 1 (approximately) for the infrared and visible radiation. Also, at atmospheric pressure and a normal range of the welding current, the electron temperature is close to the temperature of the arc. Considering the above and apart from the differences in the temperature, it can be eq. 4 write as:

$$\varepsilon_{\upsilon} = k'(\upsilon)\ \frac{2\upsilon^2}{c^2}kT \tag{5}$$

where: T the arc temperature [K].

To simplify the discussion, the gradient of the temperature along the axis of the arc can be omitted. By combining the emission coefficients for the different areas of the arc, the energy radiated from the entire arc can be expressed as:

$$B_{i\upsilon} = \iiint \varepsilon_{\upsilon} d\upsilon \tag{6}$$

After the calculation of the emission factors in the whole arc welding, and after assuming that electrical conductivity and voltage gradient are constant and taking into consideration the impact of visible light weld pool (Zhang Y.M., Li P.J., 2001):

$$B_{iv} = G_1 L I^{\gamma}\left(e^{\frac{G_2}{I}} - \frac{1}{2}\right) + G_3 I^2 + G_4 \tag{7}$$

where: γ, G_i – constants, L – arc length, I – welding current.

Equation 7 gives a relationship between the radiation and the visible arc welding parameters, including the current intensity and the arc length. The authors of the model (Zhang Y.M., Li P.J., 2001) show that this equation is satisfied for arc welding with a current of 150 A, because at the higher currents the current density is not constant over the entire volume of the welding arc.

3. Investigation of the arc electromagnetic radiation

The investigation has been carried out to date focused mainly on examining the luminance of the arc, impact of radiation on the health of the welders (Hinrichs J.F.,1978) and systems to protect them, and to development the tracking systems (torch position). Analysis of the visible light spectrum emitted by the arc welding is used to study the distribution of a temperature in the arc (Farmer A.J.D., Haddad G.N., 1984), calculate the average temperature of the welding arc, an amount of a hydrogen in the shielding gas (Grove L., et al, 1970), and the temperature of molten metal weld pool. The analysis of the arc light emission may help to develop the technique of taking photographs of the welding arc. Spectroscopic methods are a useful tool for studying turbulent shielding gas after leaving the gas nozzle in the TIG and MIG/MAG methods, relationship between the spectral distribution of radiation and the type of a base material and the electron density distribution.

It should be emphasized that the study of the visible radiation in the method of the arc welding MIG / MAG was also used to monitor the metal transfer process in the arc (Wang Q.L., Li P.J. 1997). Methods that use the electrical signals (measure the welding current and arc voltage) are effective only to track the short arc and globular metal transfer welding process. When the metal is being transferred by the spray mode, the signal / noise ratio is too small, and the greater accuracy is achieved by measuring the intensity of the visible radiation arc (Wang Q.L., Li P.J., 1997). Optical methods are also applied to scan the length of the welding arc in the TIG and the MIG/MAG methods.

In parallel, a wide range of plasma research is conducted. First of all, emission spectroscopy and scattering of a laser radiation (laser spectroscopy) were used. These methods allow the calculation of plasma parameters such as a temperature and concentration of atoms (ions, electrons).

The emission spectroscopy is a passive method in which the electromagnetic radiation from the plasma (one or many spectral lines) is recorded and analysed. The advantage of this method is particularly simple measurement. This requires an optical focusing system, a monochromator or a spectrometer and detector, which can be photomultiplier or CCD. The disadvantage of this method is that the recorded radiation is a total emitted from the plasma. In order to obtain measurement data from one particular point of the measurement, it is necessary to use the Abel transformation (Cho Y.T., Na S.J., 2005). Another disadvantage is the need to run the calculation assumptions that the plasma is in a state of a local thermodynamic equilibrium and is optically thin.

Laser spectroscopy is a more universal method. However, it requires a laser light source and a detection system. The method of the laser spectroscopy allows for determination of the plasma parameters at a given point. In some cases, calculation of the plasma parameters without the assumption that the plasma is in thermodynamic equilibrium allowed. This technique uses: the Rayleigh scattering, Tomson scattering, laser induced fluorescence (LIF) and two photon laser induced fluorescence.

Plasma radiation recorded in the measurements perpendicular to the axis of discharge (called side-on) is the sum of the smaller contributions from the various layers of plasma (Figure 4). The known Abel transformation (Cho Y.T., Na S.J., 2005) allows to determine ε(x) knowing I(x).

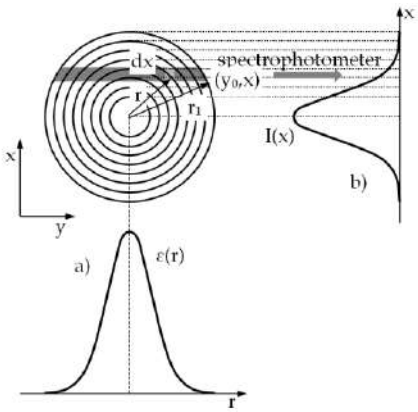


Figure 4. Cross section of the plasma column, the discharge axis is perpendicular to the plane of the paper, A - radial distribution of the emission factor, B - distribution of intensity observed on the side, I(x) - radiation distribution of intensity in the plane perpendicular to the direction in which the plasma is observed, x – distance from the direction of observation of plasma (Cho Y.T., Na S.J., 2005)

If the plasma in the observed cross-section is cylindrically symmetrical and the phenomenon of self-absorption does not occur, the radiation distribution of intensity in the plane perpendicular to the direction of observation of the plasma can be determined by the formula (Cho Y.T., Na S.J., 2005):

$$I(x) = 2 \cdot \int_{x}^{r_0} \frac{\varepsilon(r) \cdot r}{\sqrt{r^2 - x^2}}\, dr \tag{8}$$

where: ε(r) – intensity of radiation emitted by the plasma per unit thickness or distant from the axis of the discharge, x – distance from the direction of observation of plasma (Fig. 4), $2r_0$ – diameter of the area in which the plasma occurs.

Up to now, the main goals of the plasma investigation in the welding arc were creation the mathematical and physical models of the arc (Fan H.G., et al, 1997). These models will be very useful to design new welding machines. Very important aspect of experiments is to find the correlation between the electric welding parameters and the properties of the welding arc. Many experiments concern studies about the influence the composition of the shielding gas on the plasma properties. Also some investigation concern a magnetic arc deflection (Kang Y.H., Na S.J., 2002). The most important aim of investigation is to calculate the arc efficiencies. Many experiments were focus on the physical properties of the plasma welding arc, for example the temperature distribution, velocity fields of the electrons and ions, electrode work functions, and the local thermodynamic equilibrium in free-burning arcs in argon. Modern methods of welding, including A-TIG method, prompted the author (Ogawa, Y. 2004) to study the effect of the additional elements and compounds intentionally introduced to the area of the welding arc on properties.

In a study of the arc radiation it is important to determine the influence of individual factors on the width of the spectral peaks. Typical spectral line profile is shown in Figure 5 together with the characteristic values: x_c – wavelength of the center line, FWHM - Full Width at Half Maximum, I_{max} – maximum value for the radiation intensity of spectral line. The natural width of the spectral lines (Huddlestone R.H., Leonard S.L., 1965) is due to the finite lifetime of the energy levels and is higher, the lifetimes are shorter. Emission line profile resulting from natural broadening is the Lorentz distribution.

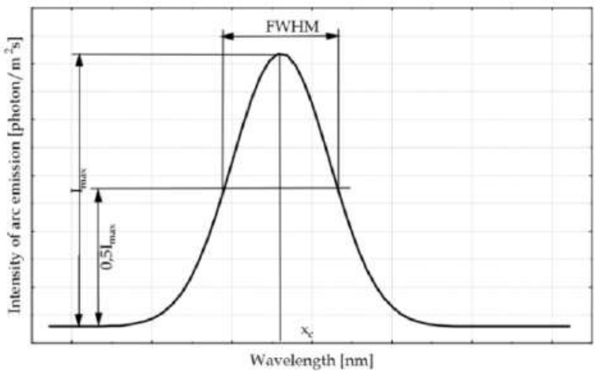


Figure 5. Typical spectral line profile

The second important factor is the Doppler broadening of the spectral lines, which is associated with the movement of the particles emitting the radiation. If the emitter has a velocity component of the direction consistent with the observation, the relative change in wavelength, involve a change in frequency is called Doppler effect. In the case of a thermal motion when emitting particle velocity distribution is Maxwell's distribution, the profile of the emitted spectral line is the Gaussian profile (Zielińska S., 2004).

Another kind of broadening, which can be encountered in the analysis of spectral lines, is a pressure broadening. This kind of broadening of the spectral line is the result of collisions with the other particles emitter. They can limit the lifetime of the excited atomic levels, and thus lead to an broadening of the line profile, which in this case is the Lorentz distribution. There are basically three types of the pressure broadening: the resonances, van der Waals and Stark (Zielińska S., 2004).

Components of the measurement system is a factor caused the further broadening of the spectral line. Apparatus profile in this case is the Gaussian profile. Theoretically, the spectrometer apparatus function should be linearly dependent on the wavelength. In reality, however, the profile apparatus is a convolution of functions associated with the matrix detector and functions of the optical elements of the spectrometer (Zielińska S., 2004).

The factors leading to the broadening of the spectral lines can be divided into given the Lorentz and Gaussian profiles. Their impact on the value of the broadening is different and may depend on conditions in the plasma. Resultant spectral line profile is a function which is a convolution of the Lorentz and Gauss functions (Huddlestone R.H., Leonard S.L., 1965) called the Voigt profile.

It should be noted that the photo-detector (CCD detector), in addition to the signal, measures also the background radiation. To eliminate the influence of background radiation, when analysing the intensity distribution of the welding arc radiation this radiation must be subtracted.

Taking into account the resolution of the transmitters, the recorded peaks are "cluster" of several spectral lines of a single element (Fig. 6), or even a few elements in the various degrees of ionization. So, matching the shape function is important in determining the exclusion of gravity for that group of peaks. The first element of the monitoring system of welding processes is to develop methods for the identification and measurement of the characteristic quantities of recorded spectral line, such as a peak width, position and amplitude of maximum. The examination which function better describes the profile of the peak ("cluster" of spectral lines) seems to be crucial for the detection of disturbances of the welding process. Profiles of the peaks can be matched using Gaussian, Lorentz and Voigt functions (Fig. 6).

Matching functions are carried out mostly using the least squares method (eg. Levenberg-Marquardt algorithm) and special software can be adapted for this purpose. On the basis of the matching function parameters the position of maximum spectral line (xc) and the spectral line width (FWHM) can be determined. In developing the experimental data even in so-called matching additive constant y_{00} must be considered. The constant is present due to the additional signals recorded by the measurement apparatus.

From the equation (7), a relationship between intensity of the welding arc radiation (energy radiated for a given spectral line xc) B_{iv}, arc length and welding current can be designated. Using a software, coefficients G_i and γ can be estimated basing on the collected data.

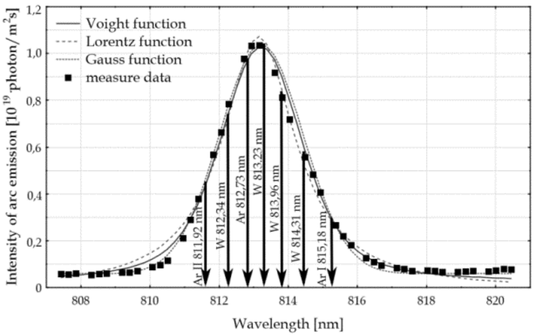


Figure 6. An example of peak matched Gaussian functions, Lorentz and Voigt, I=200 A, L=3 mm, 100 % Ar with marks of spectral lines .

The values of the parameters characterizing the welding process can be determined minimizing the sum of squares:

$$\chi^2 = \sum_l \sum_k \frac{1}{\left(\Delta B_{kl}\right)^2} \left[B_{kl}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda\right) - \tilde{B}_{kl}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda, \{g_i\}\right)\right]^2 \tag{9}$$

where: I_k – welding current; L_l – arc length; $B_{kl}(I_k, L_l, \lambda)$ - intensity of light of wavelength λ recorded during the welding current I_k, at arc length L_l; ΔB_{kl} - uncertainty set of light intensity $B_{kl}(I_k, L_l, \lambda)$; $\tilde{B}_{kl}$ $(I_k, L_l, \lambda, \{g_i\})$ - defined by formula (7) the theoretical intensity of the light with a wavelength λ recorded during the welding current I_k, at arc length L_l; $\{g_i\}=\{G_1, \gamma, G_2, G_3, G_4\}$ - set of values of the parameters appearing in formula (7).

Uncertainty-determination and the parameter $g \in \{g\} = \{G_1, \gamma, G_2, G_3, G_4\}$ is determined by the method described in (Kończak S., Nowak M., 1981):

$$\varepsilon_i = \frac{\chi^2}{m_p - m} h_{ii}^{-1} \tag{10}$$

where: h_{ii}^{-1} - ii component of the inverse Hesse matrix; χ^2 - sum of squared deviations from the theoretical value of the experimental results; m_p- number of experimental results; m- number of parameters designated by the matching.

The components of the Hesse matrix model is defined as (Kończak S., Nowak M., 1981):

$$h_{ij} = \frac{\partial^2 \chi^2}{\partial g_i \partial g_j} =$$

$$= -2 \sum_l \sum_k \frac{1}{\left(\Delta B_{kl}\right)^2} \left[\begin{array}{l} B_{kl}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda\right) \dfrac{\partial^2 B_{kl,teor}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda, \{g_i\}\right)}{\partial g_i \partial g_j} - \dfrac{\partial B_{kl,teor}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda, \{g_i\}\right)}{\partial g_i} \\ \dfrac{\partial B_{kl,teor}\left(I_k, L_l, \lambda, \{g_i\}\right)}{\partial g_j} \end{array} \right] \tag{11}$$

4. Application of the arc light emission to monitor the welding process

In order to monitor the welding processes successfully, the optical sensing systems have been developed. Special procedures, models and modification of the monitoring devices have to be implemented with the sensing systems, some of the systems are discussed herein. Some typical application examples included sensing of the arc length in the TIG welding (Węglowski M.St., 2010), relationship between the welding conditions and intensity of the arc light emission in the MIG/MAG methods (Węglowski M.St., 2008; Węglowski M.St., Zhang Y. M., 2010) and the influence of the parameters and disturbance of the welding process on the shape of the spectrum of the arc light radiation (Węglowski M.St., 2009). In this part, their principles are being described.

4.1. Sensing of the arc length in the TIG welding method based on the arc light intensity

One of the main task of the monitoring systems in the robotized and automated welding stations is the measurement and control of the arc length. The main objective of the investigation was to study the possibilities of using of the visible radiation of the welding arc for stability monitoring of the TIG welding process, giving consideration to the changes of the intensity of visible light radiation with the changes of the welding current or welding arc length (reproducing the case of burn- through and arc migration). The arc length is one of the basic welding parameter in the TIG method, which directly influences the arc voltage. The arc length has an effect on the distribution of an arc energy, and as the consequence on the amount of heat put into the welded joint and on the width of the weld.

The tests have been performed on the stand for the automatic TIG welding. The measuring system consists of welding current and voltage transducers, an electrooptical converter, a measurement card and a PC computer. The analysed beam of the visible radiation is fed into the electrooptical converter by means of a standard optical wave guide. The electrical signal corresponding to the visible light intensity and signals from the welding circuit are recorded on the PC by the recording device, equipped with the NI DAQ 6036 measuring card. The recorded signals were then analysed. The intensity of the visible light radiation of the welding arc was measured in volts. The following experiment conditions were approved: the arc burns between the thoriated tungsten electrode (cathode) and a copper plate (anode), the welding torch is fixed, argon (Ar) as the shielding gas (gas flow rate q_g=10 dcm^3/min), welding current source: Kemppi Pro 5000 (DC current set in the range of 30÷300 A). It was assumed that the arc length is equal to the distance between the electrode tip and the welded metal surface. The range of the welding arc length L=2÷5 mm. In Figure 7 show the configuration of the optical system relative to the welding torch is shown.

The arc length was changed in the range from 2 to 5 mm during the experiments. Figure 8 shows the influence of the arc length L on the visible light intensity and arc voltage for the welding currents in the range of 50÷300 A. It can be seen that considerable changes of the arc length are followed by the substantial changes of radiation intensity of the welding arc (wave length 696 nm) and only by small changes of the arc voltage.

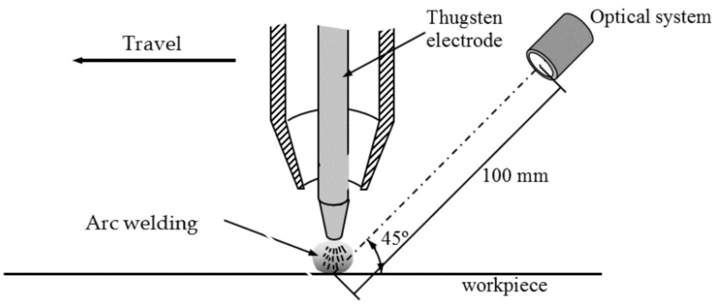


Figure 7. Configuration of the optical system relative to the welding torch

Three cases of transient states of the welding arc length have been also investigated: the abrupt change of the arc length (Fig. 9a), the abrupt change of the welding arc length, simulating the burn-through of the joint (Fig. 10a) and a smooth change of the welding arc length, simulating a bad preparation of welded elements or their distortion during welding (Fig. 11a). These are typical transient states in the welding practice.

The abrupt change of the welding arc was forced by a proper preparation of the 20 mm thick plate by milling (Fig. 9a). The height of the received steps was 1 and 2 mm, which resulted in the arc length of 1, 2 and 4 mm at a welding current of 100 A (DC). Results of the measurement performed at the welding speed of 60 cm/min are presented in Figure 9b. The moment of entering the step by the welding torch is shown by arrows.

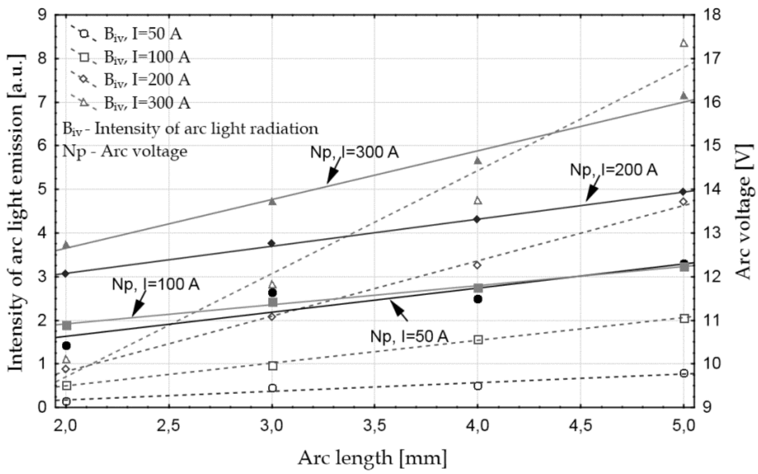
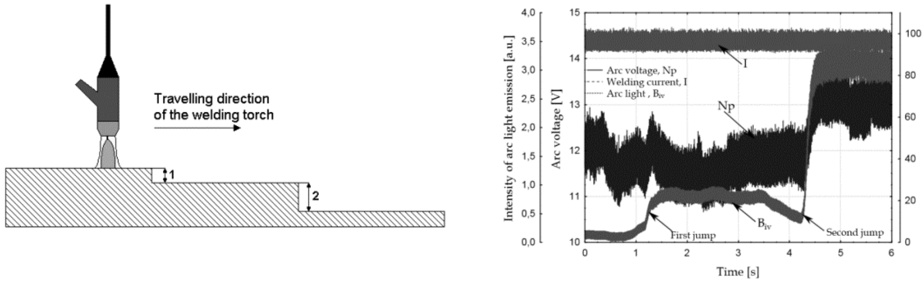


Figure 8. Influence of welding arc length on the light emission (B_{iv}) and the arc voltage (N_p) at the welding current in the range of 50÷300 A. Argon as shielding gas

The second tested transient state was the abrupt change of the arc length simulating the burn-through of the welded joint. A 20 mm thick plate were prepared by drilling holes with a diameter of 1,3÷6 mm (Fig. 10a). The arc length during the experiment was maintained at 3 mm at the

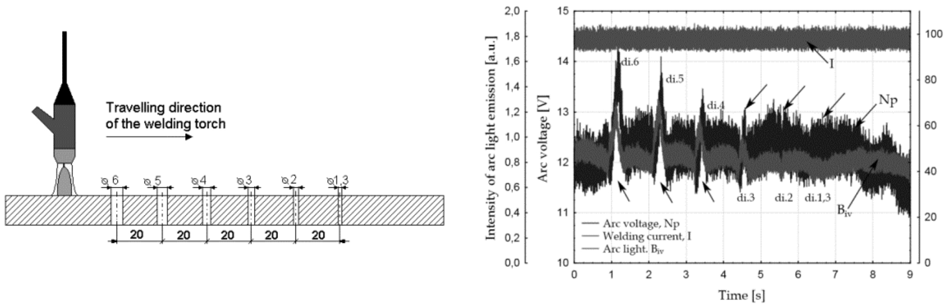


(a) (b)

Figure 9. (a) scheme of the experiment with the forced abrupt change of welding arc length, (b) measurement results of the welding current, arc voltage and intensity of arc radiation at abrupt changes of the welding arc length, welding speed 60 cm/min

welding current of 100 A (DC) and a welding speed of 60 cm/min. The test results are presented in Figure 10b. The moment of entering the holes by the welding torch is shown by arrows.

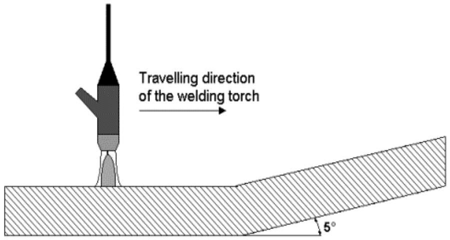
The third tested transient state was a smooth change of the arc length simulating the deformation of welded plates or improper preparation of the joint. Plates 20 mm in thickness were welded at the angle of 5° (Fig. 11a). The arc length during the experiment changed in the range of 1÷7 mm at the welding current of 100 A (DC) and a welding speed of 60 cm/min. The test results are presented in Figure 11b.



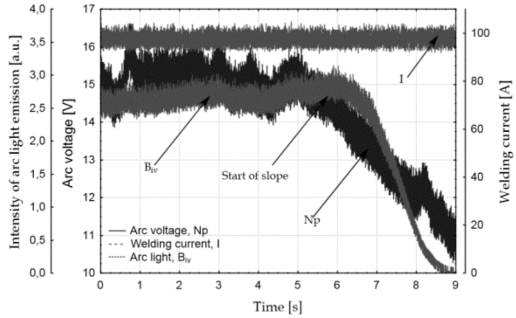
(a) (b)

Figure 10. (a) scheme of the experiment with the forced abrupt change of welding arc length simulating the burn-through of the welded joint, (b) measurement results of the welding current, arc voltage and intensity of arc radiation at abrupt changes of the welding arc length simulating the burn-through of the welded joint, welding speed 100 cm/min,

The one of the most important factor is the influence of the changes of welding current and the arc length during TIG welding on the intensity of the visible radiation. On the basis of the collected test data and equation 2 a relationship combining the intensity of the welding arc radiation (B_{iv}) with the arc length (L) and the welding current intensity (I) can be determined. The arc length is in the range of 2 ÷ 5 mm. Based on the formula (7) presented in the paragraph the relationship can be determined. Using a software, basis of the collected data and formulas (9-11), coefficients G_i and γ can be estimated.



(a)



(b)

Figure 11. (a) scheme of the experiment with the smooth change of the welding arc length simulating improper preparation of the joint or deformation of welded plates, (b) measurement results of the welding current, arc voltage and intensity of the arc radiation at the smooth change of the welding arc length, welding speed 60 cm/min

Two cases were taken into account during calculation:

- theoretical Zhang model, in this model coefficient γ=2 and then it can be written (eq. 7):

$$B_{iv} = G_1 L I^2 \left(e^{\frac{G_2}{I}} - \frac{1}{2} \right) + G_3 I^2 + G_4 \qquad (12)$$

- generalization model - coefficient γ is a parameter dependent on the measured data.

Basing on the formula (9) the calculation were carried out taking into account the following two cases:

- ΔB_{kl} - uncertainty set of the light intensity is constant for all data and it is not taken into account during calculations; in this case the fitting will be worse for smaller values,
- ΔB_{kl} - uncertainty set of the light intensity is not constant for all data and it is taken into account during calculations.

No	Coefficients	Theoretical model	Generalization model
1	G1	$3{,}8(2)\cdot10^{-5}$	$1{,}11(1)\cdot10^{-3}$
2	G2	56(3)	9(2)
3	G3	$-4{,}4(1)\cdot10^{-5}$	$-3{,}98(12)\cdot10^{-5}$
4	G4	$1(57)\cdot10^{-3}$	$-1{,}8(6)\cdot10^{-1}$
5	γ	2	1,455(4)
6	χ^2 sum of the least-squares of the deviations	7,33	3,6
7	correlation coefficient R_2	0,98	0,99

Table 2. Results of calculation of coefficients G_i for theoretical and generalization models at arc length in the range of 2 - 5 mm, ΔB_{kl} – constant

No	Coefficients	Theoretical model	Generalization model
1	G1	$4{,}6(2)\cdot 10^{-5}$	$1{,}7(1)\cdot 10^{-3}$
2	G2	34(2)	$2(65)\cdot 10^{-2}$
3	G3	$-4{,}06(10)\cdot 10^{-5}$	$-35{,}1(6)\cdot 10^{-6}$
4	G4	$-1{,}09(16)\cdot 10^{-1}$	$-11{,}4(9)\cdot 10^{-2}$
5	γ	2	1,364(2)
6	χ^2 sum of the least-squares of the deviations	5,75	1,07
7	correlation coefficient R^2	0,99	0,99

Table 3. Results of calculation of coefficients G_i for theoretical and generalization models at arc length in the range of 2 - 5 mm, ΔB_{kl} – is not constant

Taking into account the results given in Tables 2 and 3, the sum of the least-squares of the deviations is smaller for the generalization model and for case were weight ΔB_{kl} is not constant. Finally the formula 9 can be written as:

$$B_{iv} = 0{,}0017 L I^{1{,}364}\left(e^{\frac{0{,}02}{I}} - \frac{1}{2}\right) - 0{,}000035 I^2 - 0{,}114 \tag{13}$$

This equation is satisfied for the wavelength 698 nm and the arc length in the range of 2 - 5 mm. The graphic presentation of this formula is shown in Figures 12a and 12b. The arc burns between the thoriated tungsten electrode (cathode) and a water cooled copper plate.

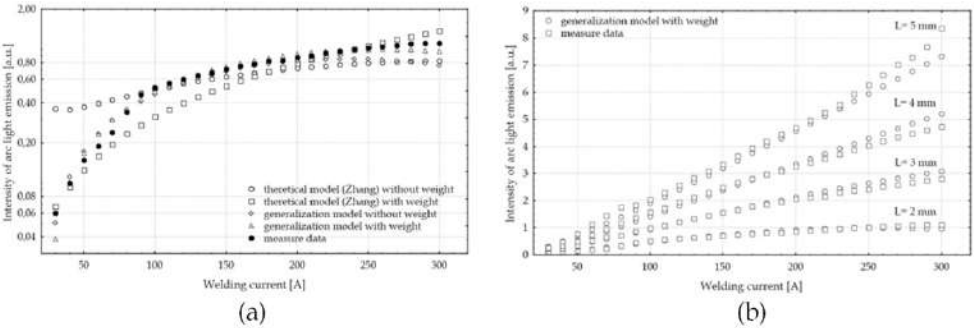


Figure 12. (a) relationship between intensity of the welding arc radiation in the TIG method and welding current at arc length 2 mm, and the wavelength 698 nm, (b) relationship between an intensity of the welding arc radiation in the TIG method and the arc length, welding current at arc length in the range of 2-5 mm, and the wavelength 698 nm

The change of the TIG welding arc length causes also changes of the intensity of the visible arc radiation. An increase of the arc length results in the intensity increase of the selected spectral line (696 nm) of the TIG welding arc visual radiation. This increase depends on the welding current intensity. Larger increases of the visual arc radiation intensities are observed at the higher welding currents.

Three cases of the welding arc length transient states have been tested. It has been found that in all that cases the intensity of the arc radiation at the wave length of 696 nm is much more sensitive to abrupt changes of the welding arc length, than the arc voltage. In the first case (Fig. 9) the change of the arc length for 1 and 2 mm was followed by a 400% change of the radiation intensity and only by a 10% change of the arc voltage. In the second tested case, simulating the burn-through of the welded joint, considerable changes take place for both - the arc voltage and intensity of the arc radiation, but in the radiation intensity record the peaks corresponding to the consecutive holes (Fig. 10) can be more easily identified. By the arc voltage measurement a hole with a diameter of 4 mm can be identified, while the measurement of radiation intensity makes possible the identification of a 1,3 mm hole. The third tested transient state was a smooth change of the welding arc length, simulating the deformation of welded plates or incorrect setup for welding. Also in that case the changes of the welding arc length are followed by considerable changes of radiation intensity and smaller changes of the arc voltage.

4.2. Relationship between the welding conditions and intensity of the arc light emission in GMAW

This section describes the acquisition and analysis of the arc light emission and its correlation with the welding parameters and disturbances of the welding process. A spectrophotometer card PCI 2000 ISA-A in the visible spectral range of 340 nm to 860 nm was used in the study. The measurement system consisted of the welding current and voltage transducers, an electro-optical converter, a data acquisition card and a PC computer (Fig. 13). Signals from the welding circuit were recorded on the PC through the data acquisition card NI DAQ 6036. The measurements during bead-on-plate welding and joints welding were carried out. The signals were analyzed in time domain. During trials, a spectrophotometric card PCI 2000 ISA-A, which has been designed for the CCD Sony model ILX511 detector in the visible spectral range of 340 nm to 860 nm was used to image and record the arc light spectrum for the later analysis. The CCD detector was a line scan array of 2048 pixel.

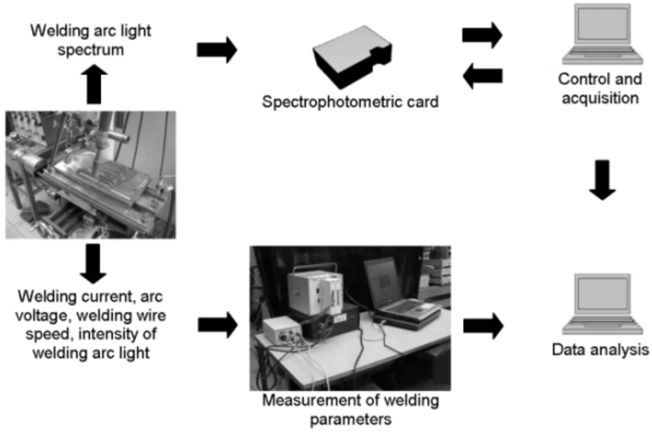


Figure 13. Experimental setup with the flow of data

The work-piece was moved while torch was in a fixed position such that the arc light sensor was stationary in relation to the work-piece. The sepctrophotometric card used a sampling time 3 ms. An optical system was used to focuse the welding arc light. The entire arc column has been analyzed as a single object. During welding the arc voltage, the welding current, the wire feed speed and the intensity of the arc light emission were continuously measured. The Hall effect current sensor Model PR 1001 was used to measure the welding current. This sensor provides electrical isolation between the current carrying conductor and the output of the sensor. The voltage was measured by a resistance bridge by a LV 25 P transducer in the output of the power supply. The wire feed speed was measured by E21 MPL10 transducer. The intensity of the arc light emission was measured by PIN BPW34 photodiode. Signals from the welding circuit were recorded on the PC through the IPP-2 measured system designed in the Instytut Spawalnictwa (Institute of Welding), witch based on SCXI data acquisition system National Instruments. This system consisting of the National Instruments SCXI-1125 is 8-channel isolated analog input modules and data acquisition board NI DAQ 6036 E. Whole system was placed in the SCXI-1000 chassis. The signals were recorded at a sampling rate of 20 kHz.The torch was moved at the travel speed 25 cm/min to make bead-on-plate welds and weld. Direct current levels between 104 A and 235 A were examined, all at an operating voltage in the range of 16.5 V - 25.5V. Figure 14a shows the arc spectrum obtained in the range of 360-860 nm at the welding current in the range of 104 – 235 A. The graph is presented in a logarithmic scale.

As shown in Figure 14a the increase of the welding current causes increase of the arc light intensity in the whole range. The shape of the spectrum was modeled by the three mathematic functions: Lorentz, Gausse and Voight (Fig. 14b). The fitting for both single wavelength and multiple wavelengths was carried out mathematically and the best result was achieved with the Lorentz function. The central wavelength, intensity and FWHM - Full With at Half Maximum were calculated. The main source of the arc light radiation in the GMAW is liquid metal. The lines from the shielding gases have not been found. The detailed analysis of influence of the welding current on the arc light spectrum was previously discussed (Węglowski M.St., 2008, 2009).

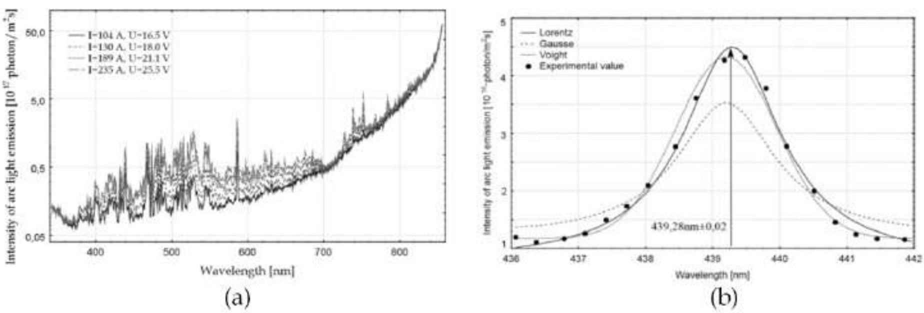
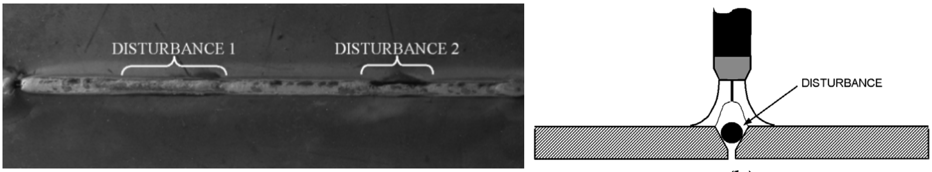


Figure 14. (a) effect of the welding current on the arc light spectrum. The welding current in the range of 104-235 A, Ar + CO_2 as the shielding gas, wavelength in the range of 480-860 nm. Logarithmic scale, (b) calculated line profile of the wavelength 439,28 nm compared with measured values and the Gaussian, Lorentz and Voight functions

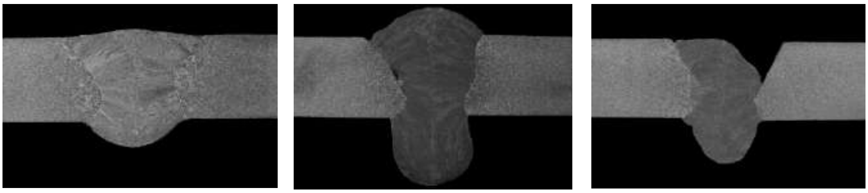
The purpose of these studies was also to check the influence of disturbances of the welding process on the arc light intensity. To this end, arc light intensity was measured during welding of real joint, 4 mm in thickness. The disturbances of the welding process was tha additional filler metal in the grove. The experiments were done under the following conditions: welding current I=160 A, arc voltage U=21.2 V, shielding gas M21 Ferromix C18, welding speed 25 cm/min), wire EN 440 G3Si1, base material S235, the grove was prepared for Y.

The weld produced is shown in Figure 15a. The scheme of the method of disturbance of the welding process is shown in Figure 15b. The macroscopic examination of the padding welds are shown in Figure 16. During welding the arc voltage, welding current, wire feed speed and the intensity of the arc light emission were continuously measured. The intensity of the arc light signal is shown in Figure 17.



(a) (b)

Figure 15. (a) welding joint with marked areas of disturbances of the welding process, (b) scheme of disturbance of the welding process



(a) without disturbances (b) disturbance 1 (c) disturbance 2

Figure 16. Macroscopic examination of the padding welds. Etching Adler, magnification x2

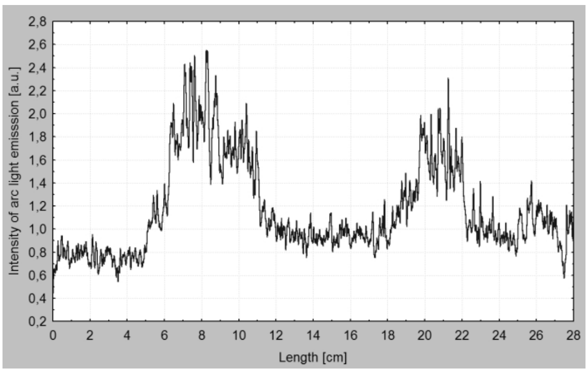


Figure 17. Intensity of the arc light signal recorded during welding of plate with disturbance

To estimate the stability of the welding process based on the arc light emission the least squares method was used. To model the arc light signal a cubic polynomial was used:

$$y = a_0 + a_1 x + a_2 x^2 + a_3 x^3 + \varepsilon \tag{14}$$

where: y – arc light emission, x – time, a_i – coefficients, ε – residual the differences between the observations and the model.

To calculate a residual the following formula should be solved:

$$Y = \begin{bmatrix} y(m-M \\ . \\ y(m) \\ . \\ y(m+M \end{bmatrix} \quad X = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & x(m-M & x^2(m-M) & x^3(m-M) \\ . & . & . & . \\ 1 & x(m) & x^2(m) & x^3(m-M \\ . & . & . & . \\ 1 & x(m+M) & x^2(m+M) & x^3(m+M \end{bmatrix} \quad \beta = \begin{bmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ a_2 \\ a_3 \end{bmatrix} \tag{15}$$

where: Y- intensity of the arc light signal matrix, X – time matrix, β – coefficients matrix, m – discrete time.

But this system is over determined. There are more equations than unknowns. So it cannot expect to solve the system exactly. Instead, it can be solved it in the least squares sense:

$$\min_{\beta} \left\| X\beta - Y \right\| \tag{16}$$

A theoretical approach to solve the over determined system begins by multiplying both sides by XT. This reduces the system to a square, *n*-by-*n* system known as the normal equations:

$$X^T X \beta = X^T Y \tag{17}$$

If there are thousands of observations and only a few parameters, the design matrix X is quite large, but the matrix X^TX is small. It has been projected Y into the space spanned by the columns of X. Continuing with this the theoretical approach, if the basis functions are independent, then X^TX is nonsingular and

$$\beta = \left(X^T X \right)^{-1} X^T Y \ \text{and} \ \bar{Y} = \bar{X} \beta \tag{18}$$

then, the residual can be calculated as:

$$\varepsilon = \sqrt{\sigma^2} = \sqrt{\frac{\left(Y - \bar{Y} \right)^T \left(Y - \bar{Y} \right)}{2M+1}} \tag{19}$$

where: 2M+1 – the number of data used in the fitting.

To calculate formulas 15 and 19 the following parameters were established: m in the range of 10000 to 590000 at the step 100 and M=10. To estimate the points of unstability of the welding process, model by polynomial can be used. To estimate the best degree of the polynomial the F-test method can be used. Based on the previously least squares methodology, the residual of polynomials ε_P can be calculated as:

$$\varepsilon_P = \sqrt{\sigma^2} = \sqrt{\frac{\left(\varepsilon - \overline{Y}\right)^T \left(\varepsilon - \overline{Y}\right)}{n}} \tag{20}$$

where: ε – residual from eq. 7, Y – value of polynomial function, n – the number of data.

The calculation acc. to formula 20 were carried out for 50 different polynomials. The best results can be achieved for polynomial 28th degree (Figure 18).

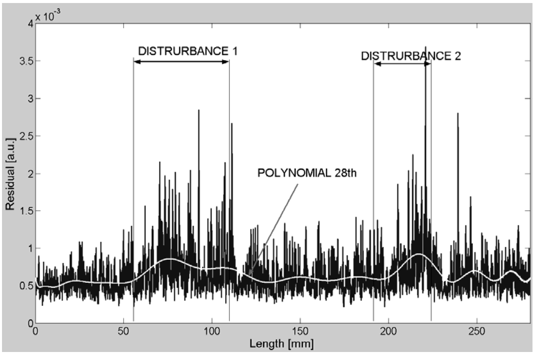


Figure 18. The results of model by polynomial 28th degree with marked the areas with disturbances.

It is shown that the arc light signal can be utilized to monitor the welding processes. This signal is sensitive to any changes in the welding area. The spectrophotometric card can be useful tool to investigate the properties of the welding arc.

4.3. The influence of the parameters and disturbance of the welding process on the shape of the spectrum of the arc light radiation

The tests were performed on the stand for automatic MAG welding operations by the control consol. The testing plate for welding was fixed while the welding was moved at a controlled speed. The torch was located perpendicularly to the welding surface. All experiments were performed by the bead-on-plate welding. The measuring system consisted of the welding current and the voltage transducers, a PC computer equipped with the CCD spectrophotometer card, and a speed wire measurement device. The electrical signals from the current and voltage transducers were recorded on the PC equipped with the NI DAQ 6036 measuring card. The analyzed radiation was fed into the CCD spectrophotometer by means of a standard fibre optics. A spectrophotometer card PCI 2000 ISA-A (Ocean Optics Inc.) was used in this research. The output of each pixel is converted to an electrical current which represents the amount of the energy that has fallen on each pixel in a relative manner.

Figure 19 shows the different influence of the welding current intensity on the amplitudes, additive constants and widths (FWHM) of the Lorentz functions that fit the best spectral peaks of the arc light. One can see that the influence manifests in different ways in the cases of the different spectral peaks. Generally, the welding current intensity strong influences the additive constants and amplitudes of the peaks in the spectral range from 400 nm to 500 nm. Figure 19d shows the dependence of the best fitted additive constants on intensity of the current in the welding process of the clean mild steel S 235 (I=104 A; U=16,5 V).

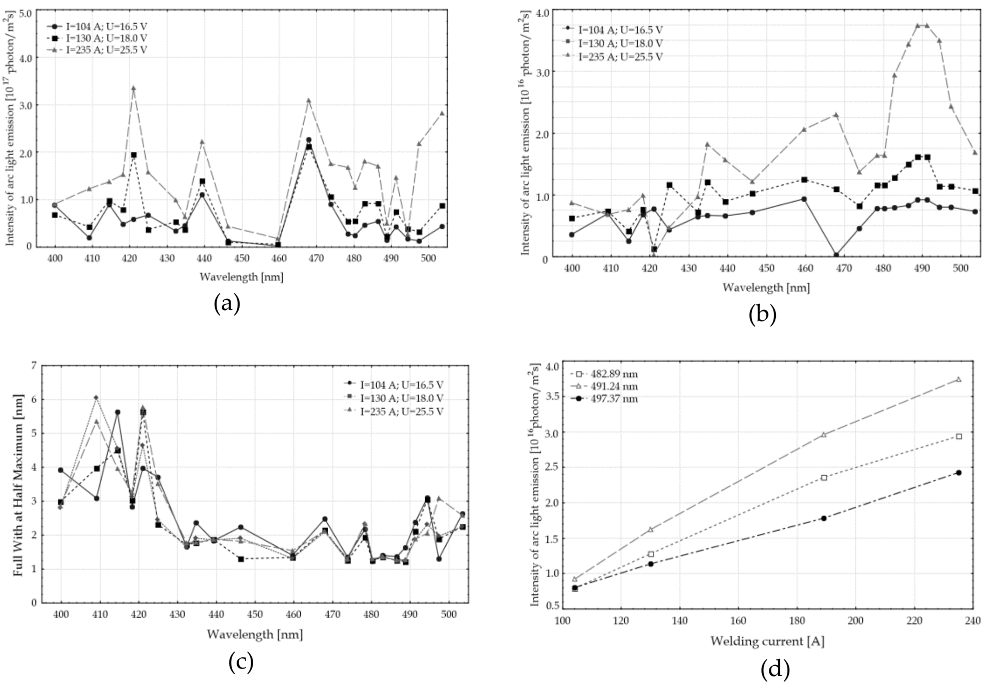


Figure 19. (a) influence of the welding current intensity on the amplitudes, (b) the values of additive constant in formula (3), (c) FWHM and (d) intensity of single emission lines,

Investigations on the effect of imposed disturbances, in the form of paint or grease layers on the plate surface, on the intensity of the MAG arc light radiation in the visible range, have been performed. The mild steel S 235 as the welding plate and the 1,2 mm diameter SG2 type welding wire were used. Experiments were performed with shielding gas 82% Ar and 18 % CO_2. The plate surface was clean, covered with oil paint or covered with a machine grease. It was found that both the paint and grease layer influence the recorded spectral characteristics of the MAG welding light radiation. Figure 20 presents the different influence of the existence of paint on the welded plate on the amplitudes, additive constants and the widths of the Lorentz functions that fit the best spectral peaks of the arc light. One can see that the influence manifests in different ways in the cases of the different spectral peaks.

The presented investigations show that the low resolution spectral characteristics of the arc light emission registered with CCD device can be applied for the purpose of monitoring of the welding process. The arranged measuring stand has made it possible to record the visible spectrum of the radiation of the welding arc within the range of wavelengths from 380 nm to 780 nm. The measuring stand comprised a spectrophotometer, a computer recording the results of the measurements and a device for mechanized welding.

It was found that the spectral distribution of a single peak in the low resolution spectral characteristics can be best fitted with the Lorentz function. In the recorded spectrum of the welding arc light emission, separation of the ionic or atomic lines is not possible. However, the correlation between the parameters of the fitted Lorentz function and welding parameters (i.e. welding current) was obtained. The Lorentz function parameters depend also on the disturbances in the MAG welding process, e.g. their values are different in the cases of clean and painted surface of the welded mild steel S 235 plate.

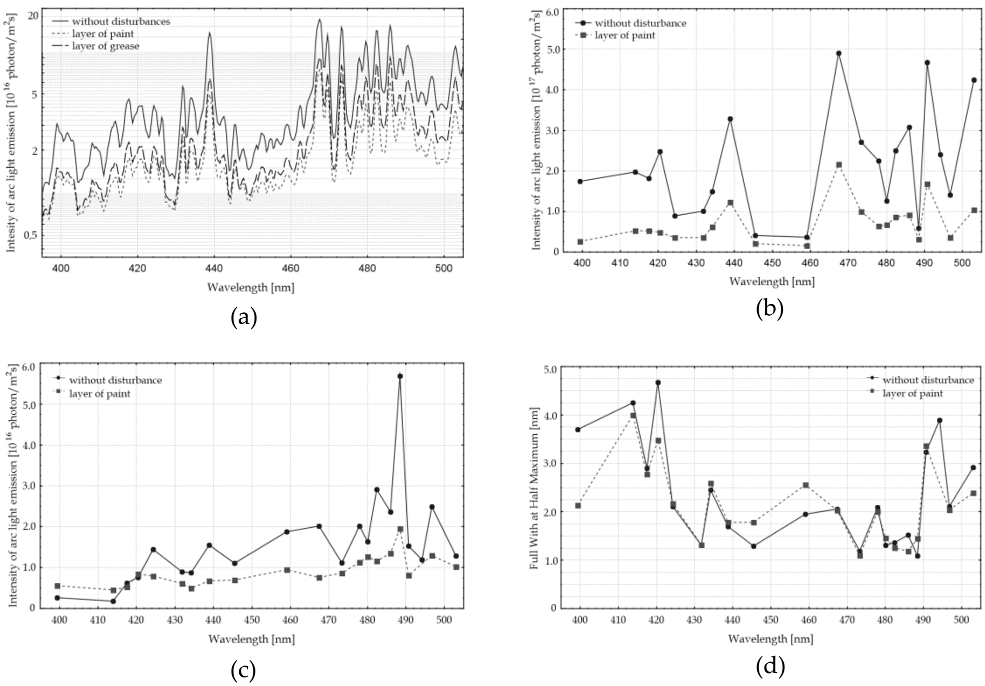


Figure 20. (a) the influence of disturbances on the MAG welding arc light spectrum (I=169 A, U=19,7 V) (b) influence of paint on the welded plate on the amplitudes, (c) the values of additive constant in formula (3) and (d) FWHM (Attention: curves presented in the figure cannot be interpolated)

5. Summary

Modern monitoring methods of the welding processes are inherent in each automatics and robotics production system. These systems detect very rapidly any incorrectly made weld joints during manufacturing and this way decreases the costs of production. That means possibility of detecting of any faulty parts without very costly nondestructive examinations. At present very popular conventional monitoring methods of the welding processes, based on measurements of the welding current and arc voltage in many cases are inefficient and are replaced or/and completed by nonconventional monitoring methods.

One of the most popular nonconventional monitoring method is sensing system based on the arc light emission. The main aim of these investigations was to check the possibilities of applying the visible radiation of the welding arc for the purpose of monitoring of the quality of the welding process.

The arranged measuring stand made it possible to record the visible spectrum of the radiation of the welding arc within the range of the wavelengths from 380 nm to 780 nm. The measuring stand comprised a spectrophotometer, a computer recording the results of measurements and a device for mechanized welding.

Results of the performed investigations in the field of measurement of light radiation intensity during TIG and MIG/MAG welding, shown in this chapter, indicate that this signal can be used for the monitoring of the welding process quality. The experience gained during these investigations allows for further research on the welding arc radiation phenomenon. The obtained knowledge increases the possibilities of using the signal for on-line monitoring of the welding process on the automated and robotized stands. The analysis of the spectrum of the welding arc radiation should help to develop the new vision sensor in the arc welding.

The investigations are continued in the many research centers, and cover the following issues:

- utilize the artificial intelligence method to estimate the stability of the welding process,
- develop the filtering method, and methodology to signal analysis in time, and frequency domain,
- laser diagnostic on the welding arc in the TIG and MIG/MAG methods, develop method of measurement of the arc light emission in many points simultaneously, and many others.

Author details

Marek Stanisław Węglowski
Instytut Spawalnictwa (Institute of Welding), Poland

6. References

Zhang, Y.M. (2008). *Real-time weld process monitoring*. Woodhead Publishing in Materials, ISBN 978-1-84569-268-1, Cambridge, England

Blakeley, P. J. (1990). Who should be using arc monitoring? *Welding and Metal Fabrication,* Vol. 58, No 6, pp. 268-272, ISSN 0043-2245

Siewert, T., Madigan, B. (1992). Through the arc sensing for measurement Gas Metal Arc weld quality in real time. *Materials Evaluation*, Vol. 50, No 11, pp. 1314-1318, ISSN 0025-5327

Chen, X. Q. (2002). *Advanced automation techniques in adaptive material processing*, Word Scientific Publishing, ISBN 981-02-4902-0, Rever Edge, New Jersey, USA.

Pan, J. (2003). *Arc welding control*. Woodhead Publisher Limited, ISBN 0-8493-1772-X, Cambridge, England.

Kim, J. W., Na, S. J. (1991). A study on an arc sensor for Gas Metal Arc welding of horizontal fillets. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 70, No 8, pp. 216s-221s, ISSN 0043-2296

Johnson, J. A., Carlson, N. M., Smartt H.B., et al (1991). Process control of GMAW: sensing of metal transfer mode. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 70, No 4, pp. 91s-99s, ISSN 0043-2296

Modenesi, P. J., Nixon, J. H. (1994). Arc instability phenomena in GMA welding. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 73, No 9, pp. 219s-224s, ISSN 0043-2296

Luksa, K. (2006). Influence of weld imperfection on short circuit GMA welding arc stability. *Journal of Materials Processing Technology*, Vol. 175, pp. 285-290, ISSN 0924-0136

Guu, A. C., Rokhlin, S. I. (1992). Arc welding process control using radiographic sensing. *Materials Evaluation*, Vol. 50, No 11, pp. 1344-1348, ISSN 0025-5327

Fan, H. Ravala, N. K., Wikle III, H. C., et al. (2003). Low-cost infrared sensing system for monitoring the welding process in the presence of plate inclination angle. *Journal of Materials Processing Technology*, Vol. 140, No 1-3, pp. 668-675, ISSN 0924-0136

Carlson, N. M., Johnson, J. A. (1992). Ultrasonic NDT methods for weld sensing. *Materials Evaluation*, Vol. 50, No 11, pp. 1338-1343, ISSN 0025-5327

Taylor-Burge, K. L., Harris, T. J. (1993). The real time analysis of acoustic weld emission using neural networks, *Proc. of the International Conf. on the Joining of Materials JOM-6* ed. Rasmus Knudsens Vej, pp. 60-67. Helsingor, Denmark

Saini, D., Floyd, S. (1998). An investigation of Gas Metal Arc welding sound signature for on-line quality control. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 77, No 4, pp. 172s-179s, ISSN 0043-2296

Luksa, K. (2003). Correspondence between sound emission generated in GMA [MIG/MAG] welding process and signals registered in the arc circuit. *Welding International*, Vol. 17, No 6, pp. 438-441, ISSN 0950-7116

Smith, J., Lucas, B. (1999). Putting intelligence into welding – rule based systems, fuzzy logic and neural networks. *Welding & Metal Fabrication*, Vol. 67, No 10, pp. 7-9, ISSN 0043-2245

Amin, M., Naseer, A. (1987). Synergic control in MIG welding – parametric relationship for steady DC open arc and short circuiting arc operation. *Metal Construction*, Vol. 19, No 1, pp. 22-28, ISSN 0026-0541

Kang, Y. H., Na, S. J. (2003). Characteristics of welding and arc signal n narrow groove GMAW using electromagnetic arc oscillation. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 82 No 5, pp. 93s-99s, ISSN 0043-2296

Lu, W., Zhang, Y. M. (2004). Sensing of weld pool surface using non-transferred plasma charge sensor. *Measurement Science and Technology*, Vol. 15, No 5, pp. 991-999, ISSN 0957-0233

Zheng, B., Wang, H. J. (2000). Control for weld penetration in VPPAW of aluminum alloys using the front weld pool image signal. *Welding Journal*. 70 (12): 363-s to 371-s, ISSN 0043-2296

Zhang, Y. M., Wu, L. (1993). Determination joint penetration in GTAW with vision sensing of weld face geometry. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 72, No 10, pp. 463s-469s, ISSN 0043-2296

Li, P. J., Zhang, Y. M. (2001). Precision Sensing of Arc Length in GTAW Based on Arc Light Spectrum. *Journal of Manufacturing Science and Engineering*, Vol. 123, No 1, pp. 62-65, ISSN 1087-1357

Wang, Q. L., Li, P. J. (1997). Arc light sensing of droplet transfer and ist analysis in pulsed GMAW processes. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 76, No 11, pp. 458s-469s, ISSN 0043-2296

Weglowski, M. St. (2007). Utilization of the arc light emission emitted during TIG welding to monitoring this process. *Archives of Mechanical Technology and Automation PAN*, Vol. 27, No 1, pp. 103-112. (in Polish), ISSN 1233-9709

Yoo, C. D., Yoo, Y. S., and Sunwoo H.K. (1997). Investigation on arc light intensity in gas metal arc welding. Part 1: relationship between arc light intensity and arc length. *Proceeding of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers. Part B: Journal of Engineering Manufacture*, Vol. 211 (B5), pp. 345-353, ISSN 0954-4054

Yoo, C. D., Yoo, Y. S., and Sunwoo H. K. (1997). Investigation on arc light intensity in gas metal arc welding. Part 2: application to weld seam tracking. *Proceeding of the "Institution of Mechanical Engineers. Part B: Journal of Engineering Manufacture*, Vol. 211 (B5), pp. 355-363, ISSN 0954-4054

Ancona, A., Lugara,P.M., Ottonelli,F., Catalano, I.M. (2004). A Sensing Torch for On-line monitoring of the Gas Tungsten Arc Welding Process of Steel Pipes. *Measurement Science and Technology*, Vol. 15, No 12, pp. 2412-2518, ISSN 1361-6501

Sadek, C.A., Diogo, D.S.M., Marcelo, S.M. (2006). Emission Spectrometry Evaluation in Arc Welding Monitoring System. *Journal of Materials Technology*, Vol. 179, No 1-2, pp. 219-224, ISSN 0924-0136

Li, Z. Y., Wang, B., Ding, J.B. (2009). Detection of GTA Welding Quality and Disturbance Factors with Spectral Signal of Arc Light. *Journal of Materials Processing Technology*, 2009, Vol. 209, No 10, pp. 4867-4873, ISSN 0924-0136

Mirapeix, J., Cobo, A., Fernandez, S., Cardoso, R., Lopez Higuera, J.M. (2008). Spectroscopic Analysis of the Plasma Continuum radiation for On-line Arc-welding Defect Detection. *Journal of Physics D: Applied Physics*, Vol. 41, No 3, pp. 135202–135210, ISSN 1361-6463

Johnson, C.A., Sciaky, A.M. (1966). *System for controlling length of welding arc*, Patent US, nr 3236997

Zhang, Y.M., Li, P.J. (2001). Precision sensing of arc length in GTAW based on arc light spectrum. *Journal of Manufacturing Science and Engineering*, Vol. 123, No 2, pp. 62-65, ISSN 1087-1357

Garcia-Allenda, P.B., Mirapeix, J., Conde, O.M., Cobo, A., Lopez-Higuera, J.M. (2008). Arc welding spectroscopic monitoring based on feature selection and neutral networks. *Sensors*, Vol. 8, No 10, 6496-6506, ISSN 1424-8220

Pattee, H.E, Myers L.B., Evans R.M., Monroe R.E. (1973). Effect of Arc Radiation and Heat on Welders. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 52, pp. 297s-308s. ISSN: 0043-2296

Hinrichs J.F., (1978). Radiation and arc welding: New data to enhance safety. *Welding and Metal Fabrication*, Vol. 51, pp. 102-103, ISSN 0043-224

Marzec, S., Janosik, E. (1995). Influence of arc radiation of health of welder Wpływ promieniowania łuku spawalniczego na organizm spawacza. *Builetyn of Welding Institute*, Vol. 39, No 6, 33-37, ISSN 0867-583X

Quigley, M. (1977). Physics of the welding arc. *Welding and Metal Fabrication*, Vol. 9, No 12, pp. 619-625, ISSN 0043-2245

Glickstein, S. (1976). Temperature measurements in a free burning arc. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 55, No 8, pp. 222s-229s, ISSN 0043-2296

Huddlestone, R.H., Leonard, S.L. (1965). *Plasma diagnostic techniques*. Academic Press, New York, USA

Szymański, A. (1991). *Spectroscopic and Computer Modeling Investigations of a Laser-Sustained Plasma*. Institute of Fundamental Technological Research Works, Polish Academy of Sciences, Warsaw, 30/1991

Petrie, T.W., Pfender, E. (1970). The influence of the cathode tip on temperature and velocity fields in a GTA. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 49, No 12, pp. 588s-596s, ISSN 0043-2296

Etemadi, K., Pfender, E. (1982). Computer – controlled plasma emission spectroscopy. *Review of Scientific Instruments*, No 2, pp. 255-257, ISSN 0034-6748

Lee, C.W., Na, S.J. (1996). A study on the influence of reflected arc light on vision sensors for welding automation. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 75, No 12, pp. 379s-387s, ISSN 0043-2296

Yu. J.Y., Kim. J.I., Na. S.J. (2003). Influence of reflected arc light on vision sensor for automatic GTAW systems. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 82, No 2, pp. 36s-42s, ISSN 0043-2296

Hinrichs, J.F. (1978). Radiation and arc welding: New data to enhance safety. Welding and Metal Fabrication, vol. 51, No. 2, pp. 102–103, ISSN 0043-2245

Farmer, A.J.D., Haddad, G.N. (1984). Local thermodynamic equilibrium in free-burning arcs in argon. *Applied Physics Letters*, Vol. 45, No 1, pp. 24-25, ISSN 0003-6951

Grove, L., Loseke, W.A., et al (1970). Development of portable direct reading spectrometer to monitor oxygen-hydrogen containing contaminants in gas tungsten-arc process shields. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 49, No 11, pp. 538s-545s, ISSN 0043-2296

Wang, Q.L., Li, P.J. (1997). Arc light sensing of droplet transfer and its analysis in pulsed GMAW processes. Welding Journal, Vol. 76, No 11, pp. 458-469, ISSN 0043-2296

Cho, Y.T., Na, S.J. (2005). Application of Abel inversion in real-time calculation for circularly and elliptically symmetric radiation sources. *Measurement Science and Technology*, Vol. 16, pp. 878-884, ISSN 0957-0233

Fan, H.G., Na, S.J., Shi, Y.W. (1997) Mathematical model of arc in pulsed current gas tungsten arc welding. *Journal of Physics D: Applied Physics*, Vol. 30, pp. 94-102, ISSN 0022-3727

Kang, Y.H., Na, S.J. (2002). A study on the modeling of magnetic arc deflection and dynamic analysis of arc sensor. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 81, No 1, pp. 8s-13s, ISSN 0043-2296

Ogawa, Y. (2004). Effect of active flux on anode reaction. Dokument MIS XII-1797-0

Zielińska S. (2004). *Physical properties of MIG/MAG plasma*. Doctoral thesis. Institute of Physics, Jagiellonian University, Krakow, Poland

Kończak, S., Nowak, M. (1981). The estimation of semiconductor parameters using least squares in photomagnetoelectric investigation. *Physica Status Solidi A - Application and Materials Science*, Vol. 63, pp. 305-311, ISSN 0031-8965

Węglowski, M. St. (2010), *Utilization of the arc light emission emitted by an electric arc to monitor the TIG process*. Doctoral thesis, AGH University of Science and Technology, Krakow, Poland

Węglowski, M.St. (2008). Modeling and analysis of arc light spectrum in GMAW. *Welding Journal*, Vol. 87, No 8, pp. 212-218, ISSN 0043-2296

Węglowski, M.St. (2009). Measurement of arc light spectrum in the MAG welding method. *Metrology and Measurement Systems PAN*, Vol. 16, No 1, 143-159. ISSN 0860–8229.

Węglowski, M.St., Zhang, Y.M. (2010). Relationship between welding conditions and intensity of arc light emission in GMAW. *Proceedings of the 5th International Conference on Advances in Production Engineering APE'2010*, Warsaw University of Technology, Warsaw, pp. 215-224, ISBN 978-83-7204-903-2

Chapter 14

Real-Time Measurement of Three Dimensional Weld Pool Surface in GTAW

Wei Jie Zhang, Yu Kang Liu and Yu Ming Zhang

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/53753

1. Introduction

Gas tungsten arc welding (GTAW) [1] is the primary process used by human welders for critical applications. In this process as shown in Fig. 1, an *arc* is established between the non-consumable tungsten electrode and *base metal*. The base metal is melted by the arc forming a *liquid weld pool* that joins the two pieces of base metal together after solidification. An optional filler metal (not shown in the figure) can be added if necessary but it is melted by the arc column, rather than directly by an arc spot as in gas metal arc welding (GMAW) where the anode can much more efficiently melt a continuously-fed wire than the arc column to increase the melting productivity. However, the detachment and impact of the associated droplets on the weld pool compromise the controllability of the process and limit its use in precision applications.

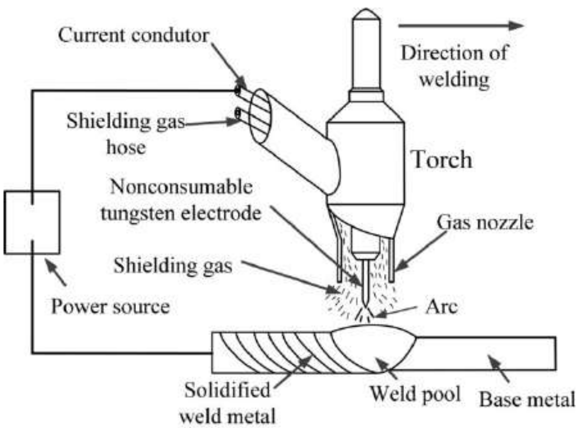


Figure 1. Illustration of GTAW

Because GTAW is primarily used in applications where appropriate *degree of full penetration* (if and how much the liquid metal has fully penetrated the entire thickness of the base metal) is critical for the service, the process should be mechanized or automated as long as it can be justified for production cycle, cost, and quality. However, there are a number of issues which adversely affect the automation significantly. The first one is the *accessibility*. That is, in many applications there is no sufficient space to allow a mechanized system's torch head to access. Second, mechanized systems require significant amount of time for on-site installation and joints be prepared with great precision. The *production cycle* in many applications is adversely affected substantially. The third issue is the *assurance* of the weld quality. In manual welding, welders who observe the weld pool can assure the desired full penetration is produced. However, in mechanized welding, no welder has the capability to interference with the system; they are not required or allowed in robotic welding to observe the welding process with the similar level of concentration as in manual operation. Mechanized/automated systems rely on precision control of joint fit-up and welding conditions and tedious programming of welding parameters to produce repeatable results. However, precision control of joints and welding conditions is very costly and not always guaranteed. Up to date, there are no satisfactory sensors/ways that can conveniently/ automatically monitor the *penetration depth* (how far the liquid metal penetrates along the thickness of the base metal) or the degree of the full penetration like a skilled welder.

The difficulty is primarily due to the *invisibility* of the liquid metal *bottom surface* underneath the weld pool and the extreme brightness of the arc and various methods have been studied, including pool oscillation, ultrasound, infrared sensor, and vision-based sensing method, etc. In the following subsections, each sensing method is briefly reviewed.

1.1. Pool oscillation method

Sensing the weld penetration by monitoring weld pool oscillation behavior is based on the fact that a weld pool can be brought into natural oscillation and the oscillation frequency of the weld pool is related to the weld pool geometry. This phenomenon may be used to monitor the weld pool in a feedback control system. The pioneering work in pool oscillation was conducted by Kotecki [2], and Richardson [3].

Hardt [4] and their co-workers proposed a method to determine the back-side bead width by measuring the natural frequency of pool motion when driven by a time varying arc plasma force. The method was developed analytically and verified by experiments. However, the results were obtained for stationary weld pools, and it was unclear if similar results occur when the welding torch was moving. G. den Ouden found an abrupt change in the oscillation frequency of the pool during the transition from partial to full penetration [5, 6].

Andersen [7] developed a synchronous weld pool oscillation method for controlling the weld pool dimensions and state of penetration. The approach used to induce pool oscillations was to excite the weld pool with current pulses synchronized to the natural oscillations of the pool. An optical sensor was utilized to detect the pool oscillations. A model of the weld pool was also developed using a fluid droplet formulation for the relation of weld pool geometry and other physical parameters to the natural frequencies of the weld pool. Comparison of the weld pool's natural frequency as predicted by the developed weld pool geometry models and measurements of the pool width thus allowed the assessment of the penetration state. Hartman [8] further evaluated this synchronous excitation method and developed a control system that regulated the total heat input to maintain constant fusion zone geometry by monitoring the arc light reflection from the oscillation of the molten metal surface.

Ju [9] proposed a new vibration method: the Pulse Shielding Gas (PSG) oscillating method. A control system was constructed by controlling the welding current based on the natural vibration frequency measurements from an arc sensor. It was found that spectrum analysis using the Fast Fourier Transformation (FFT) was effective for detecting peculiar frequency of the molten pool.

Yudodibroto [10] implemented the weld penetration control based on weld pool oscillation sensing method during GTAW process with cold filler wire addition. The frequency of the weld pool oscillation was obtained from the arc voltage variation via analysis. It was found that the weld pool oscillation approach is suitable for penetration control during cold wire GTAW when the metal transfer occurs in an uninterrupted bridging manner.

1.2. Ultrasonic sensing method

Ultrasonic sensors [11-17] are widely used to determine the boundaries of the liquid and metal in the weld pool.

In [15] the developed ultrasonic sensing system could locate and track the welding seam ensuring correct positioning of the welding head relatively to the joint preparation. The system was able to monitor the joint profile of the molten weld pool and modified the relevant heat input parameters ensuring consistent penetration, joint filling and acceptable weld bead shape. It also made use of both the above information to reconstruct 3D images of the weld pool silhouettes providing in-process inspection capabilities of the welded joints.

At Georgia Institute of Technology, Ume leaded the development of non-contact ultrasonic penetration sensors based on laser-phased array techniques [13, 14]. Recently, in order to overcome the contact requirement of the ultrasonic sensing method, various non-contact ultrasonic sensing methods have been developed, such as laser ultrasonic sensing [11, 17], electromagnetic acoustic transducer (EMAT) ultrasonic sensing [12], and laser-EMAT ultrasonic sensing [16], etc.

Mi [17] developed a ultransonic sensing system to monitor the weld penetration. The sensing system was based on using a laser phased array technique to generate focused and steered ultrasound, and an EMAT as a receiver. Both the ultrasound generation by the laser phased array and the reception by the EMAT were non-contact, which could thus eliminate the need for a couplant medium. This made the system capable of operating at high temperatures involved in the welding process. A signal processing algorithm based on a cross-correlation technique was further developed to estimate the time-of-flight (TOF) of the ultrasound.

1.3. Infrared sensing method

Infrared sensing is a type of non-contact thermal measurement technique which has been widely used in various applications. Because the temperature distribution in the weld zone contains abundant information about the welding process, infrared sensing of welding processes has drawn considerable attentions from various research institutions.

Chin at Auburn University [18-21] developed a thermal imaging system to measure the variations in weld process parameters such as bead width, penetration depth, and torch offset. The penetration depth has been correlated with the infrared characteristics of the infrared image. The interference of arc radiation was reduced by selecting scanner with specific wavelength region.

At MIT, Hardt used an infrared camera to view the temperature field from the back-side [22]. The penetration depth was precisely estimated from the measured temperature distribution and then controlled [23]. In particualr, a discrete time transfer function matrix empirical model for gas metal arc welding process was proposed, which took the common dynamics for each output and inherent process and measurement delays into account. The adaptation mechanism employed in the control system rendered this model useful over a wide operating range.

In [24] infrared sensor was used to monitor weld process parameters including the weld bead width, penetration depth, and torch position. Analysis of the computed ellipse showed that the temperature gradient or heat energy distribution (minor axis of the ellipse) and the heat input (volume under the temperature profiles) varied with the penetration depth.

1.4. Vision-based sensing method

Based on the observation of the weld pool, a skill welder can assure the desired full penetration. The weld pool thus should contain abundant information of weld penetration. To this end, vision-based systems have been applied to monitor the weld poo by emulating human welders' visual sensory ability. Continued advances in computational capabilities and reduction in cost have recently led to an increase in researches and applications of vision-based systems for the weld pool measurement and welding process control. In the following subsections, vision-based sensing methods are extensively reviewed, including 2D weld pool sensing, and 3D weld pool sensing methods.

1.4.1. 2D weld pool sensing

2D weld pool geometry contains certain information of the welding process, and has been used to monitor the welding process and control the weld penetration [25-27].

Fan et.al [26] studied 2D visual sensing and penetration control in aluminum (Al) alloy pulse GTAW process. A three-optical-route visual sensor was designed. The sensor could capture the weld pool from three directions at the same time. The authors finally used PID and a multiplex controller to control the penetration.

Ma [27] used two normal CCD cameras for capturing clear images from two directions: one of them was used to measure the root gap and another one was used to measure the geometric parameters of the weld pool. Seam tracking and penetration control of robot welding process was simultaneously established based on the proposed binocular vision sensor.

1.4.2. 3D weld pool sensing

Although 2D *weld pool geometry* has been obtained with above different techniques, the convexity/deformation of the weld pool is not yet fully explored. Early researchers have found that important information such as weld defects and penetration are contained in the surface deformation of the weld pool [28, 29]. A recent study suggests that compared with the 2D weld pool geometry, the 3D geometry can better predict the weld penetration which is measured by the *backside weld bead width* [30]. Therefore, numerous methods have been developed to reconstruct the 3D weld pool surface.

The measurement of 3D surface has been recently studied extensively with techniques which can be roughly categorized into three branches: 1) reflectometry/deflectometry with fringe reflection technique [31-33]; 2) phase shifted digital fringe projection technique for diffuse objects [34, 35]; 3) shape from shading technique [36]. Unfortunately, the dynamic and specular nature of the weld pool and the interference from the strong arc radiation complicate the observation and deteriorate the effectiveness of most of those methods.

The most popular techniques currently being studied for 3D weld pool measurement can be divided into four categories:

1. **Model-based reconstruction**

   The 3D weld pool surface was partially reconstructed based on a simple model proposed in [37]. The 2D weld pool images were captured under the base-current period in GMAW. The proposed model then used the capturing angle of the camera and the 2D weld pool profile to calculate the weld pool width, the length of the pool tail, the height of the rear of the pool, etc. The reconstruction algorithm was further applied in [38] for the control of weld pool shape. A fuzzy logic controller was constructed to control weld penetration. It was found that the correlation was nonlinear and thus suitable to employ the proposed fuzzy controller. Simulation and control experiments were carried out to verify the effectiveness of the proposed control algorithm.

   Although this model-based reconstruction algorithm is simple and fast, it can only measure the height of the weld bead that is solidifying or have already solidified at the rear of the weld pool. The 3D geometry of head of the weld pool cannot be acquired using this method. Further, the model-based reconstruction algorithm only suits for thin work piece welding application.

2. **Stereovision measurement**

In [39], two cameras were synchronized to capture the two images of weld pool surface simultaneously in the short circuit period during the Surface Tension Transfer (STT) process and external illumination was used. The paired images were rectified using calibration parameters obtained through the stereo calibration procedure. As the weld pool surface was highly patterned in the experiment, an image correlation-type measure was used to match points between the two rectified images. Then by using stereo image processing algorithms the weld pool shape was rendered in 3D. A closed-loop control system was further developed using the technique for robot welding process [40]. However, the shape of the bright part in the head of the weld pool cannot be acquired by using this method. Further, the accurate reconstruction of the weld pool requires both precise synchronization of the two cameras and high quality of the captured images.

To avoid the synchronization problem, the biprism stereo vision sensing was proposed in which one camera was used with a biprism attached on its head [41]. However, only the height of the weld pool boundary was extracted in real-time, the 3D geometry inside the weld pool was missed. Furthermore, the reconstruction accuracy might be an issue since the visual differences are comparatively small between the two simultaneously captured images. A similar reconstruction algorithm has been utilized in a stereo sensing system using single camera with a stereo adapter developed to reconstruct the 3D weld pool for tracking particle flow on the weld pool surface [42].

3. **Shape from shading (SFS) reconstruction**

3D weld pool reconstruction algorithms have also been proposed based on shape from shading method [43-47]. Zhao et al. [46] use SFS algorithm to reconstruct the surface from one single weld pool image. Two-dimensional shape parameters were extracted from a 2D image processing algorithm. Finally, a SFS algorithm on a single image was used to recover the surface height from a single weld pool image. The extracted three-dimensional parameters for the weld pool surface were verified and used for double-sided shape control.

However, SFS algorithms are usually complex and thus used for off-line reconstruction of the 3D weld pool surface. Furthermore, the reconstruction algorithms are based on two assumptions: 1) The object surface is a Lambertian surface which reflects light with equal intensity in all directions; 2) The camera and the light source are at the infinite far distance from the object surface. The weld pool, on the other hand, is a specular surface which is not a Lambertian surface. The camera and light source in the experiment systems are not far enough from the weld pool such that the infinite far position assumption is invalid. Therefore, the 3D weld pool reconstruction using SFS might not be an ideal solution.

4. Structured-light based sensing

A structured-light vision system was developed in [48] projecting a pulsed laser on the weld pool surface through a special grid. A high shutter-speed camera was used to capture the laser stripe pattern reflected by the weld pool surface. First, to eliminate the influence of the bright arc light, a short duration pulsed laser was projected onto the weld pool surface. The camera shutter was synchronized with the pulse duration. Second, a frosted glass was used to allow each laser ray as a new point light source which disperses light with a certain diffuse angle. The camera viewed the grid openings through their reflection from the weld pool surface and obtained image consisted of bright strips deformed by the weld pool surface deformation. The proposed method could obtain specular reflection from the weld pool under the presence of the bright arc. An iterative algorithm was used to calculate the surface of the weld pool. The time cost of the reconstruction was about 1s. However, the synchronization of the laser and high-speed shutter required specific, high-costly, and sophisticated equipment. The boundary of the weld pool was also hard to extract using this sensing method.

Follow-up study [49] provided a measurement system based on a mathematical model of weld pool surface. The captured image from [48] was applied as an example in the study. Although this work did not propose a new reconstruction algorithm, it provided some novel insights of 3D weld pool surface measurement.

A laser grating sensing technique was proposed in [50]. The reflected grating was captured by a two-lens system. The depth of weld pool was determined based on the phase changes of the deformed grating image [51]. However, using this method the boundary of the weld pool was hard to be determined. Further, it was only a primarily study since there is no detailed quantitative analysis of the reconstruction.

A novel reconstruction algorithm using the slope field and point tracking of the dot matrix was proposed in [52]. A single laser line was projected onto the weld pool surface from a known position with a certain angle. The reflected laser beam from the weld pool surface was captured by a calibrated compact CCD sensor. From the acquired images, the profile of the weld pool surface can be extracted according to ray-tracing technique and the parameters of the CCD sensor. If the line was projected onto the center of the weld pool, the depth of weld pool could also be extracted.

In this technique incorporated use of a calibrated CCD sensor and structured light made it possible to extract the depth of pool from captured images. Although the height reconstruction error was small, the point tracking procedure was complex such that the point matching for each frame requires to process three consecutive frames. It was thus only suitable for off-line reconstruction of 3D weld pool surface. Also, the boundary information of the weld pool in the reconstruction was not addressed.

A laser pattern reflected from the weld pool surface has been intercepted/imaged by/on a diffusive imaging plane placed with a distance from the weld pool [53]. The camera aimed at the imaging plane (rather than the weld pool illuminated by the extremely strong arc) to acquire the reflected laser pattern. Its uniqueness lied in its simultaneous use of the distance and specular nature of the weld pool surface to significantly decay the arc radiation but not the intensity of the laser reflection from the specular weld pool surface despite the distance. To compute the weld pool surface from the reflected patterns, an iterative algorithm has been proposed using the slope field of the projected dot matrix. The slope differences between the neighborhood laser dots were used to find the estimated height of the weld pool surface.

However, this slope error based algorithm requires numerous iterative loops till the estimated surface approaches the actual weld pool surface resulting in relatively large reconstruction errors. Similarly, this imaging method and reconstruction algorithm have been used to image and reconstruct the weld pool surface in gas metal arc welding (GMAW) using a five line laser pattern [54].

This chapter focuses on the development of a procedure of *image processing algorithms* and an *analytical solution* that allows the 3D weld pool surface in GTAW be reconstructed in real-time using the aforementioned innovative imaging principle [53]. The *effectiveness*, *time cost*, *accuracy* and *robustness* of the proposed algorithm are quantitatively studied. The accuracy and speed are tested using objects with known geometry and compared with those from previous studies. In particular, the chapter is organized as follows: Section 2 details the vision-based monitoring system. The proposed image processing algorithm procedure is presented in Section 3. The proposed analytic reconstruction algorithm is detailed in Section 4. In Section 5 one object with known 3D geometry is used to emulate the weld pool surface. By comparing the reconstruction surface of the object with its actual surface, the effectiveness and accuracy of the proposed algorithms are verified. The time cost of the reconstruction algorithm is then analyzed. Section 6 presents the summaries of this chapter.

2. Vision-based monitoring system

2.1. Monitoring system

The configuration of the sensing system and the 3D rectangular coordinate systems *oxyz* are shown in Fig. 2.

A 20 mW illumination laser generator at a wavelength of 685 nm with variable focus is used to generate a structure light pattern, i.e., a 19×19 dot matrix pattern (Lasiris SNF-519×0.77-685-20). The laser pattern is projected onto the area under the torch electrode and covers the whole possible weld pool region. During the welding process, the base metal is melted by the arc forming a *liquid weld pool* which has a mirror-like specular surface. It can reflect the majority of the incident laser rays. Therefore, only the dots projected on the weld pool are reflected by its specular surface [49].

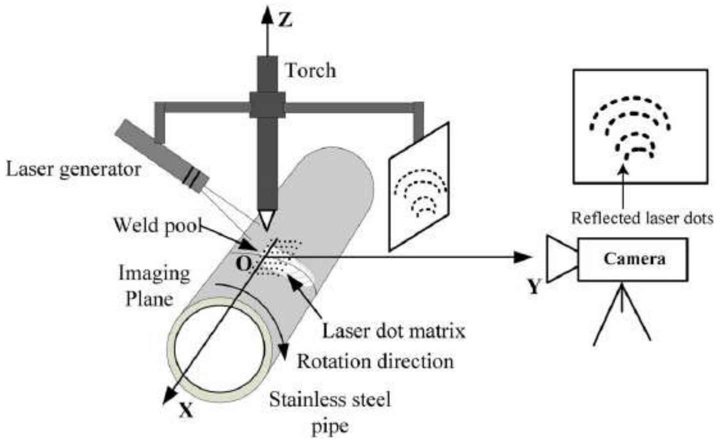
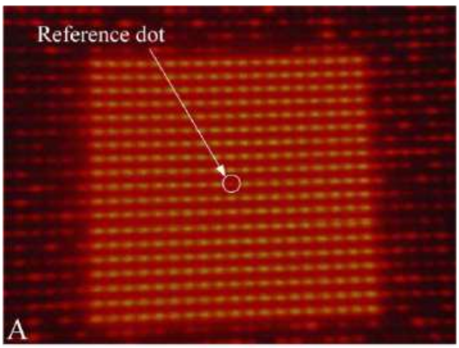


Figure 2. Monitoring system

In order to capture the reflected dot matrix, an imaging plane made by a sheet of glass attached with a piece of paper is installed with a distance of 100 mm approximately from the electrode. A camera (Pointgrey Flea 3 FL3-FW-03S1C-C) is located behind the imaging plane directly aiming at it. The camera captures the images of the reflected pattern from the imaging plane. The captured image is 8-bit monochrome with a resolution of 640×480 or 480×640. A band-pass filter of 20 nm band-width centered at a wavelength of 685 nm is attached to the camera to block the majority of the arc radiation. A computer connects with the camera using a 9-pin 1394b interface. With a maximal frame rate of 200 fps (frame per second), the high transfer rate from the camera to PC (maximum rate 800Mbit/s) makes possible the real-time monitoring and measurement of the 3D weld pool surface in GTAW.

The projection pattern, the dot matrix, is shown in Fig. 3a. The reflection patterns at the solution 480×640 and 640×480 are presented in Fig. 3b and 3c, respectively. The reference dot, i.e., the center ray of the dot matrix is intentionally missed. Please note that the brightness of reflected patterns in the captured images is intentionally enhanced for readability. The original images captured from welding process are much darker than the presented ones.



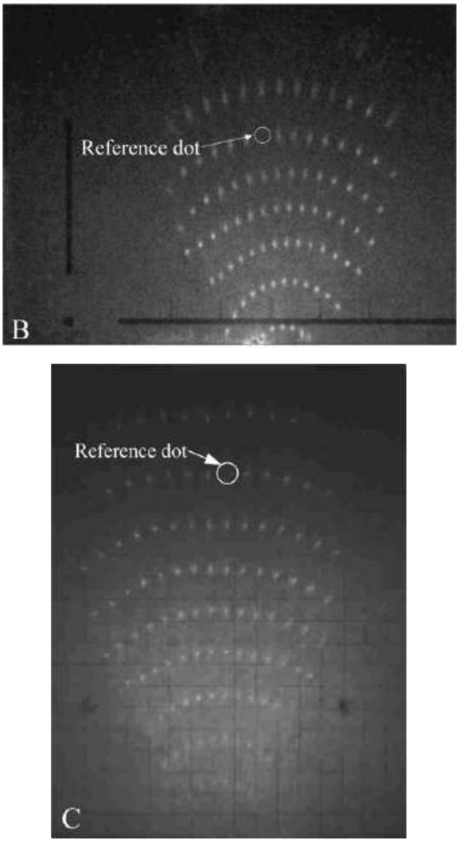


Figure 3. Projection and reflection patterns. A: Dot matrix laser pattern; B: Reflection pattern at resolution 480×640; C: Reflection pattern at resolution 640×480

2.2. Experiment conditions

The welding process used is direct-current electrode-negative (DCEN) GTAW. The material of the pipe is stainless steel (4 inch normal, stainless T-304/304L, schedule 5). The pipe rotates during welding while the torch's orientation, imaging plane, laser projector, and camera are stationary. The rotation speed and the distance from the tungsten tip to the pipe surface are controlled by a computer to weld at required welding speed and arc length.

Ranges of parameters selected to conduct the welding experiments and acquire images in this chapter are shown in Table 1. The full penetration, i.e., the liquid weld pool extends from the front to the back face of the work piece, can be produced on the work piece with those welding parameters. Shielding gas is pure argon. The 2% ceriated ground tungsten electrode (3/32 ×7'') grinding to 30º is used.

Welding Parameters			
Current/A	Welding speed/mm/s	Arc length/mm	Argon flow rate/L/min
65	1.5	4.5	11.8
Monitoring Parameters			
Project angle/°	Laser to weld pool distance/mm	Imaging plane to weld pool distance/mm	
35.5	24.7	101	
Camera Parameters			
Shutter speed /ms	Frame rate/ fps	Camera to imaging plane distance/mm	
4	30	57.8	

Table 1. Major experiment parameters

3. Image processing scheme

Using the vision-based monitoring system, images of laser reflection pattern, as shown in Fig. 3b and 3c, can be captured during welding process. However, those two images are deliberately enhanced in brightness such that clear reflection patterns can be seen. The original captured image corresponding to Fig. 3b is shown in Fig. 4a. Fig. 3b is also presented in Fig. 4b for a comparison.

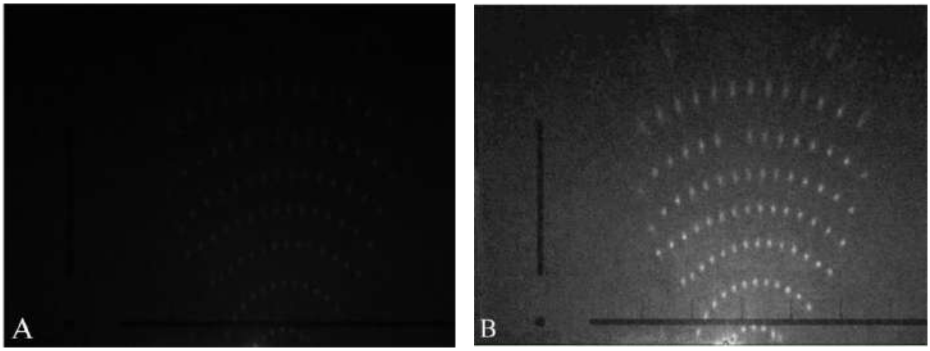


Figure 4. Captured image of reflection pattern. A) Original image captured during welding process; B) Brightness-enhanced image

A human with naked eyes can identify the distorted reflection pattern from captured images as shown in Fig. 4b, while the dots in Fig. 4a can hardly be seen. Images captured during the experiments with different conditions (see Table 1) might obtain even lower brightness and contrast. Furthermore, even in the same captured image, Fig. 4 for example, the gray levels of reflected dots are of great difference. The dots located in the lower part of the image are brighter than those in the upper part of the image. The reflected laser dots are highly coupled with the background in gray scale, especially those in the upper part of the image. In addition, the background of the image, i.e., the part other than the reflection pattern in the captured image, has a severely unbalanced brightness. It can be clearly observed that the brightness of the lower part of the background is much stronger than that of the upper part.

In order to reconstruct the 3D weld pool surface based on the reflection pattern, the reflected dots in the pattern should be extracted from the captured image first. Based on those features of the captured image, noise reduction operation should be conducted first to smooth the image before unifying the brightness. To this end, the flowchart for the proposed image processing scheme is shown in Fig. 5. In particular, a Wavelet-based method is used here for noise reduction which is a pre-processing step to remove certain noises from the image to assure the effectiveness of subsequent processing steps shown in the chart. A Top-hat operation is then performed to unify the background brightness of the captured image while enhancing the reflected dots in the meantime. After a binary thresholding the reflected dots are extracted from the image along with certain noises that are considered as ``fake dots". An adaptive identification algorithm is thus proposed to distinguish the reflected laser dots from the “fake dots”. In order to calculate the weld pool surface, each reflected dot is matched with its corresponding incident ray as defined by its row and column numbers in the projected laser matrix. This is done through the row and column pattern recognition.

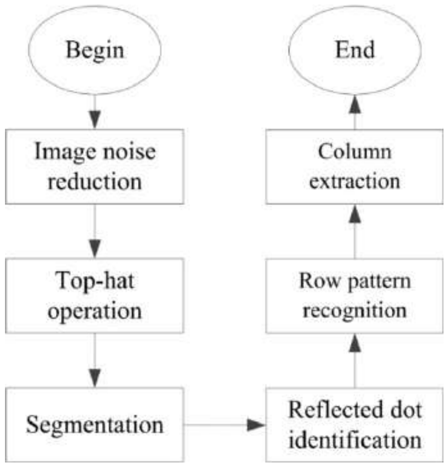


Figure 5. Flowchart for the proposed image processing scheme

In the following sections, the image Fig. 4a is taken as an example to demonstrate the proposed image processing scheme. In particular, each block of image processing operation/algorithm in Fig. 5 is detailed. The effectiveness and robustness of the proposed procedure will be verified in Section 5.

3.1. Noise reduction

Effective noise reduction is a prerequisite for high quality image segmentation. To this end, a wavelet thresholding method is employed to reduce noises in the image. Wavelet noise reduction procedures rely on the recurrent fast wavelet transform (FWT) algorithm proposed by Mallet [55]. The principle of a wavelet-based noise reduction can be described as

$$\hat{x} = FW^{-1}\{T_{\lambda} FW(\tilde{x})\} \tag{1}$$

where $\hat{x}$ is an estimation of x, $T_{\lambda}(\cdot)$ is the thresholding operation, $FW(\cdot)$ and $FW^{-1}(\cdot)$ are the forward and inverse FWT respectively. In order to avoid loss of useful information in the captured image, a soft thresholding is applied [56] with a 8th Symlet Wavelet with 3 levels used for the FWT [57]. After performing noise reduction as shown in Eq. 1 to Fig. 4a, the resultant image is shown in Fig. 6.

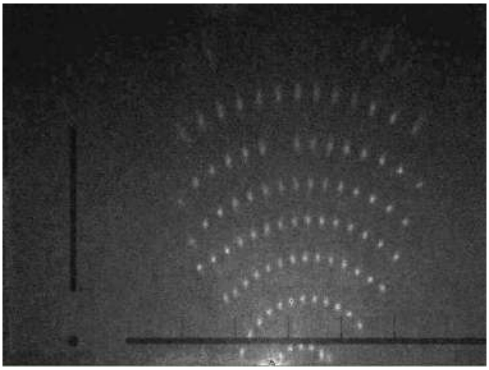


Figure 6. Image after wavelet noise reduction, brightness of the image is enhanced for readability

It can be observed that the lower part image is much brighter than that of the upper half as shown in Fig. 6. To balance the uneven brightness distribution of captured images a top-hat operation is performed. The resultant image is shown in Fig. 7. It can be observed that the unbalance of background in gray scale is much less after the top-hat operation. The reflected dots are clearly seen, and the gray level of background is low enough such that the reflected dots are in good contrast with their local areas.

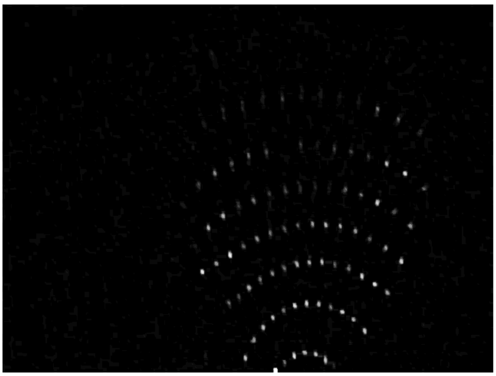


Figure 7. Result image for top-hat operation

3.2. Adaptive segmentation

A binary thresholding is performed to Fig. 7, and the resultant image is shown in Fig. 8. From the figure, the sizes of the identified dots (including both the reflected dots and the fake dots/noise) can be calculated; the size histogram for all the dots thus can be obtained, as shown in Fig. 9. It can observed that most reflected laser dots' sizes are roughly similar while fake dots' sizes are much smaller than those of the laser dots. Therefore, a bimodal histogram is obtained in Fig. 9 in which most fake dots are in area F, while the majority of the reflected laser dots are concentrated in area R.

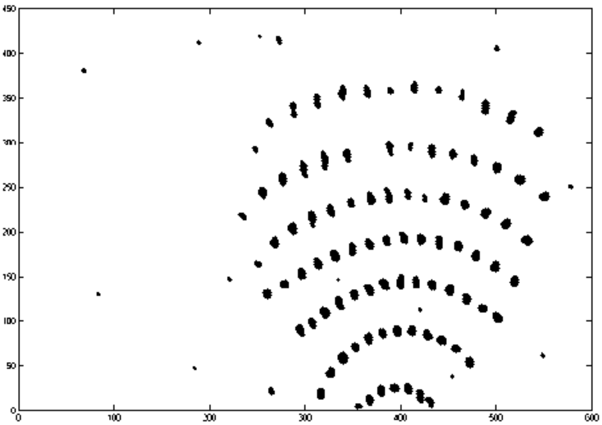


Figure 8. Resultant image after the binary thresholding

To distinguish the reflected laser dots from fake dots an adaptive threshold is required. To this end, Otsu adaptive thresholding method is applied to the size histogram to find the optimal threshold such that the reflected laser dots can be identified from the fake dots [58].

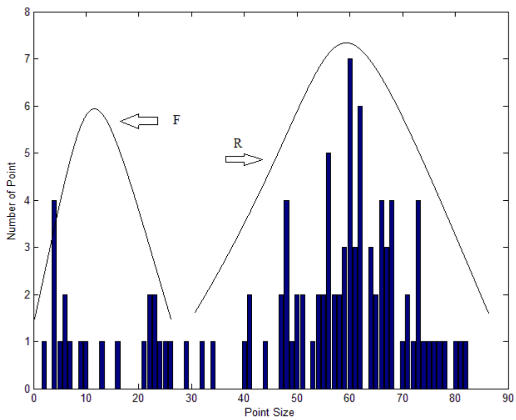


Figure 9. Histogram of dots' sizes, fake dots' size is small, thus they are concentrated in F. The laser dots' size is comparatively large; therefore they are focused in R

Taking the dots in Fig. 8 into calculation, the resultant threshold is 23. Using this threshold, the reflected laser dots are identified, and their positions are shown in Fig. 10.

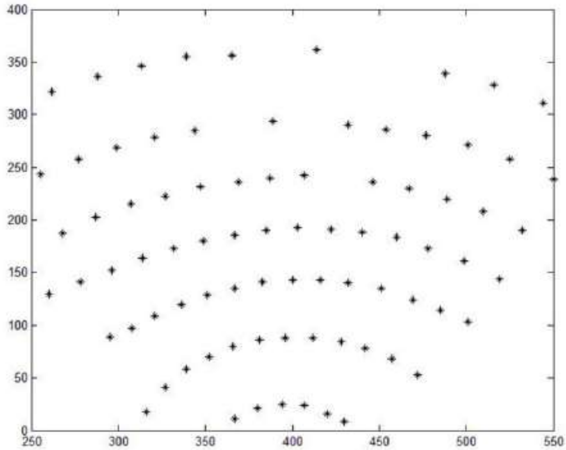


Figure 10. Positions of the identified laser dots

One can find all the fake dots are filtered out after the thresholding, while majority of the reflected dots is preserved. However, it can also be observed that a few reflected laser dots, 5 out of 86 dots in this case, are misjudged as fake dots. This is understandable the adaptive thresholding might not be "intelligent" enough to be able to identify all the reflected dots in each image captured during the welding process with different experiment conditions. However, although a small portion of reflected dots are temporally lost, they can be retrieved in the next section.

3.3. Row/column recognition of the reflection pattern

In order to apply the reflection pattern of laser dots to reconstruct the 3D weld pool surface, each reflected dot should be matched to its corresponding incident ray from the dot matrix first. This subsection first develops the recognition process to identify the row number of the corresponding of each laser dot in the reflection pattern. The column numbers are extracted latter in this subsection.

One can observed that the laser dots in the reflection pattern are well distributed in several smooth top-convex curves which can be roughly considered as quadratics. Fig. 11 is the illustration of the second-order polynomial fitting for the rows of the reflected dots. It can be observed that all rows of reflected dots can be modeled as the following second-order polynomial, as shown in Eq. 2, where a pixel location is presented by coordinate (x, y), and a, b, c>0. Row r_α can be denoted by $r_\alpha(a_\alpha, b_\alpha, c_\alpha)$, where variables a_α, b_α, and c_α are what represent the row using Eq. 2, where α=1, …,R, and R is the number of the rows in the reflection pattern, in the case shown in Fig. 11, R=7.

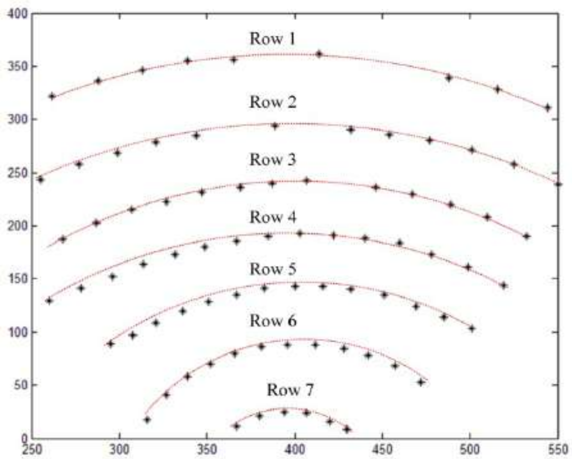


Figure 11. Illustration of curve fitting for the reflected laser dots

$$y = a(x-b)^2 + c \tag{2}$$

Since the correspondence of the mapping is known, the recognition process is to first assign all the reflected dots to different rows, second match to the rows to the corresponding rows in dot matrix. In particular, the first step is to define the 7 rows using Eq. 2; Second is to find the a row for each reflected dot with a pre-defined offset. Then the 7 rows are thus formed; Last step is use the reference dot (in 10th row and 10th column shown in Fig. 3) to map the rows into the dot matrix.

Using the Hugh transform method, all the rows in the reflection pattern in Fig. 10 can be identified, as shown in Fig. 12. The curves present the identified row. The reflected dots are distributed around those rows.

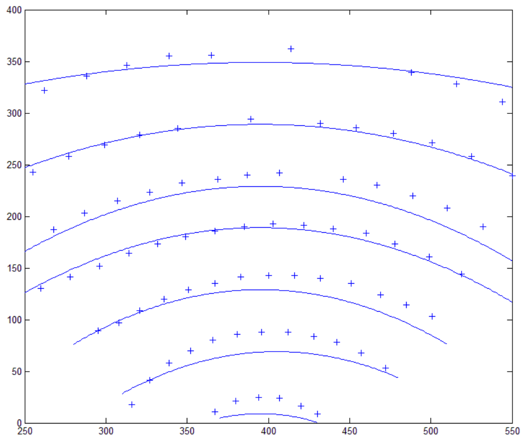


Figure 12. Results of row identification

It can be found some of the reflected dots are missed in some of the rows. That is because those reflected dots are mistakenly filtered out in Section 3.2. Since all the rows are extracted, those reflected dots can be retrieved. The process is, for one specific row, 1) the median distance between two neighbor dots in the row is first calculated; 2) all the dots are visited to find out the abnormal large distance between neighbor dots. It is considered that there is for a reflected dot missed; 3) starting from the largest size, all the filtered out dots (including the fake dots, i.e., the noise) are visited to find the fittest to fill in the position of the missed reflected dot. The process goes through recursively for every row, and the filtered out reflected dots can be retrieved. The result is shown in Fig. 13. Reflected dots are marked with different shapes in different rows.

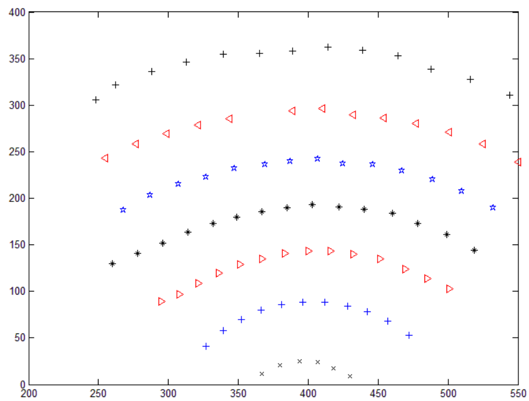


Figure 13. Reflected dots in different rows

It can be found in Fig. 13 that there is one point missed in the second row of reflected dots from the top of the reflection image. That intentionally absent dot is the center dot (in 10th row and 10th column of the 19×19 dot matrix). It serves as the reference dot (see Fig. 3) to facilitate the row/column identification and the corresponding match between reflected dots and incident rays. To this end, the row pattern recognition can be accomplished. The result is shown in Fig. 14. The numbers in the image indicate the corresponding row match between the row in the reflection image and the incident rows in the dot matrix.

After the reference dot found in one row in the reflection image, the column number for each dot in the row can be identified, shown in Fig. 15. The distortion of the laser pattern in the vertical direction is much less severe than that in the horizontal direction. Therefore, a center line $y=kx+b$ is fitted using reference dot together with its nearest adjacent dots in the neighbor rows.

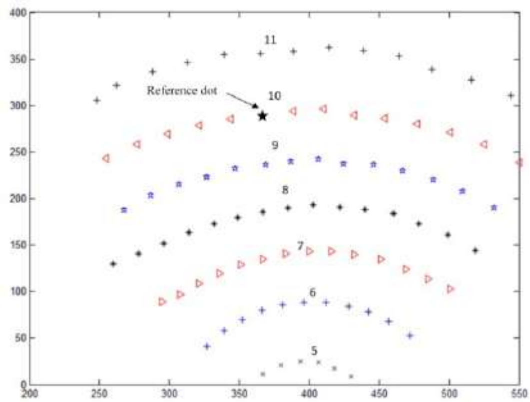


Figure 14. Reflected rows matching with the corresponding incident rows in the dot matrix. The numbers represent the incident rows in the dot matrix that the reflected rows match respectively.

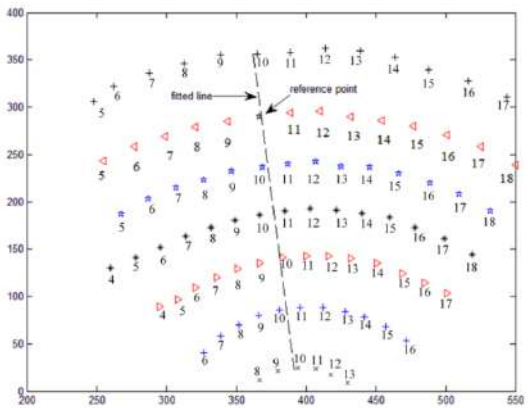


Figure 15. Column extraction with fitted line

4. Weld pool reconstruction

This section focuses on the development of an analytical solution that allows the 3D weld pool surface in GTAW be reconstructed in real-time. In particular, the boundary of the weld pool is extracted in section 4.1 ; the reconstruction of the 3D weld pool surface is detailed in section 4.2; An reconstruction example is given in section 4.3.

4.1. Extraction of weld pool boundary

Before the 3D surface is reconstructed, the boundary of the weld pool should be determined first. The model used to fit the boundary of the weld pool is from literature [59] and demonstrated in Fig. 16:

$$y_r = \pm a x_r^b (1\text{-}x_r), \quad \left(a > 0, 1 \geq \ b > 0\right) \tag{3}$$

where $x_r = x / L$, $y_r = y / L$, and L is the length of the weld pool, which is the distance from the head to the tail of the weld pool. The width of the weld pool can be calculated using parameter a, b and L.

$$w = w_r \times L = 2aL\left[\frac{b}{1+b}\right]^b \left(\frac{b}{1+b}\right) \tag{4}$$

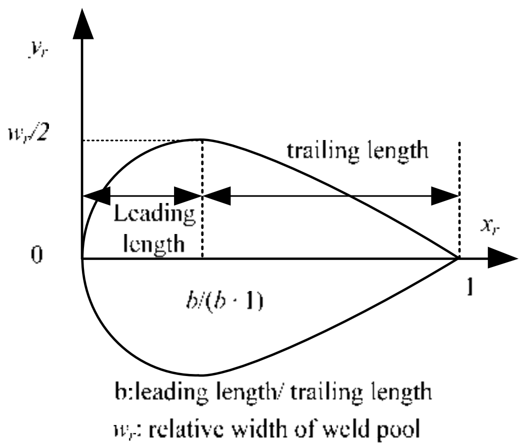


Figure 16. Illustration of the weld pool boundary model.

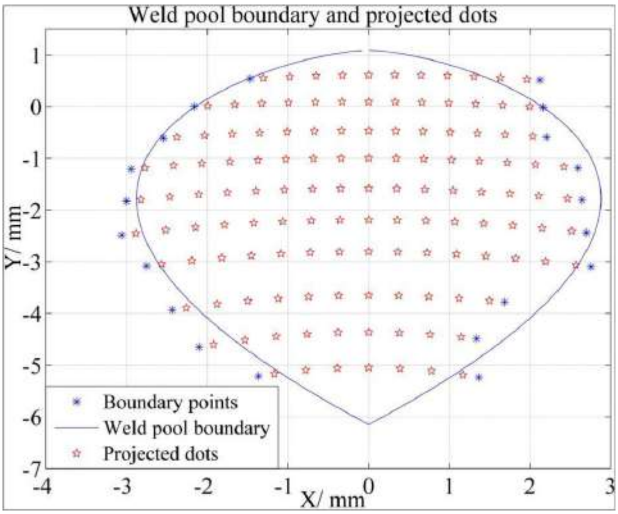


Figure 17. Modeling of the weld pool boundary

Fig. 3c is taken as an example to demonstrate the boundary fitting. The resultant boundary of the weld pool is shown in Fig. 17. Red stars and blue crosses show the laser dots projected on the specular weld pool surface and the raw estimates of the boundary points respectively. The rays and boundary shown in the figure are the projection of them on the *oxy* plane. The red stars in each row are curved because the projected rays intercept the pipe surface rather than a plate. The blue crosses are the raw estimates of the boundary points as defined above and the blue lines are the fitted boundary using Eq. 3. It can be seen that the weld pool is about 7 mm long and 6 mm wide.

4.2. Reconstruction of 3D weld pool surface

The formation of the image on the imaging plane is governed by the law of specular reflection. A reconstruction scheme thus is required to extract the 3D geometry of the weld pool surface by solving an inverse problem of the reflection law. The dot matrix reflection from the weld pool surface is demonstrated in Fig. 18.

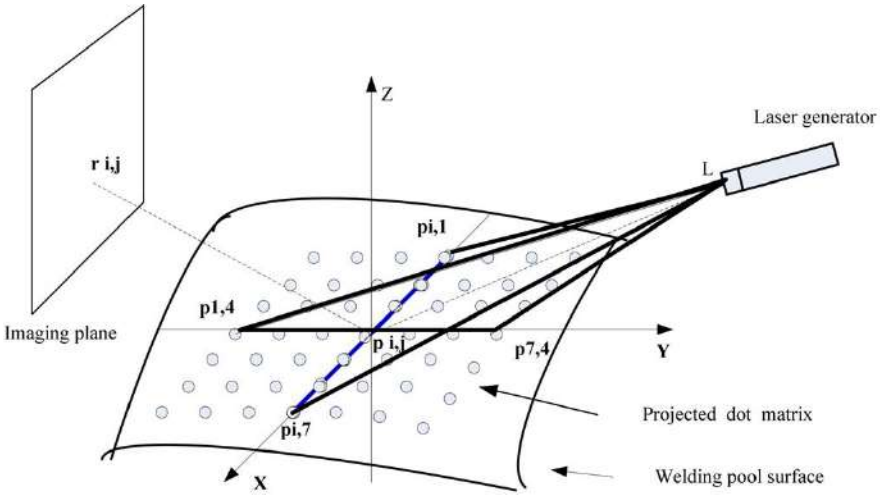


Figure 18. Demonstration of dot matrix reflection

The equations for all incident rays projected from laser to the weld pool surface are known. For ray $Lp_{i,j}$, the i^{th} row j^{th} column in the pattern, the position of its reflection image $r_{i,j}$ in *oxyz* coordinate in Fig. 18 can be obtained using its position in the imaging plane (which has been extracted by the image processing algorithm) and the equation of the imaging plane in *oxyz* coordinate. The goal of the surface reconstruction algorithm is to calculate the coordinates of each $p_{i,j}$ in *oxyz* coordinate. Then the 3D weld pool surface can be interpolated using the coordinates from all $p_{i,j}$'s.

However, without further constraints or assumptions, $p_{i,j}$'s positions cannot be directly determined. Fortunately, the weld pool surface in GTAW is smooth such that two reasonable assumptions can be made:

1. For the most left and right dots in a row, i.e., edge dots, reflected from the weld pool surface that are close to the boundary of the weld pool surface, their deviations from the original pipe surface as measured by their z-coordinates are approximately zero.
2. $z_{i,j} = z_i(x_{i,j}(j))$ can be modeled as a polynomial of the column number j where $z_{i,j}$ and $x_{i,j}$ are the z and x coordinate respectively for $p_{i,j}$. Based on the observation of the extracted pattern, a second order polynomial should be sufficient to meet the reconstruction accuracy requirement defined later in the paper.

A procedure can thus be proposed to reconstruct the 3D weld pool surface from the extracted image, i.e., the extracted laser reflection pattern, obtained from the image processing:

Step 1. **Determination of Intersection Points:** The surface of work piece or a previous estimate if available is used as the "previously estimated weld pool surface". With this known surface together with known knowledge for the origin, projection angle, and internal angle of the laser pattern, the positions of the intersections of the projected rays with it can be easily acquired. That is, the coordinates for all $p_{i,j}$'s in the $oxyz$ coordinate system shown in Fig. 18 are obtained.

Step 2. **Updating of Slope Field at Intersection Points:** With the known equations of the incident rays and equations of the estimated reflection rays $p_{i,j}r_{i,j}$'s , slopes and components $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$'s and $\frac{\partial z}{\partial y}$'s at all $p_{i,j}$'s, i.e., the row and column slopes are obtained/updated.

Step 3. **Updating of Intersection Points:** The projection of the i^{th} row of the incident rays in the dot matrix on the oxz plane is illustrated in Fig. 19. Updating from $p_{i,j}^{(0)'}s$ (on the previously estimated or initial surface obtained in Step 1) requires to find a new set of points $p_{i,j}$'s along with this row of incident rays to satisfy the row slopes $\frac{\partial z}{\partial x}$'s obtained in Step 2 from the previously estimated or initial surface. Fig. 19 shows the case when the previously estimated surface is the initial surface (the surface of the work piece).

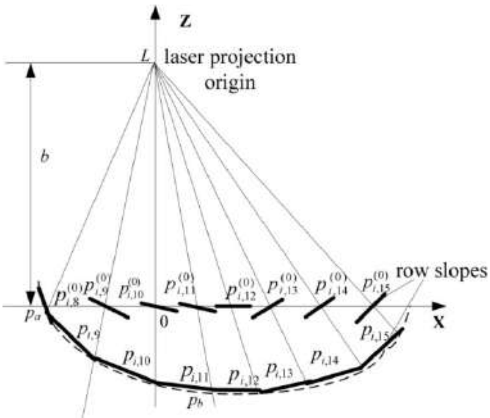


Figure 19. Projection of i^{th} row (an arbitrary row) in dot matrix to oxz plane

To analytically solve for $p_{i,j}$'s, assumption (2) is used such that $p_{i,j}$'s are constrained in a 2nd order polynomial:

$$z = a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0 \tag{5}$$

where a_0, a_1 and a_2 are the parameters. (Higher order polynomials may be used if a 2nd order one is not sufficient.) To be convenient, denote the edge point by $p_a(x_a, z_a)$ and inner point by $p_b(x_b, z_b)$, where x_m and z_m is the x coordinate and z coordinate of p_m. Denote their row slopes as S_a and S_b, respectively. The slopes of the two incident rays Lp_a and Lp_b in Fig. 19 are denoted as k_a and k_b. The distance of the laser projection origin to the *x*-axis is denoted as b. Since the internal angle of the laser pattern is fixed (0.77°), the slope for each incident ray can be easily determined.

At point $p_m(x_m, z_m)$ where *m=a, b*, the geometric relationships between incident rays and the row constraint polynomial Eq. (5) are:

$$\begin{bmatrix} z_m \\ z_m \\ dz_m / dx\big|_{x=x_m} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_2 & a_1 & a_0 \\ 0 & k_m & b \\ 0 & 2a_2 & a_1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x_m^2 \\ x_m \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{6}$$

$$dz_m / dx\big|_{x=x_m} = S_m \tag{7}$$

Solving Eq. (6) and (7), the parameters for the row constraint polynomial Eq. (3) are obtained:

$$a_0 = z_a - (a_2 x_a^2 + a_1 x_a) \tag{8}$$

$$a_1 = S_a - 2a_2 x_a \tag{9}$$

$$a_2 = \left[(S_a - S_b)^2 / 4 - (k_b - S_b)(S_a - S_b) / 2 \right] / \left[(k_a - k_b) x_a \right] \tag{10}$$

when $x_a \neq 0$.

$$a_0 = z_a \tag{11}$$

$$a_1 = S_a \tag{12}$$

$$a_2 = \left[4(a_1 - k_b)(S_b - a_1) + (S_b - a_1)^2 \right] / (b - a_0) \tag{13}$$

when $x_a = 0$.

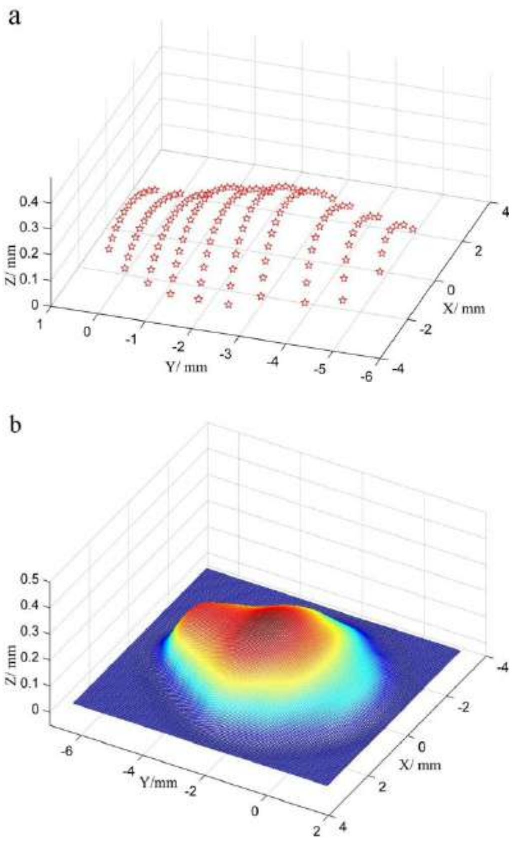
From Eq. (8)-(13), the parameters of the row constraint polynomial are completely solved. However, this requires the position of the dot p_a. According to the assumption (1), the z coordinate of each edge dot on the weld pool surface can be considered zero, that is z_a=0. Its x_a can be calculated by intersecting the corresponding incident ray with z=0. The coordinates for p_a is thus considered known.

With this constraint polynomial, the intersections of the incident rays (projections on the *oxz* planes shown in Fig. 19) with it are the projection of the updated $p_{i,j}$'s. The updated $p_{i,j}$'s in the *oxyz* coordinate system as shown in Fig. 18 can thus be obtained through the inverse projection.

Step 4. Interpolating Surface: With all the coordinates of the $p_{i,j}$'s, a triangle-based cubic interpolation [60] method is applied to interpolate the 3D weld pool surface. With the obtained surface, the slopes of the surface at the $p_{i,j}$'s can be easily acquired. Therefore, the resultant reflection pattern using the reconstructed surface is obtained.

4.3. Reconstruction example

Taking Fig. 3c as an example, the results of the weld pool reconstruction using the proposed reconstruction scheme are shown in Fig. 20.



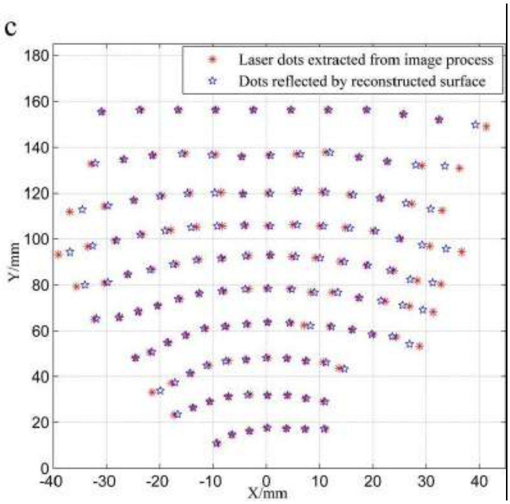


Figure 20. Results of 3D reconstruction of the weld pool. (a) shows the 3D coordinates of all the projected laser dots on the weld pool surface, (b) is the weld pool surface interpolated using the laser dots in (a), (c) shows the reflected pattern from imaging process and that from the reconstructed weld pool surface.

Fig. 20a shows the position for each projected dot on the weld pool surface. The interpolation result for the 3D weld pool in Fig. 20b gives a better view of the weld pool surface. The comparison between the two reflection patterns (calculated from the reconstructed surface and extracted from the acquired image) is shown in Fig. 20c. An acceptable match of the reflection patterns is obtained using the proposed reconstruction algorithm.

In order to verify the accuracy of the proposed reconstruction algorithm, the results in this study are compared with the previous work in [52, 53]. The reason the two studies are selected for comparison is that high reconstruction accuracies are acquired through detailed quantitative analysis in these two studies. In order to compare the reconstruction accuracy with the previous work [53] which uses the similar sensing system, the same reconstruction error measurement parameters are adopted here, i.e., the average reflection error (ARE) and maximum reflection error (MRE):

$$ARE = \frac{1}{N}\sum_{k=1}^{N} E_k \tag{14}$$

$$MRE = \max\{E_k, k = 1,...,N\} \tag{15}$$

$$E_k = \sqrt{\left[\left(x_k^{(e)} - x_k^{(c)}\right)\frac{W_p}{W_r}\right]^2 + \left[\left(y_k^{(e)} - y_k^{(c)}\right)\frac{L_p}{L_r}\right]^2} \tag{16}$$

where W_r and L_r are the horizontal and vertical ranges of the actual reflected dots extracted from image processing, respectively and W_p and L_p represent the horizontal (X axis) and vertical (Y axis) ranges of the corresponding projected dots on the work piece, which are the width and length of the weld pool boundary.

Using the same example (Fig. 3c), E_k can be calculated using the data shown in Fig. 4 and Fig. 7. The ARE and MRE of the reconstruction are thus obtained: $ARE = 0.03mm$, $MRE = 0.20mm$. The minimal ARE and MRE obtained is [53] are 0.08 mm and 0.22 mm, respectively. Therefore, using the proposed algorithm, the error measurement parameters are 0.05 mm smaller in ARE and 0.02 mm smaller in MRE than those parameters obtained in [53]. The reconstruction accuracy increases 62.5 % in ARE and 9% in MRE.

5. Experiments results and analysis

In Section 3, the reflected laser dots have been identified from the reflection pattern. Then they have been used to reconstruct the profile of the 3D weld pool surface in Section 4. To verify the accuracy with respect to ground truth, the proposed algorithm needs to be tested by reconstructing objects with known geometry. Also, the real-time performance of the proposed scheme is not validated. In this section, using a spherical bench mark with a known geometry having a specular surface to emulate a weld pool, a simulation has been conducted to evaluate the effectiveness and accuracy of the proposed algorithm; the time cost of the algorithm was evaluated to see if it is suitable for real-time welding process; During simulation, the error measurement parameters ARE and MRE are used to evaluate the reconstruction accuracy.

To evaluate the accuracy and effectiveness of the proposed algorithm, the 3D weld pool is characterized using the three geometric parameters, i.e., the length, the width and the height, in which the length is the distance from the head to the tail of the weld pool; the width can be obtained using Eq. 4; the height is defined as the maximum height of the weld pool.

5.1. Simulation and results

The verification of the proposed reconstruction scheme starts with a bench mark with a known geometry to imitate the weld pool surface which is shown in Fig. 21. The top cap of the sphere is obtained by using a plane to intercept a sphere. It is used to imitate the weld pool surface in the experiment. Its height (d) is 0.5 mm and the diameter (r) is 5 mm.

In Fig. 22b the boundaries of the reconstructed bench mark fitted by the weld pool boundary model illustrated in Fig. 16 and a circle are presented. For the dimension of the boundary fitted by the weld pool boundary model, its length is 10.024 mm and its width is 10.32 mm which lead to 0.024 mm error in length and 0.32 mm error in width. Based on the dimension of the actual bench mark, the reconstruction errors are 0.48% of the length and 3.2% of the width respectively. Having a circle to fit the reconstructed bench mark boundary using the least squared method, the boundary diameter is 9.989 mm which is only 0.11% of reconstruction error. It can be seen that the circle can fit the boundary of the reconstructed bench mark better than the weld pool boundary model. This is understandable since the model only can fit the moving weld pool which rarely has a circular boundary.

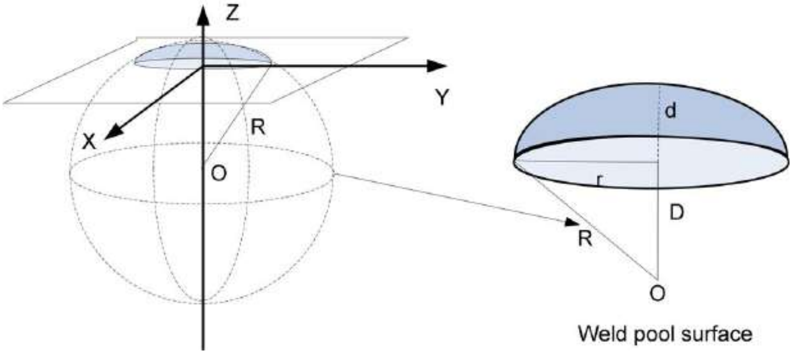
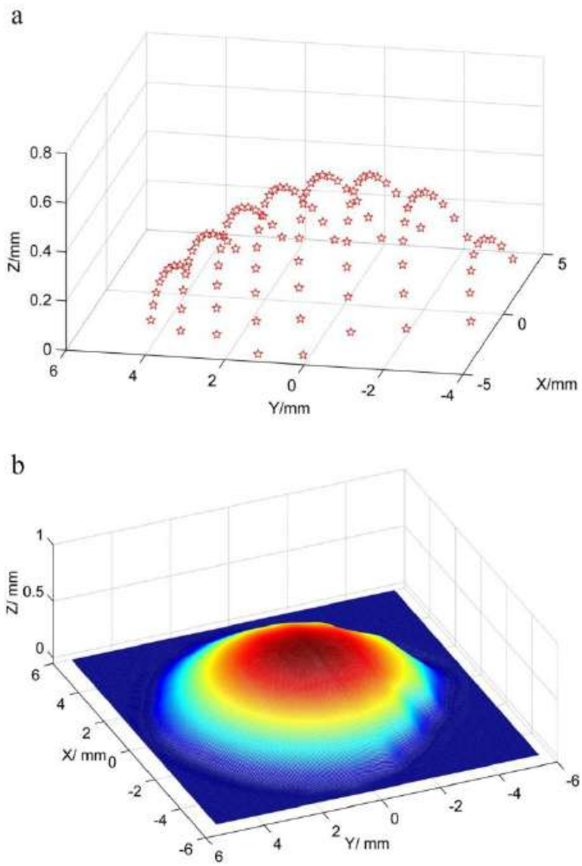


Figure 21. The illustration of the imitation of the weld pool

A simulation was designed to project dot matrix on the bench mark. The projected dots on the spherical surface were reflected and intercepted by an imaging plane. The results of the simulation for the reconstruction of the bench mark are shown in Fig. 22.



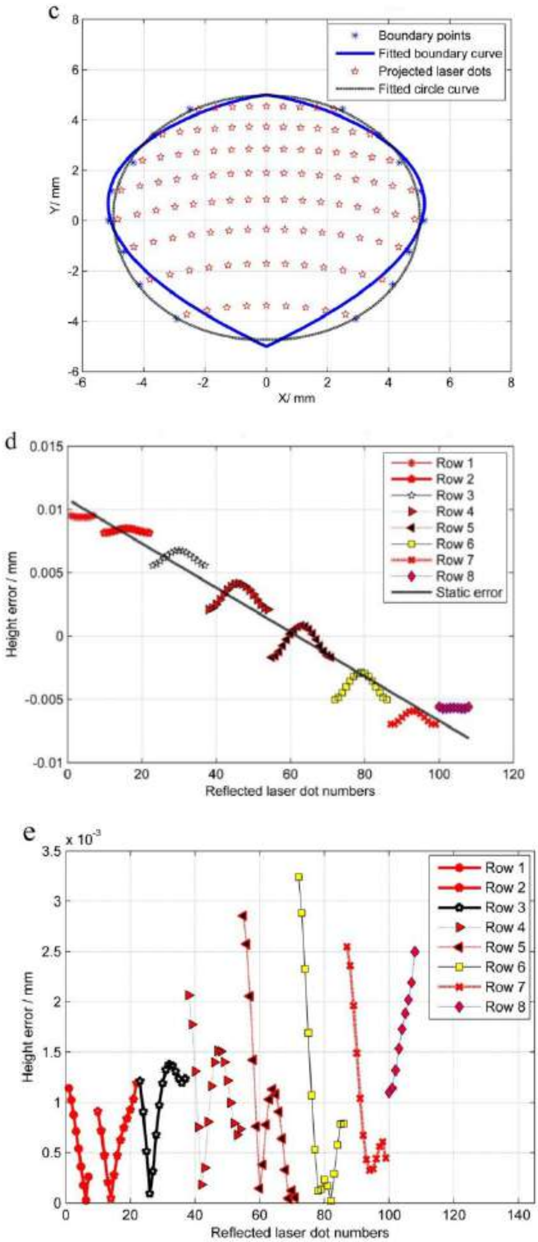


Figure 22. Simulation results of the proposed reconstruction scheme. (a) The 3D coordinates of all the projected laser dots; b) The reconstructed surface of the bench mark; (c) The boundary of the reconstructed bench mark; (d) The height errors between the actual and reconstructed bench marks row by row and the static height error. Row 1 is defined as the most left reflected dots row in (a). The absolute errors between height errors and the corresponding static errors are shown in (e).

Fig. 22d show the height errors of the reconstruction at the all the x, y coordinates of the reflected dots. The sphere function for the bench mark is:

$$x^2 + y^2 + \left[z - \left(d - R\right)\right]^2 = R^2 \tag{17}$$

The definitions of d and R can be seen in Fig. 21. The heights (z-coordinates) of bench mark at the same (x, y) coordinates of the reflected dots thus can be easily obtained:

$$z_k^{(b)} = \sqrt{R^2 - x_k^2 - y_k^2} + (d - R) \tag{18}$$

where $z_k^{(b)}$ is the height of bench mark at position (x_k, y_k) which is the x, y coordinate of corresponding projected laser dot $p_k(x_k, y_k, z_k)$. It should be noted that there is another possible solution for the height from Eq. 17, which is $-\sqrt{R^2 - x_k^2 - y_k^2} + (d - R)$. However, according to the definition in Fig. 21, the height in Eq. 18 is the right solution. Therefore, the height error at position (x_k, y_k) is:

$$z_k^{error} = z_k^{(b)} - z_k \tag{19}$$

The height errors of the reconstruction obtained for all the projected laser dots are shown in Fig. 22(d). From Row 1 to Row 8, the errors can be observed turning from positives to negatives. That indicates static errors in the reconstruction. The static errors are obtained by fitting the height errors into a straight line as shown in Fig. 22(d). In general, static errors might be caused (in real system) by the noises from the image processing, welding machine, the data acquisition process and calibration errors of experiment set-up. Static error also occurs when the laser projection direction does not aim at the center of the weld pool. (This may also occur in simulation). Hence, the calibration is needed such that the point where the tungsten axis intersects with the surface of the work piece is also the point where it interests with the reference incident ray, i.e., the central ray or 10th row 10th column ray, in order to minimize this possible static error.

In this simulation, the experiment condition is considered ideal. The static error shown in Fig. 22(d) is thus comparatively small. Having the height errors subtracted by the corresponding static errors, the resultant absolute errors are shown in Fig. 22(e).

It can be seen in Fig. 22(e) that maximum height error is 3.20×10^{-3} mm at 1st point of Row 6, and the minimum height error is 1.93×10^{-5} mm at 11th point of Row 6. The heights of the bench mark at the corresponding positions are 0.104 mm and 0.468 mm. That is that the height error is 0.3% and 0.004% of the two heights respectively. The height error at the maximum height (8th point of Row 6) is 1.2×10^{-4} mm which is 0.024% of the maximum height (0.5 mm). In comparison with the best result in study [52] which is 0.16%, the proposed algorithm achieves higher reconstruction accuracy in addition to being analytic.

The obtained results are then used to calculate the ARE and MRE (see Eq. 14 and Eq.15) to evaluate the reconstruction accuracy. The resultant ARE and MRE for the reconstruction of the bench mark are 0.06 mm and 0.21 mm, respectively. Compared with the best results in [53] which are 0.08 mm of ARE and 0.22 mm of MRE, the accuracy of the proposed reconstruction algorithm in this study is improved by 25% in ARE and 4.55% in MRE.

5.2. Time cost of the reconstruction algorithm

Since there is no difference for the reconstruction scheme for a bench mark or an actual weld pool in a GTAW experiment, the bench mark reconstruction thus was used to verify the computation time cost for the proposed reconstruction scheme. To this end, the reconstruction process of the bench mark is performed 2000 times in this study to evaluate the time cost for each reconstruction process.

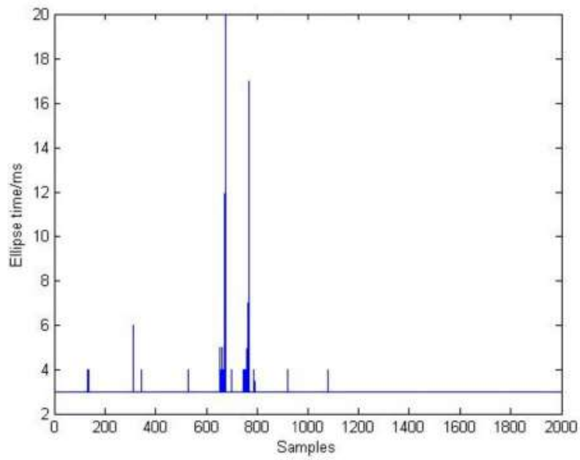


Figure 23. Computation time obtained in the reconstruction for the bench mark in 2000 attempts

The scheme is programmed by C++ in Visual Studio 2008. The computer used is a desktop with Intel i7, 2.8 GHz processor with 4 GB RAM. The computation time is recorded and shown in Fig. 23. The minimum time of one loop is 3 ms, the maximum is 20 ms, and the average of time cost is 3.04 ms. It is believed that an average time cost of 3.04 ms for the reconstruction of 3D weld pool surface is fast enough for the real-time monitoring a GTAW process, and for the future control of GTAW process.

6. Summary

The monitoring and measurement of three-dimensional weld pool surface provides the foundation for a possible advanced control for the welding process. An analytic reconstruction algorithm based on the slope field of the reflected laser pattern is proposed in this chapter to measure the 3D weld pool surface in real-time. The reconstruction is mathematically formulated. The virtual spherical convex surface, considered as similar in shape of a weld pool surface which cannot be precisely measured by any existing methods, were used to test the effectiveness and accuracy of the proposed algorithm. The following are concluded:

- The proposed algorithm can effectively reconstruct the weld pool surface.
- Reconstruction accuracy is improved. The boundary reconstruction error in the simulation of the bench mark is 0.11%; the height reconstruction error at the maximum height is 0.024%. The two reconstruction error parameters ARE (average reconstruction error) and MRE (average reconstruction error) are 0.06 mm and 0.21 mm. Compared with the previous works, the reconstruction accuracy is significantly improved.
- The time cost for the reconstruction algorithm is 3.04 ms on average in the simulation and 3.22 ms on average obtained in the real-time welding experiment. The proposed algorithm is thus considered to be real-time for GTAW application.

Author details

Wei Jie Zhang, Yu Kang Liu and Yu Ming Zhang
Department of Electrical and Computer Engineering Institute for Sustainable Manufacturing, University of Kentucky, Lexington, USA

7. References

[1] R. O'Brien, Ed., Welding Handbook, 8th Edition VOL. 2 - Welding Processes. AWS, 1998.

[2] D. J. Kotecki, D. Cheever, and D. Howden, "Mechanism of ripple formation during weld solidification," Welding Journal, vol. 51(8), pp. 386s- 391s, 1972.

[3] R. Renwick and R. Richardson, "Experimental investigation of gta weld pool oscillations," Welding Journal, vol. 62(2), pp. 29s-35s, 1983.

[4] M. Zacksenhouse and D. Hardt, "Weld pool impedance identification for size measurement and control," ASME Journal of Dynamic Systems, Measurement, and Control, vol. 105(3), pp. 179-184, 1984.

[5] X. Y.H. and G. den Ouden, "Weld pool oscillation during gta welding of mild steel," Welding Journal, vol. 72(8), pp. 428s-434s, 1993.

[6] A. J. R. Anedenroomer and G. den Ouden, "Weld pool oscillation as a tool for penetration sensing during pulsed gta welding," Welding Journal, vol. 77(5), pp. 181-187, 1998.

[7] G. B. R. e. a. Andersen, K; Cook, "Synchronous weld pool oscillation for monitoring and control," IEEE TRANSACTIONS ON INDUSTRY APPLICATIONS, vol. 33(2), pp. 464-471, 1997.

[8] D. D. C. G. Hartman, D.A. and R. Barnett, "Intelligent fusion control throughout varying thermal regions," in Proceedings of the IEEE Industry Applications Conference, 1999.

[9] Y. O. K. Ju, J; Suga, "Penetration control by monitoring molten pool oscillation in tig arc welding," INTERNATIONAL JOURNAL OF OFFSHORE AND POLAR ENGINEERING, vol. 14(2), pp. 145-149, 2002.

[10] B. Yudodibroto, M. Hermans, Y. Hirata, and G. den Ouden G, "Influence of filler wire addition on weld pool oscillation during gas tungsten arc welding," Science and Technology of Welding and Joining, vol. 9(2), pp. 163-168, 2004.

[11] J. B. J. Aussel, B. Le, "Generation acoustic wave by laser: Theoretical and experimental study of the emission source," Ultrasonics, vol. 24, pp. 246-255, 1988.

[12] C. M. F. A. V. Clark, S. R. Schaps, "Well-shielded emat for on-line ultrasonic monitoring of gma welding," in Proceedings of Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers Ultrasonic Symposium, Orlando, FL, 1992.

[13] G. Graham and I. Ume, "Automated system for laser ultrasonic sensing of weld penetration," Mechatronics, vol. 7(8), pp. 711-721, 1997.

[14] S. Hopko and I. Ume, "Laser generated ultrasound by material ablation using fiber optic delivery," Ultrasonics, vol. 37(1), pp. 1-7, 1999.

[15] E. Siores, "Development of a realtime ultrasonic sensing system for automated and robotic welding," Ph.D. dissertation, Brunel University, 1988.

[16] A. Kita, "Measurement of weld penetration depth using non-contract ultrasound method," Ph.D. dissertation, Georgia Institute of Technology, 2005.

[17] B. Mi and C. Ume., "Real time weld penetration depth monitoring with laser ultrasonic sensing system," Transactions of ASME: Journal of Manufacturing Science and Engineering, vol. 128, pp. 280-286, 2006.

[18] W. Chen and B. Chin, "Monitoring joint penetration using infrared sensing techniques," Welding Journal, vol. 69(4), pp. 181s-185s, 1990.

[19] S. Nagarajan, P. Banerjee, W. Chen, and B. Chin, "Control of the welding process using infrared sensors," IEEE Transactions on Robotics and Automation, vol. 8(1), pp. 86-93, 1992.

[20] P. Banerjee and et al., "Infrared sensing for on-line weld shape monitoring and control," ASME Journal of Engineering for Industry, vol. 117, pp. 323-330, 1995.

[21] H. C.Wikle, R. H. Zee, and B. Chin, "Sensing system for weld process control," Journal of Materials Processing Technology, vol. 89-90, pp. 254-259, 1999.

[22] J. Song and D. Hardt, "Closed-loop control of weld pool depth using a thermally based depth estimator," Welding Journal, vol. 72(10), pp. 471s-478s, 1993.

[23] J. Song and D. Hardt, "Dynamic modeling and adaptive control of the gas metal arc welding process," ASME Journal of Dynamic Systems, Measurement, and Control, vol. 116(3), pp. 405-413, 1994.

[24] W. C. S. Nagarajan, B. A. Chin, "Control of the welding process using infrared sensors," IEEE Transactions on Robotics and Automation, vol. 8(1), pp. 86-93, 1992.

[25] C. Balfour, J. Smith, and A. Al-Shamma, "A novel edge feature correlation algorithm for real-time computer vision-based molten weld pool measurements," Welding Journal, vol. 85(1), pp. 1s-8s., 2006.

[26] C. Fan, F. Lv, and S. Chen, “Visual sensing and penetration control in aluminum alloy pulsed gta welding," The International Journal of Advanced Manufacturing Technology, vol. 42(1), pp. 126-137, 2009.
[27] S. C. W. H. B. Ma, “Binocular vision system for both weld pool and root gap in robot welding process," Sensor Review, vol. 30(2), pp. 116-123, 2010.
[28] M. Lin and T. Eagar, “Influence of arc pressure on weld pool geometry," Welding Journal, vol. 64(6), pp. 163-169, 1985.
[29] A. G. S.I. Rokhlin, “A study of arc force, pool depression, and weld penetration during gas tungsten arc welding," Welding Journal, vol. 72(8), pp. 381-390, 1993.
[30] W. Zhang, Y. Liu, and Y. M. Zhang, “Characterization of three-dimensional weld pool surface in gtaw," Welding Journal, vol. 91(7), pp. 195s-203s, 2012.
[31] Y. Tang, X. Su, F. Wu, and Y. Liu, “A novel phase measuring deflectometry for aspheric mirror test," Optic Express, vol. 17(22), pp. 19778-19784, 2009.
[32] W. Zhao, X. Su, Y. Liu, and Q. Zhang, “Testing an aspheric mirror based on phase measuring deflectometry," Optic Engineering, vol. 48(10): 103603, 2009.
[33] L. Huang, C. S. Ng, and A. K. Asundi, “Dynamic three-dimensional sensing for specular surface with monoscopic fringe reflectometry," Optics Express, vol. 19(13), pp. 12 809-12 814, 2011.
[34] S. Zhang and P. S. Huang, “High-resolution, real-time three-dimensional shape measurement," Optic Engineering, vol. 45(12):123601 2006.
[35] S. Zhang, “Recent progresses on real-time 3d shape measurement using digital fringe projection techniques," Optic Lasers Engineering, vol. 48(2), pp. 149-158, 2010.
[36] J. Balzer and S. Werling, “Principles of shape from specular reflection," Measurement, vol. 43(10), pp. 1305-1317, 2010.
[37] G. J. Zhang, Z. H. Yan, and L. Lin, “Reconstructing a three- dimensional p-gmaw weld pool shape from a two-dimensional visual image," Measurement Science and Technology, vol. 17(7), pp. 1877-1882, 2006.
[38] Z. H. Yan, G. J. Zhang, and L. Wu, “Simulation and controlling for weld shape process in p-gmaw based on fuzzy logic," Proceedings of the 2011 IEEE International Conference on Mechatronics and Automation, pp. 2078-2082, 2011.
[39] C. Mnich, F. Al-Bayat, C. Debrunner, and et al., “In situ weld pool measurement using stereovision," Proceedings of 2004 Japan-USA Symposium on Flexible Automation, ASME, pp. 1-2, 2004.
[40] J. Steele, C. Mnich, C. Debrunner, T. Vincent, and S. Liu, “Development of closed-loop control of robotic welding processes," Industrial Robot: An International Journal, vol. 32(4), pp. 35-{355, 2005.
[41] D. Y. Choong and J. Lee., “3-d measurement of weld pool using biprism stereo vision sensor," Http://joining1.kaist.ac.kr/research/vision.htm, Seoul National University, 2004.

[42] C. X. Zhao, I. M. Richardson, S. Kenjeres, C. R. Kleijn, and Z. Saldi, “A stereo vision method for tracking particle ow on the weld pool surface," Journal of Applied Physics, vol. 105(12): 123104, 2009.
[43] Q. Y. Du, S. B. Chen, and T. Lin, “Reconstruction of weld pool surface based on shape from shading," Journal of Mechanical Engineering, vol. 19(2), pp. 168-171,2006.
[44] J. F. Wang, W. Y. Wang, and S. B. Chen, “Extraction of welding pool shape using linear approximation." Transactions of the China Welding Institution, vol. 28(8), pp. 54-56, 2007.
[45] J. Wang, W. Wang, and S. Chen, “Inspection of welding pool height from shading in pulsed gtaw with wire _ller," Industrial Robot: An International Journal, vol. 36 (3), pp. 270-276, 2009.
[46] D. Zhao, J. Q. Yi, S. Chen, L. Wu, and Q. Chen, “Extraction of three-dimensional parameters for weld pool surface in pulsed gtaw with wire filler," Journal of Manufacturing Science and Engineering, vol. 125, pp. 493-503, 2003.
[47] L. P. Li, X. Q. Yang, F. Y. Zhang, and T. Lin, “Research on surface recover of aluminum alloy p-gtaw pool based on sfs," Robotic Welding, Intelligence and Automation, Lecture Notes in Electrical Engineering., vol. 88, pp. 307-314, 2011.
[48] R. Kovacevic and Y. M. Zhang, “Sensing free surface of arc weld pool using specular reflection: principle and analysis," Proceedings of the Institution of Mechanical Engineers, Part B, Journal of Engineering Manufacturing, vol. 210(6), pp. 553-564, 1996.
[49] G. Saeed and Y. M. Zhang, “Mathematical formulation and simulation of specular reection based measurement system for gas tungsten arc weld pool surface," Measurement Science and Technology, vol. 14(8), pp. 1671-1682, 2003.
[50] X. P. Ai, N. S. Liu, Y. Q. Wei, X. Hu, and X. R. L. S. Wei, “Study on image acquisition in 3-d sensor system of arc welding pool surface shape using grating projection," Proceedings of SPIE, vol. 7506-750628, 2009.
[51] Y. Q. Wei, N. S. Liu, X. Hu, and X. Ai, “Phase-correction algorithm of deformed grating images in the depth measurement of weld pool surface in gas tungsten arc welding," Optical Engineering, vol. 50:5, 2011.
[52] G. Saeed, M. J. Lou, and Y. M. Zhang, “Computation of 3d weld pool surface from the slope field and point tracking of laser beams," Measurement Science and Technology, vol. 15(2), pp. 389-403, 2004.
[53] H. S. Song and Y. M. Zhang, “Image processing for measurement of three-dimensional gta weld pool surface," Welding Journal, vol. 86(10), pp. 323s-330s, 2007.
[54] X. J. Ma and Y. M. Zhang., “Gas metal arc weld pool surface imaging: Modeling and processing," Welding Journal, vol. 90(5), pp. 85s-94s, 2011.
[55] S. Mallat, A Wavelet Tour of Signal Processing. Academic Press, 1999.
[56] D. L. Donoho and I. M. Johnstone, “Ideal spatial adaptation by wavelet shrinkage," Biometrika, vol. 81, pp. 425-455, 1994.

[57] I. Daubechies, Ten lectures on Wavelets. Philadelphia: Society for Industrial and applied Mathematics, 1992.
[58] K. Fukunage, Introduction to Statistical Pattern Recognition. New York Academic, 1972.
[59] Y.M. Zhang and L. Li., "Dynamic estimation of full penetration using geometry of adjacent weld pools," Journal of Manufacturing Science and Engineering, vol. 19, pp. 631-644, 1997.
[60] C. B. Barber, D. D P, and etc, "The quick hull algorithm for convex hulls," ACM Transaction of Mathematic Software, vol. 22, pp. 469-483, 1996.

Section 4

General Topics in Welding

Chapter 15

Optimized Stud Arc Welding Process Control Factors by Taguchi Experimental Design Technique

Riyadh Mohammed Ali Hamza

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/48166

1. Introduction

Welding is an ancient craft that combines art, science and human skill. It can be traced back to around 3000 BC, with the Sumerians and the Egyptians. The Sumerians used swords with parts joined by hard soldering. The Egyptians found that, after heating iron, it was much easier to work with welding just by hammering the parts to join them. Several objects that have been found in tombs and excavations, etc., indicate the exploitation of several welding techniques, such as "pressure" (hammering) welding, applied with several metal materials (gold, iron, bronze and copper, etc.) during those ancient times.

In the sixteenth century, the basic welding techniques were well known but not used to any great extent. In 1540, the Italian Engineer Vannoccio Biringuccio (as cited in Smith and Gnudi, 1990) explains in his book "The Pirotechnia", published in Venice, that welding "seems to me an ingenious thing, little used, but of great usefulness". During these middle ages, the art of blacksmithing was further developed and it was possible to produce any items of iron welded by hammering. The welding, as we know it today, was not invented until the nineteenth century.

A number of different processes can be used for joining studs to sheets or structure: resistance, friction and arc welding (stud arc welding or manual metal arc welding). Manual metal Arc Welding is sometimes used, but often only fillet welds are possible, and it is very slow. Stud Arc Welding (SAW) was invented just prior to World War II at the New York Navy Yard and developed for necessity to attach wood planking to naval aircraft carriers, and later it was used in the shipbuilding and construction industries. To undertake a weld, the welder first cleans the workpiece to bright shining metal. A stud is fitted with its ferrule into the chuck. The gun is pressed against the workpiece in the correct position and the trigger squeezed. There are four steps of SAW process. First step the automatic solenoid of gun is energized, withdrawing the stud from the workpiece and starting the current to create an arc. The arc melts the end of the stud and the workpiece. When the preset time is complete, the current cut off. The spring in the gun plunges the stud into the molten pool to complete the weld. Once the weld is done, the welder removes the gun, breaks off the ferrule and inspects the weld. Figure (1) illustrates a stud arc welding process steps (Miller Welds Electrical Mng. Co., 2005).

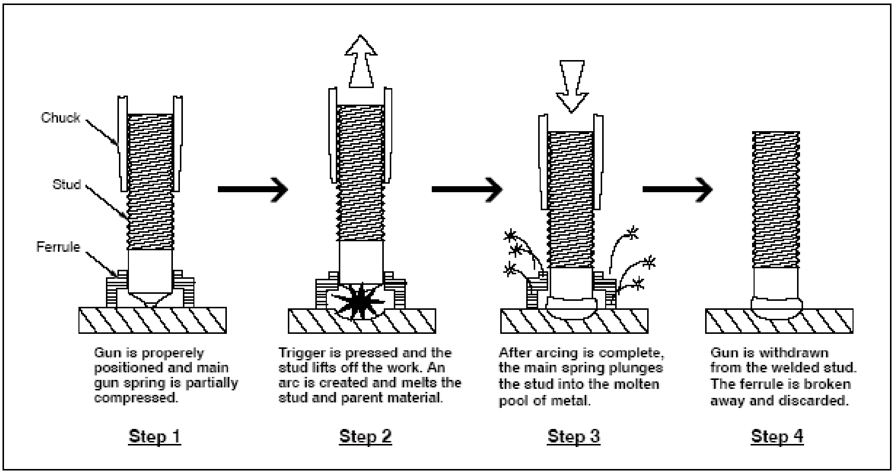


Figure 1. The stud welding process steps (Miller Welds Electrical Mng. Co., 2005).

The stud arc welding process includes the same electrical, mechanical and metallurgical principles as with other arc welding processes (Lee J. S. et al., 2009). The quality of the weld joint in the Drawn Arc Welding (DAW) process with a ceramic ferule depends upon a number of factors such as: the type of the base metal and the stud material, the welding position, the welding time and other factors; however, the proper selection of welding parameters has an important role. The literature survey shows that, due to the short time of the welding cycle, simplicity in the use of equipment, cost efficiency and the application of the stud arc welding process are all well known in various manufacturing fields. Reviewing the previous literature surveys shows that the researchers have been concerned with the search for this process in two directions: the first direction is the examination of the process factors affecting mechanical properties - such as tensile stress weld or strain pieces - influenced by multiple factors, such as welding current, welding time, stud plunge and lift, and other factors - see reference (Klarić et al., 2009). References (Bursi O. S. & Gramola G., 1999) and (Lee et al., 2009) describe the ability of studs to develop full strength welds and discuss the fact that, in some cases, some welds were less than full strength. Reference (Anderson N. S. & Meinheit D. F., 2000) documents the embedment shear and tension tests of deformed bar anchors where no weld failures occurred and summarizes the results of extensive testing and studies from many sources in relation to the performance of the stud welded anchor and other types of anchor devices. Reference (Hsu C. & Mumaw J., 2011) presents the findings of a weldability study of the drawn arc stud welding of various advanced high-strength steels (AHHS), including two grades of boron steel and one grade of dual-phase steel of various thicknesses, coatings from several automakers and benchmarked against mild steel. Researchers like (Strigel R. M., Pincheira J. A. & Oliva M. G., 2000) also consider examining failure in stud welding joints and they show that 19 % of samples examined fail - the weld's fail in the vicinity of the weld area. Eşme (2009) reports on an investigation of the effect and optimization of welding factors on the tensile shear strength in the Resistance Spot Welding (RSW) process. The experimental studies were conducted under varying electrode forces, welding currents, electrode diameters and welding times. The settings of the welding factors were determined by using the Taguchi experimental design method. The confirmation tests indicated that it is possible to increase tensile shear strength significantly by using the Taguchi method. The experimental results confirmed the validity of the Taguchi method for enhancing welding performance and optimizing the welding factors in the RSW process.

A second direction of research studies is the application of automated systems in the control procedure in relation to an interest in the research on the development of technology; the previous research indicates the evolution trend, especially since the procedure can be worked by automation, such as with robots - see (Samardžić I. & Klari Š., 2007), (Hsu et al., 2007) and (Hsu et al. 2008). In addition, the researchers studied the possibility of using neural network systems for optimization process parameters (Riyadh Mohammed Ali Hamza R. M. A., 2011).

In this chapter, an experimental study is conducted under varying welding times, sheet thicknesses, sheet coatings, welding currents, stud designs, stud materials, preheat sheets and surface conditions. The effectiveness of the welding factors levels on the joint and tensile strength is determined via Analysis of Variance (ANOVA). The optimum welding parameter combination is obtained using the analysis of the signal-to-noise (S/N) ratio and the quality loss function. The confirmation tests indicated that it is possible to increase the tensile strength significantly using the Taguchi method, by which 225 samples are tested.

Due to the mentioned importance of proper parameter selection, the main aim of this optimization technique is to ascertain the assumption that the specific selection of welding factors will influence weld tensile strength and that the proper selection of factors will give a weld joint the desired tensile strength.

2. Factors of the stud arc welding process

A process can be defined as a combination of inputs - such as materials, machines, manpower, measurements, environments and methods - that results at various outputs as the measurements of performance (Conti, Kondo & Watson, 2003). The inputs x_1, $x_2 \ldots x_p$ are controllable factors, such as temperature, pressure, feed rates and other process variables. The inputs z_1, $z_2 \ldots z_q$ are uncontrollable (or difficult to control) input factors, such as environmental factors or the properties of a raw materials provided by the supplier, as shown in figure (2). The manufacturing process transforms these inputs into an output that has several quality characteristics (Schmidt & Launsby, 1992).

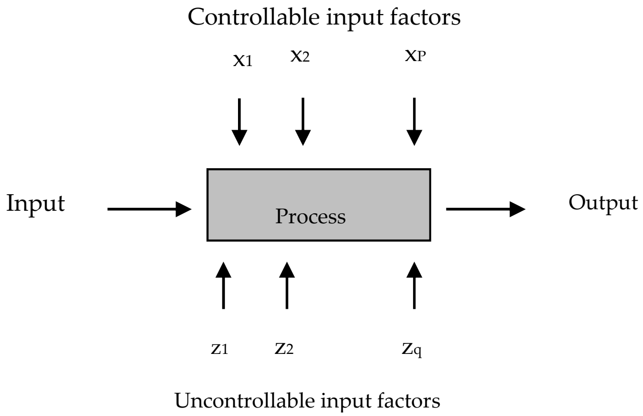


Figure 2. General model of a process (Schmidt & Launsby, 1992).

There are two types of arc-stud welding processes: Capacitor Discharge Welding and Arc Stud Welding.

2.1. Capacitor discharge welding

In this process, the Direct Current (DC) produced by the rapid discharge of stored electrical energy from a bank of capacitors is used to create an arc between a stud and the sheet or structure. Pressure is applied immediately following electrical discharge to form the weld and no flux or ferrule is required. The arc stud processes are quick and access to the other side of the joint is not required (as is necessary for bolted connections). Because of the short welding cycle, the HAZs are narrower than for other arc processes. (Samardžić I., 2007) explains that Capacitor Discharge Stud Welding (CD) can be accomplished by a specially-drawn arc stud welding process - known as the “short cycle” process - whereby stud welding to sheet metal is characterized by the use of a high current and a short time.

The stud is held in a gun. When the trigger is operated, the capacitor is discharged so as to fuse the end of the stud and the base material; then, the stud is plunged into the weld pool. Welds are produced using very high currents (6000A) for very short durations of about 3 to 15 milliseconds. Because of the percussive nature of the process, surface coatings are removed more effectively than with the arc stud process. Less similar combinations can be welded (e.g., brass to steel), than with the arc stud process because of the short duration. The process is also suitable for welding studs to thin sheets without damaging the surface coating on the opposite side.

The capacitor discharge method is limited to studs of 8 mm and less for economic reasons. It is less tolerant to rust and scale. Because of these limitations, this process is used less than with the arc stud welding process for heavy fabrication. The most common application of capacitor discharge welding is to join the thermocouple to the steel structure for monitoring preheat and post-weld heat treatment. The scar that remains after the removal of the thermocouples is insignificant (Taylor, 2001).

2.2. The arc stud welding process

During this process, an arc is established between the stud and the workpiece using a conventional welding power source. After a brief time, the stud is plugged into the weld pool and the current is shut off. The process is quick and there is little time for detrimental phases to form. The main limitation is that it is intolerant to contamination and the surface to be welded should be free of rust, scale, paint and other contaminants.

The welding factors (the current and arc time) depend upon the material type and the size of the stud base. The current used is between 250 and 600 Amperes and the cycle time is 0.13 seconds to 1 second for studs of a diameter of 3 mm to 22 mm. An average of around six studs can be welded per minute.

2.3. The required process equipment

The most basic equipment is a stud gun connected to a control unit that is connected to a source of DC power. Some modern stud welding equipment includes the controller and the power source as one unit, but it is possible to obtain a controller and a gun utilizing an existing DC welding power source. Figure (3) illustrates that the process equipment consists of a stud gun, a control unit for timing the weld, a DC power source and a suitable weld cable.

The stud gun consists of the following components (Taylor, 2001):

- A spring-load chuck for holding the stud.
- An adjustable spacer for holding the stud gun against the workpiece.
- A solenoid coil to lift the stud away from the workpiece by a preset distance of approximately 3 mm.
- A trigger for initiating the welding cycles.

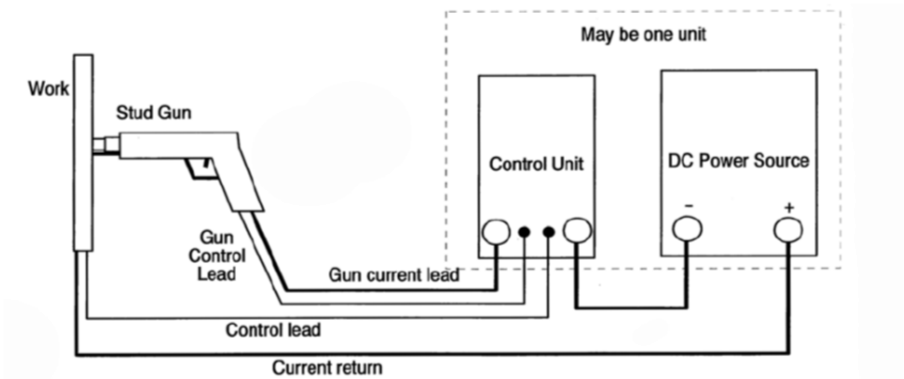


Figure 3. Arc Stud Welding Equipment (Taylor, 2001).

Most welding is undertaken using a hand-held gun. An automatic stud gun - which is fixed to robot arm or another fixture - can be used to automate the process. The controller has a solenoid switch to turn the current on and off rapidly as well as timers to control the automatic welding cycle and the adjustment of the current and the cycle time.

2.3.1. Studs and ferrules

Studs can have circular, square or rectangular bases. If the base is rectangular, the width should not be more than five times the thickness. It must have a shape that is capable of being held in the chuck; otherwise, the form of the stud is limitless. The most common stud types are screw fasteners and shear studs, but hooks, rings, rings, brackets and many other items can be made. Studs are available in a variety of materials. Carbon steel studs are semi-killed or fully-killed carbon steel of grads 1010 to 1020 in the cold drawn condition (Taylor, 2001).

The studs for must materials have a flux tip. They have to be supplied by a reputable stud-welding supplier, who is required by code to perform qualification tests. Those from other than reputable suppliers risk not producing satisfactory welds. Studs and ferrules should be from the same supplier.

Each stud is supplied with a matching ceramic ferrule so as to:

- Protect the arc by restricting air flow.
- Concentrate the arc heat to the weld area.
- Mould the weld flash.
- Prevent the charring of adjacent materials.

The ferrule is broken off when the weld is complete.

2.4. Application of the stud arc welding process

The stud arc welding process is applied in different production areas, such as boiler production, the motor vehicle industry, bridge construction and shipbuilding, due to the efficiency of the process.

The application of draw arc welding with a ceramic ferrule plays an important role in steam boiler production. This process is successfully used in ship building and the automobile industry, etc. The stud welding process is used for fixing in place the cryogenic insulation of membrane tanks in ship building (Lee et al., 2009). In addition, stud welding is widely used in the construction industries and in bridge construction in particular (composite steel/concrete structures). There are many different stud welded products that are commonly used in the manufacture of precast/pre-stress components, including threaded, headed and deformed bars (Bursi & Gramola, 1999).

2.5. Stud welding failures

The stud butt fully welds with the base material such that there is no unfused central area that is a feature of fillet welded attachments. Because the weld is a full penetration, the small amount of flash interference is much less with an attachment than with a fillet weld would. For the full strength of the stud, the base metal thickness should be at least 1/3 of the stud base diameter. Studs can be closer to a flange edge than with threaded connections. The basis for loading is the smallest cross section of the stud (Taylor, 2001).

When the proper operation of stud welding equipment is combined with good quality control and inspection procedures, full strength welds can be obtained consistently and can result in the optimal performance of the studs. However, improper stud welding process factors cause stud failures. The root causes for weld or stud failures can usually be attributed to one or more of the following factors (Chambers, 2001):

- Unacceptable base plate materials or plate surface conditions.
- Inappropriate weld settings.
- Malfunctioning or obsolete equipment.
- Little or no formal training for stud welding operators.
- A lack of quality control and inspection procedures.

3. The Taguchi experimental design methodology

Experimental design is a subject with a set of techniques and body of knowledge which assists investigators in conducting experiments by better analysing the results of experiments and finding the optimal factor combinations to achieve the intended objectives – see (Montgomery D.C., 2009) and (Antony J. & Kaye M., 1999). Stud arc welding technology has generally continued to grow vigorously because of new applications. Tensile strength quality is one of the key factors in achieving good welding process performance and so the purpose of this study is to improve the tensile strength of stud joints by using the Taguchi Experimental Design Technique. In the following sections, some of the most important concepts in the design of the experimental technique will be explained.

3.1. Measure of variation (measure of dispersion)

This describes how the data is spread out or scattered on each side of the central value (mean). The elements involved in the measurement of variation are explained in two sections below.

3.1.1. The range of data

For a series of numbers, the range is the difference between the largest and the smallest values of observation. The range equation is:

$$r = x_h - x_l \tag{1}$$

Where

- r= range
- x_h= highest observation in a data

- x_l= lowest observation in a data

3.1.2. Standard deviation

Which of a set of (n) numbers $x_1, x_2, \ldots, x_n$ denoted by (S) and defined by:

$$S = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{N}\left(x_i - \overline{x}\right)^2}{N-1}} \tag{2}$$

where (S) is the root mean square of the deviations of each number x_i from the mean $\overline{x}$.

3.2. Target value

In the data analysis, the target value - or an objective value - is a parametric quantity identified as the standard against which all measurements or calculations of the same response are to be evaluated. The target value is represented by T (Buyske S. & Trout R., 2003).

3.3. Sum of Squares (SS)

The sum of squares (SS) of a factor *i* at level *k* was calculated according to the equation (Buyske S. & Trout R., 2003):

$$SS_i = \sum_{K}^{L} \frac{\left(\sum_{J}^{N} Y_j\right)^2}{N_K} - \frac{\left(\sum_{J}^{N} Y_J\right)^2}{N} \tag{3}$$

where N is the total number of experiments, N_k is the number of levels and Y_j is the mean response. The total sum of squares (SS_T) is calculated using equation:

$$SS_T = \sum_{J}^{N} Y_J^2 - \frac{\left(\sum_{J}^{N} Y_J\right)^2}{N} \tag{4}$$

Experimental error (S_e) is calculated from:

$$S_e = SS_T - \sum SS_i \tag{5}$$

3.4. Degree of freedom

The degree of freedom, as an integer associated with a statistic, is the number of available independent squares of the associated statistic. If the independent sum of the squares is *n*, then the number of degrees of freedom denoted by *f* is equal to *n-1*.

3.5. Variance

The variance is defined as the sum of the squares of the deviations of the observation data from a specific value, divided by the degrees of freedom f. The variance - sometimes called the mean square - is denoted by V (Steiner S. H. & MacKay R. J., 2005).

$$V_i = {SS_i}/{f_i} \tag{6}$$

3.5.1. Analysis of variance

The relative magnitude of the effect of different factors can be obtained by the decomposition of the variance, namely ANOVA - this is given in table (1). The experimental design permits the effects of numerous factors to be investigated at the same time. When many different factors dynamically affect a given quality characteristic, ANOVA is a systematic and meaningful way of statistically evaluating experimental results (Montgomery D. C., 2009).

Sources of variation	Degrees of freedom *F*	Sum of squares SS	Mean square V	Pure sum of squares Ś	F-ratio	Percent contribution (%)
Factor(a)	1	s_a	v_a	$ś_a$	F_a	á
Error(e)	n-1	s_e	V_e	$ś_e$	1	é
Total(t)	N	s_t		$ś_t$		100.0

Table 1. ANOVA table

Where:

1. Variance ratio

$$F_a = {v_a}/{v_e} \tag{7}$$

2. Sum of squares

$$s'_a = s_a - \left(f_a \times v_e\right) \tag{8}$$

$$s'_e = s_e + \left(f_a \times v_e\right) \tag{9}$$

3. %age contribution:

$$a' = \left(\frac{s'_a}{s_t}\right) \times 100 \tag{10}$$

$$e' = \left(\frac{s'_e}{s_t}\right) \times 100 \tag{11}$$

After n pieces of experimental data are collected and after the values of á and é are calculated, significant testing provides the criterion for making such decisions. The F-tests are used to statistically determine whether the constituents - the total sum of squares which are decomposed - are significant with respect to the components that remain in the error variance. The specific numerical confidence levels, depending upon which F-table is used, are called the level of significance. When the variance ratios Fa are larger than the F-table at the 5% level, then the effect is called significant at the 5% level (Montgomery D.C., 2009).

3.6. The Larger-the-better Signal to Noise (S/N) ratio

A signal-to-noise (S/N) ratio is a measure of performance which estimates the effect of the noise factors on the quality characteristic (Taguchi G., Chowdhury S., & Wu Y., 2005; Ross, P. J., 1986). The S/N is defined as:

$$S/N_{LTB} = -10\log\left(\frac{\sum \frac{1}{y_i^2}}{n}\right) \tag{12}$$

where y= response, n= run experiment number.

3.7. The Taguchi Losses Function

The Taguchi quality losses' function for the larger-the-better is (Taguchi G., Chowdhury S. & Wu Y., 2005; Ross, P. J., 1986):

$$L(y) = A_o \Delta_o^2 \frac{1}{y^2} \tag{13}$$

A_o is the loss (stated in monetary or scaled monetary units) at a specified distance, Δ_o, from the target, T, and y is the performance measure.

3.8. The Orthogonal Array (OA)

Orthogonal Arrays (OA) are a special set of Latin squares, constructed by Taguchi in order to lay out the product design experiments. For each OA, a code is available in the form of $L_a b^c$, where (a) is the number of experiments, (b) is the number of levels for each factor and (c) is the number of columns in the array (Taguchi G., Chowdhury S. & Wu Y., 2005; Ross P. J., 1986).

4. Experimental work

The Taguchi experimental design is a statistical technique that allows the running of the minimum number of experiments to optimize the process.

4.1. (The DABOTEK stud welding) machine

The experimental work was executed using the DABOTEK stud welding device. The welding current can be set at five grades, such as (350, 540, 750, 900 and 1250 Amperes). The welding time can be set at grades of 0.05 seconds (from 0.05 seconds to 1 second). The machine that was used in the experiments is shown in figure (4).

Figure 4. The DABOTEK stud welding machine

4.2. The identification of process factors

Problem identification is critical for any industrial experiment, since the experimental and analysis stages are based on this. One of the most frequently used methods for identifying the problem is brainstorming. Brainstorming is an activity that promotes team participation, encourages creative thinking and generates various ideas over a short period of time. For an investigation into the possible causes of undesirable variability in the stud welding process, the researcher modified a cause and effect diagram that lists several suspected causes of this variability. Figure (5) illustrates the cause and effect of the problem under study. The researcher used brainstorming in conjunction with Cause and Effect Analysis (CEA) to identify the control factors which are to be considered for the experiment.

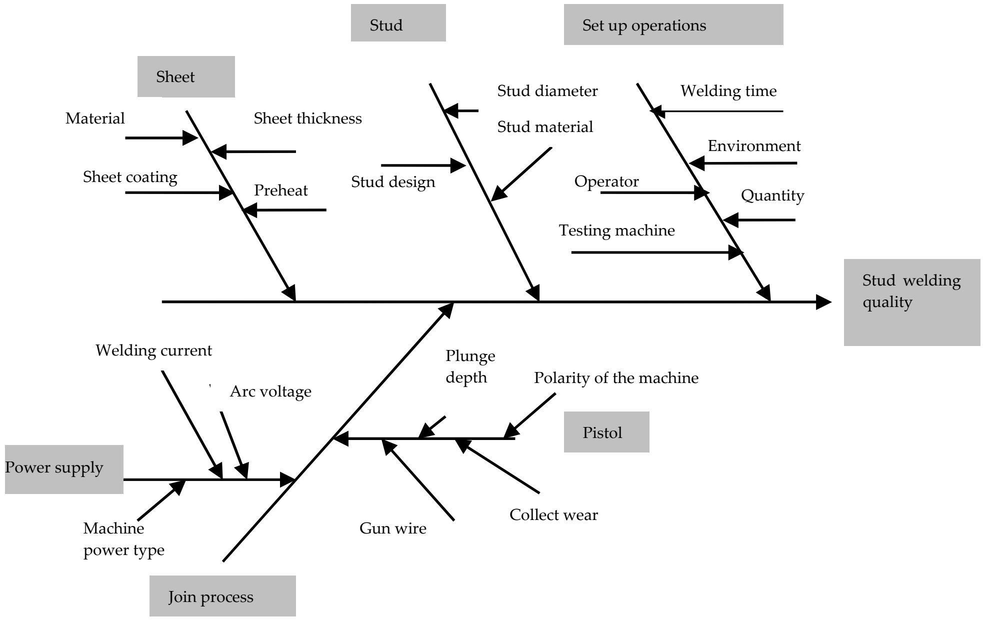


Figure 5. The suggested stud welding cause and effect diagram

Figure (5) shows that many factors play an important role in the stud welding process; they are separated into five main groups:

1. The sheet group

The factors that can be distinguished for these groups are:

- Sheet material.
- Sheet thickness.
- Sheet coating.
- Sheet preheating.

2. The stud group

The factors that can be distinguished for this group are:

- Stud design.
- Stud material.
- Stud diameters.

3. The welding machine group

The factors that can be distinguished for this group are:

- The power supply properties (voltage, current, machine power type (Continuous Electric Arc or Direct Capacitor Arc)).

- The pistol properties (gun wear (new or used), the polarity of machine and the gun wire length).

4. The setup welding operations group

The factors that can be distinguished for this group are:

- The welding time adjustment.
- The quantity of the studs to be welded.
- The operator performance.
- The environment.

5. The arc machine pistol group

The factors that can be distinguished for this group are:

- The polarity of the machine.
- The plunge depth.
- The gun wire.
- The collect wear.

To implement the experimental welds samples, eight independent control factors were chosen to improve the stud welding process. These factors are: welding time, sheet thickness, sheet material, welding current, stud design, stud material, preheat sheet and surface cleaning.

4.3. Selection of the factor levels and the range of factor settings

The selection of a number of levels depends upon how the outcome (tensile strength) is affected due to the different level settings. The levels for control factors are shown in table (2).

				Sheet material (C)															
				K52355								K14358							
Thickness mm (B)	symbol	Process factor	unit	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Level 7	Level 8	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Level 7	Level 8
1.6	(A)	Welding time	(second)	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.5	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.5
	(D)	Welding current	Ampere	350	540							350	540						

				Sheet material (C)															
				K52355								K14358							
Thickness mm	symbol	Process factor	unit	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Level 7	Level 8	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3	Level 4	Level 5	Level 6	Level 7	Level 8
	(E)	Stud design	None	Small stud	Flange stud							Small stud	Flange stud						
	(F)	Stud material	None	54NiCrMoS 6	40CrMnMo S8-6							54NiCrMoS 6	40CrMnMo S8-6						
	(G)	Preheating	None	Preheating	No preheating							Preheating	No preheating						
	(H)	Surface cleaning	None	Oil sheet	Clean sheet							Oil sheet	Clean sheet						
3.175	(A)	Welding time	(second)	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.5	0.15	0.2	0.25	0.3	0.35	0.4	0.45	0.5
	(D)	Welding current	Ampere	350	540							350	540						
	(E)	Stud design	None	Small stud	Flange stud							Small stud	Flange stud						
	(F)	Stud material	None	54NiCrMoS6	40CrMnMoS8-6							54NiCrMoS6	40CrMnMoS8-6						
	(G)	Preheating	None	Preheating	No preheating							Preheating	No preheating						
	(H)	Surface cleaning	None	Oil sheet	Clean sheet							Oil sheet	Clean sheet						

Table 2. The Levels of the welding time control factors for the experiments.

4.4. Method of measurement

The researcher took a sample containing ten pieces for stud welding depending upon the value for the welding time and the current in order to define the variety of the tensile strength of the samples. The results are in table (3). The dot plot for the data is shown in figure (6). The mean is 330.53 N/mm², the standard division is 57.560 N/mm² and the range is 189.90 N/mm².

Piece Number	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Tensile Strength (N/mm²)	310.5	377.8	352.1	243.1	350.3	342.4	253.8	354.6	432.4	289.7

Table 3. The tensile strength of the samples before the experiments

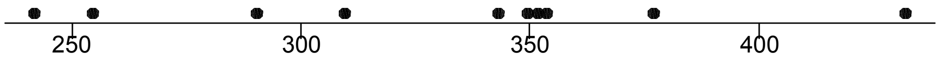


Figure 6. The dotplot for the observed data.

4.5. The Orthogonal Array (OA) design

The number of degrees of freedom required for the experiment must be greater than 14 (7+7). A Taguchi $L_{16}2^{7}1^{8}$ orthogonal array (OA) design, with seven in two levels and one in eight levels is shown by table (4) for the code design matrix.

Run	Welding time	Sheet thickness	Sheet material	Welding current	Stud design	Stud material	Preheat	Surface cleaning
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	2	1	1	1	1	2	2	2
4	2	2	2	2	2	1	1	1
5	3	1	1	2	2	1	1	2
6	3	2	2	1	1	2	2	1
7	4	1	1	2	2	2	2	1
8	4	2	2	1	1	1	1	2
9	5	1	2	1	2	1	2	1
10	5	2	1	2	1	2	1	2
11	6	1	2	1	2	2	1	2
12	6	2	1	2	1	1	2	1
13	7	1	2	2	1	1	2	2
14	7	2	1	1	2	2	1	1
15	8	1	2	2	1	2	1	1
16	8	2	1	1	2	1	2	2

Table 4. Code design matrix orthogonal array $L_{16}2^{7}1^{8}$.

4.6. Experimental preparation and the process run

In this step, the main task was to construct the uncoded design matrix for the experiment. The uncoded design matrix is shown by table (5).

Run	Welding time	Sheet thickness	Sheet material	Welding current	Stud design	Stud material	Preheat	Surface cleaning
1	0.15	1.6	K14358	350	Small	54NiCrMoS6	Preheat	Clean sheet
2	0.15	3.175	K52355	540	Large	40CrMnMoS8-6	No Preheat	Oil sheet
3	0.2	1.6	K14358	350	Small	40CrMnMoS8-6	No Preheat	Oil sheet
4	0.2	3.175	K52355	540	Large	54NiCrMoS6	Preheat	Clean sheet
5	0.25	1.6	K14358	540	Large	54NiCrMoS6	Preheat	Oil sheet
6	0.25	3.175	K52355	350	Small	40CrMnMoS8-6	No Preheat	Clean sheet
7	0.3	1.6	K14358	540	Large	40CrMnMoS8-6	No Preheat	Clean sheet
8	0.3	3.175	K52355	350	Small	54NiCrMoS6	Preheat	Oil sheet
9	0.35	1.6	K52355	350	Large	54NiCrMoS6	No Preheat	Clean sheet
10	0.35	3.175	K14358	540	Small	40CrMnMoS8-6	Preheat	Oil sheet
11	0.4	1.6	K52355	350	Large	40CrMnMoS8-6	Preheat	Oil sheet
12	0.4	3.175	K14358	540	Small	54NiCrMoS6	No Preheat	Clean sheet
13	0.45	1.6	K52355	540	Small	54NiCrMoS6	No Preheat	Oil sheet
14	0.45	3.175	K14358	350	Large	40CrMnMoS8-6	Preheat	Clean sheet
15	0.5	1.6	K52355	540	Small	40CrMnMoS8-6	Preheat	Clean sheet
16	0.5	3.175	K14358	350	Large	54NiCrMoS6	No Preheat	Oil sheet

Table 5. Uncoded design matrix array $L_{16}2^{7}1^{8}$

Run	Actual run order	Tensile strength (N/mm²)						Mean N/mm²	Standard deviation N/mm²
1	5	175.73	213.23	143.66	195.09	210.50	155.60	182.302	28.860
2	9	288.70	251.20	330.40	284.99	225.90	300.70	280.315	36.946
3	13	284.39	198.56	225.89	245.87	276.24	263.54	249.082	32.539
4	3	359.99	420.50	428.42	300.03	387.38	367.54	377.310	46.790
5	12	190.70	245.87	235.90	298.46	164.33	289.46	237.453	52.977
6	11	370.45	392.68	191.74	360.38	288.70	383.26	331.202	77.637
7	8	321.60	139.00	349.05	310.00	362.93	457.50	323.375	104.318
8	1	331.96	326.32	331.15	401.60	387.26	314.78	348.828	36.095
9	4	388.10	233.60	372.20	287.95	225.43	278.00	297.547	68.611
10	2	530.00	460.72	549.85	375.12	410.53	375.89	450.352	76.343
11	15	305.40	383.20	456.00	378.00	478.00	375.00	395.933	62.388
12	7	152.09	160.74	170.76	166.80	250.88	132.45	172.287	40.835
13	16	219.19	152.97	250.85	257.16	266.78	198.75	224.283	43.258
14	10	155.65	180.45	289.40	220.68	225.35	248.78	220.052	47.705
15	14	289.36	215.62	318.43	256.84	288.23	145.63	252.352	62.900
16	6	185.32	178.45	223.21	155.82	298.33	188.43	204.927	50.651

Table 6. Tensile strength of the samples.

5. Results, analysis and discussions

The results of the experiments conducted depend upon the $L_{16}2^{7}1^{8}$ OA with randomized order, as shown in table (6).

5.1. Determination of the optimum condition for the process

One objective is to reduce the variability in the tensile strength and to bring the mean as close as possible to the target. The target is 728.48 N/mm^2, which is the tensile strength of the stud. The optimization procedure by Taguchi for the study is:

Stage (1): Calculate the SNR for each experimental design point. The SNR for the larger-the-best quality characteristic is calculated by equation (12). Substitute the values into the above equation. The SNR values for the experimental trials are shown in table (7).

Trial no.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
S/N (dB)	44.9	48.7	47.7	51.3	46.9	49.4	48.1	50.7	48.9	52.7	51.6	44.2	46.5	46.3	47.0	45.7

Table 7. The SNR values for the experimental trials.

After obtaining the SNR values, the next step was to obtain the average response values of a SNR at low and high levels of each factor and, hence, the effect of each factor on the SNR. The results are shown in tables (8) and (9).

Factor A	Average SNR at level 1	Average SNR at level 2	Average SNR at level 3	Average SNR at level 4	Average SNR at level 5	Average SNR at level 6	Average SNR at level 7	Average SNR at level 8	Effect of the factor	rank
Factor Effect dB	46.83	49.53	48.19	49.43	50.84	47.96	46.41	46.38	4.52	1

Table 8. Average SNR table for factor A.

Factors	Average SNR at level 1 dB	Average SNR at level 2 dB	Effect of the factor dB	Rank
B	47.73	48.69	0.96	6
C	47.10	49.31	2.21	2
D	48.18	48.23	0.05	8
E	48.23	48.46	0.23	7
F	47.41	49.00	1.69	3
G	48.98	47.43	-1.65	4
H	47.55	48.86	1.31	5

Table 9. Average SNR table for factors (B, C, D, E, F, G and H).

Tables (8) and (9) show that factors A and C have a dominant effect on the SNR, followed by factors F, G, H, B, E and D. The main effects plot for the SNR is shown in figure (7).

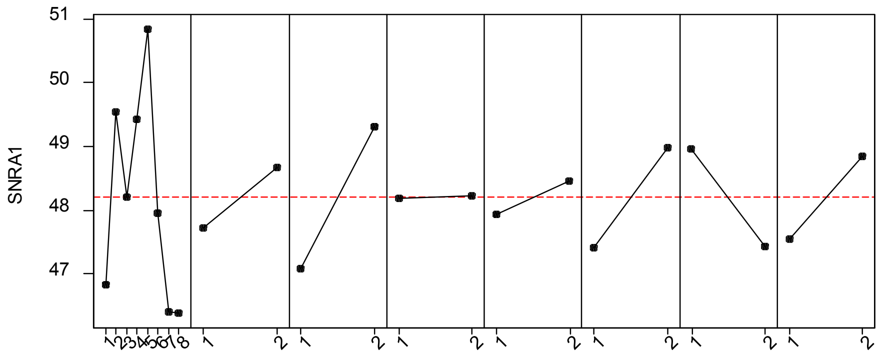


Figure 7. The main effects plot for the S/N ratio.

The calculations of ANOVA for the factors using the Minitab software package are shown in table (10):

Source of variation	Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	F-ratio
A	37.384	7	5.341	0.88
B	3.529	1	3.529	0.58
C	19.769	1	19.769	3.26
D	0.004	1	0.004	0.00
E	1.129	1	1.129	0.19
F	9.899	1	9.899	1.63
G	9.402	1	9.402	1.55
H	6.679	1	6.679	1.10
error	6.070	1	6.070	1
Total	93.865	15	6.257	

Table 10. ANOVA for the SNR

The second column in Table (10) was calculated using equations 3, 4 and 5, the fourth column with equation 6 and the fifth column from equation 7. The ANOVA table has shown that the most dominant factor effects are D (welding current), E (stud design) and A (welding time). The optimal condition settings of the factors, which will maximize the SNR (i.e., the best control factor settings) based on the SNR are A_5, B_2, C_2, D_2, E_2, F_2, G_1 and H_2.

Trial no.	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
S N/mm²	28.8	36.9	33.1	46.7	52.9	77.6	104.3	36.1	68.6	76.3	62.3	40.8	43.2	47.7	62.9	50

Table 11. The standard deviation values for the experimental trials.

The following step studies the effect of the factors on the standard deviation (S) of the process. The standard deviation for each experimental design trial is shown in table (11). The average response effect values of factor A on the standard deviation is shown in table (12). The low and high levels of the other factors are shown in table (13).

Factor A	Average St. at level 1	Average St. at level 2	Average St. at level 3	Average St. at level 4	Average St. at level 5	Average St. at level 6	Average St. at level 7	Average St. at level 8	Effect of the factor	Rank
Factor Effect N/mm^2	32.9	39.6	65.3	70.2	72.4	51.6	45.4	56.7	39.5	1

Table 12. The average standard deviation for factor A.

Factors	Average St at level 1 N/mm^2	Average St at level 2 N/mm^2	Effect of the factor N/mm^2	rank
B	56.98	51.62	-5.36	6
C	54.27	54.32	0.05	8
D	50.56	58.04	7.48	5
E	49.80	58.79	8.99	4
F	46.01	63.1759	16.58	2
G	51.75	56.84	5.09	7
H	59.70	48.9	-10.8	3

Table 13. The average standard deviation for the factors (B, C, D, E, F, G and H).

Tables (12) and (13) show that factors A and F have a dominant effect on the St, followed by factors H, E, D, B and C. The main effects plot for the St is shown in figure (8).

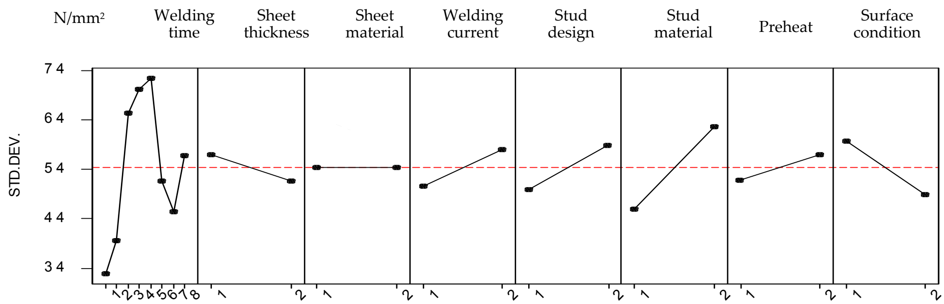


Figure 8. The main effects plot for the standard deviation.

In order to obtain the statistical significance of the effects, the ANOVA table for the standard deviation was performed, as shown in table (14).

Source of variation	Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	F-ratio
A	2935.4	7	419.34	0.538
B	114.7	1	114.7	0.147
C	0.0	1	0.0	0.00
D	224.1	1	224.1	0.287
E	323.3	1	323.3	0.415
F	1100.6	1	1100.6	1.413
G	103.7	1	103.7	0.133
H	467.2	1	467.2	0.599

Source of variation	Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	F-ratio
error	778.9	1	778.9	1
Total	6047.9	15	403.193	

Table 14. ANOVA for the standard deviation.

It can be seen from table (13) that C (sheet material) has a large affect on the tensile strength's standard deviation, while F (Stud material) has less of an effect. The next step was to determine the optimal settings for these factors that will minimize the standard deviation. The optimum conditions (i.e., the best control factor settings) based on the standard deviation are A_1, B_2, C_2, D_1, E_1, F_2, G_2 and H_2. Comparing this result with the result of the SNR setting, it was found that for factors B, C, F and H it was the same. Meanwhile, for factor A it was found that there was a big difference in the values between the two choices and that A_6 gets a balance between the two criteria. For factor D, the effect of this factor on the SNR was very small though it had more of an effect on the standard deviation - as such, the choice for the factor level is D_1. The same holds for factor E and so the choice for this factor level is E_1. For factor G, the effect of this factor on the SNR is less than on the standard deviation - thus, the level of this factor is G_2. After analysing SNR, the standard deviation tables for the best settings for the factor levels were:

$$A_6, B_2, C_2, D_1, E_1, F_2, G_2 \text{ and } H_2$$

Stage (2): Performing the SNR analysis and the standard deviation analysis, the next step was to identify the factor effects that have a significant impact on the mean response. The average response values at each level of factor A and the effects are present in table (15) while the average response values at low and high levels for the other factors and their effects are present in table (16).

Factor A	Average mean at level 1	Average mean at level 2	Average mean at level 3	Average mean at level 4	Average mean at level 5	Average mean at level 6	Average mean at level 7	Average mean at level 8	Effect of the factor	Rank
Factor Effect N/mm^2	231.3	313.1	284.3	336.1	382.3	284.1	222.1	228.6	160.6	1

Table 15. The average response of the welding time control factor.

Factors	**Mean response at level 1** N/mm^2	**Mean response at level 2** N/mm^2	**Effect** N/mm^2	**Rank**
B	270.29	298.16	29.96	6
C	257.07	313.47	56.4	3
D	278.73	291.81	13.08	8
E	278.43	292.11	13.68	7
F	255.61	314.93	59.32	2
G	310.17	260.37	-49.8	4
H	269.55	300.99	31.44	5

Table 16. The average response values at each level of the factors (B, C, D, E, F, G and H) and their effects are shown in figure (7).

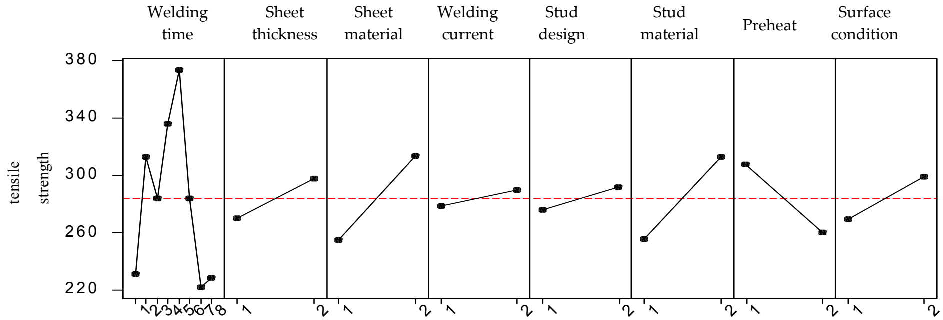


Figure 9. Main effects plot for the mean response.

Figure 7 shows that factors A, C, E and F have a significant impact on the mean response (i.e., the mean tensile strength).

Source of variation	Sum of Squares	Df	Mean Square	F-ratio	% contribution (ϱ)
A	42644	7	6092	42.35	40.11
B	3107	1	3107	21.6	2.92
C	13686	1	13686	95.14	12.87
D	482	1	482	3.35	0.51
E	9099	1	9099	63.25	8.55
F	13095	1	13095	91.04	12.31
G	9099	1	9099	63.25	8.55
H	3444	1	3444	23.94	3.23
error	11651	81	143.84	1	10.95
total	106307	95	1119.02	-	100

Table 17. ANOVA for the response.

It can be seen from table (17) that factor A (welding time) has a large affect on the mean of the stud welding tensile strength (40.11% fraction of importance) - see equations 10 and 11. The factors C (sheet material) and F (stud material) have just (12.87%) and (12.31%) respectively. The added factors B, D, E, G and H can be pooled. A new table without these factors was constructed as table (19). The sum of the squares of the pooled factors was added to the error term. The new mean square of the error term was calculated using equation:

$$V_e = \frac{\sum_i s_i^p + S_e}{\sum_i f_i^p + f_e} \tag{14}$$

where the superscript p indicates the pooled factors.

Since the degree of freedom of factor A is 7 and that of the error term is 86, from F-table at a level of significance of (95% confidence) we obtain $F_{7,86} = 2.11$.

Source of variation	Sum of Squares	df	Mean Square	Variance ratio (F-ratio)	% contribution (ϱ)
A	42644	7	6092	14.2	40.36
C	13686	1	13686	31.91	13.5
F	13095	1	13095	30.53	12.89
error	28779	86	428.86	1	33.25
total	98204	95	1033.72		100

Table 18. The pooled ANOVA for the response.

Because the computed values of the variance ratio in table (18) are bigger than the value from the F–table, there is a 95% degree of confidence that this factor (welding time) has an effect on the stud welding process. For factors C and F, the degree of freedom is 1; as such, $F_{1,\,86}$= 3.97, since the computed F-ratio is 31.91 and 30.53 respectively is higher than that from F-table, then these two factors also have an effect on the stud welding process. After identifying the significant factor effects, the next step was to determine the optimal settings for these factors that will bring the mean response as close as possible to the target. The optimum condition (i.e., the best control factor settings) based on the mean response figure was:

$$A_5, B_2, C_2, D_2, E_2, F_2, G_1 \text{ and } H_2$$

Here, factors B, C, F and H are the same as with the last setting. Meanwhile, for factor A there is significant difference when we choose A_5 or A_6, and when we choose A_5 (the welding time is 0.35 seconds) the tensile strength will be 382.341N/mm^2 and the standard deviation will be 72.47 N/mm^2. Furthermore, when choosing A_6 (the welding time is 0.4 seconds) the tensile strength will be 284.110 N/mm^2 and the standard deviation will be 51.61N/mm^2. Because the welding time is a continuous value, the researcher's choice of the new level for this factor will be intermediate between 0.35 and 0.4 seconds, namely $\hat{\mathrm{A}}_6$=0.38 second. For factor D, the effect for the standard deviation of this factor is more and opposite to that for the mean. As such, the level for this factor is D1. The same applies for factor E_1. For factor G, the effect of this factor on the mean is more and opposite that for the standard deviation. Thus, the level of this factor is G_1. The factor levels are:

$$\hat{A}_6, B_2, C_2, D_1, E_1, F_2, G_1 \text{ and } H_2$$

In order to arrive at the optimal factor settings, the factor setting is the one which yields the minimum quality loss. The Taguchi quality losses function for the larger-the-better is shown in equation (13). The summarized calculation is shown in table (19).

Run	**1**	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
$(y^{\wedge})^2$	**299094.4**	202216.8	230924.9	125509.6	243914.1	163858.9	174992.3	145438.5	190410.7	83183.4	160655.2	290938.1	256371.3	260776.3	230653.3	276680.6
L(y)/K (money unit/piece)	**3.3* 10^{-6}**	4.9* 10^{-6}	4.33* 10^{-6}	7.97 *10^{-6}	4.1* 10^{-6}	6.1* 10^{-6}	5.71* 10^{-6}	6.89* 10^{-6}	5.25* 10^{-6}	1.2* 10^{-5}	6.22* 10^{-6}	3.43* 10^{-6}	3.9* 10^{-6}	3.83* 10^{-6}	4.33* 10^{-6}	3.61* 10^{-6}

Table 19. The loss function calculation.

From table (19), run (1) (represented in bold) yields the minimum loss. The optimal factor settings based on the loss-function analysis was, therefore, obtained as:

$$A_1, F_1, C_1, G_1 \text{ and } H_1$$

For factor A, level 1 will yield a very low tensile strength (182.302N/mm^2), so this level is not take. For the three factors F, C and G, the level is the same. For factor H in level 1, the tensile strength is (269.55N/mm^2), while in level 2 it is (300.99N/mm^2). The reduction is also high, so the final optimum stetting is:

$$\hat{\vec{A}}_6, B_2, C_2, D_1, E_1, F_2, G_1 \text{ and } H_2.$$

These factors are summarized in table (20).

factor	$\hat{\vec{A}}_6$: welding time	B_2 :sheet thickness	C_2 :sheet material	D_1: welding current	E_1: stud design	F_2: stud material	G_1	H_2: Surface cleaning
level	0.38 second	3.175 mm	non-galvanized (K14358 steel)	350 Ampere	Small stud	40CrMnMoS8-6 steel	Preheating	Clean sheet

Table 20. The optimum stud welding condition based on Taguchi methodology optimization.

The predicted mean response at the optimal conditions is estimated only from the significant main and interaction effects. For the study, the main factor effects which have a significant impact on the mean response were A, F, C, G and H. The predicted mean response based on the optimal factor levels of A, F, C, G and H is given by:

$$R = T + (\hat{\vec{A}}_6 - T) + (C_2 - T) + (F_2 - T) + (G_1 - T) + (H_1 - T) \tag{15}$$

Where

R = predicted mean response at the optimal condition
T = overall mean of all observations in the data

Then: R = 284.225 + (310.5-284.225) + (313.47-284.225) + (314.93-284.225) + (310.17-284.225) + (300.99-284.225)

$$R = 413.185 \text{ N/mm}^2$$

5.2. Experimental conclusions and the confidence interval for the predicted mean response

The confidence interval (CI) is the variation of the estimated result at the optimum condition, calculated as:

$$99 percentCI = R \pm \sqrt{\frac{F \times MSE}{Ne}} \tag{16}$$

MSE = error variance =143.84 N/mm^2, $F_{1,\ 96}$ = 3.96, $N_e = \dfrac{96}{7+1+1+1+1+1} = 8$

Therefore, the 99 % confidence interval for the mean tensile strength is given by:

$$99 percentCI = 413.185 \pm \sqrt{\frac{3.96 \times 143.84}{8}}$$

= 413.185 ±8.43 N/mm^2

Accordingly, the result at the optimal condition is 413.185±8.43 N/mm^2 at the 99 % confidence level.

5.3. Confirmation run

A confirmatory run is necessary in order to verify the results from the statistical analysis. A confirmatory run should be carried out to confirm the optimal factor settings obtained from step 10. A sample taken contains ten pieces were produced under the optimal condition that is in table (21):

Sample	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Tensile strength N/mm^2	443.52	421.32	410.63	390.48	472.40	422.67	398.93	431.88	408.33	524.55

Table 21. The sample tensile strength based on Taguchi methodology optimization

The mean tensile strength from the confirmation run was 432.47 N/mm^2; the standard deviation is 39.950 N/mm^2 and the range is 134.07 N/mm^2. The distribution of this data is explained in figure (10):

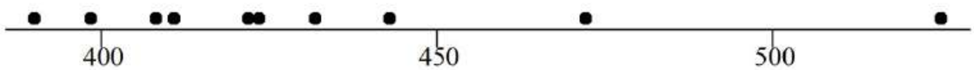


Figure 10. Dot plot for the sample at optimal condition

6. Conclusion

The reduction in the standard deviation was approximately (30.06 %) while for the range the reduction was approximately (29.39%). On the other hand, the increase in the tensile strength mean was approximately (30.84 %). The tensile strength of stud welding process is mostly affected by welding time factor, followed sheet coating factor and stud material factor. The specific conclusions from this study are as follows:

- Dominant factors in the performance of stud welds — the performance of stud welds in this (welding time), (sheet material) and (stud material) dominated the study. In this case, the attached sheet thickness was found to be the dominant variable, with the thicker material demonstrating nearly double the strength compared to using the thinner material. In such cases, thicker materials will have implied higher strengths.

This, in fact, appears to be the case with tensile strengths varying nearly in proportion to the attached sheet's thickness

- Effect of preheating the sheet —preheating has positive effects on increasing the tensile strength while reducing variability.
- Effect of stud design — increasing the stud area appeared to decrease the measures of mechanical performance. This was true even though the levels of internal porosity also increased with the larger studs.
- Effect of sheet thickness — increasing thickness led to increases in the mechanical measure (tensile strength) of the weld quality. The benefits appeared to come from the increased stiffness of the joint as well as the increased peel strengths associated with the thicker material.
- Effect of the sheet material — welding onto galvanized sheets appears to result in substantial porosity in the joint; as such, the non-galvanized sheets have better tensile strength.

7. Future work

There are two tracks to be followed for the use of the proposed Taguchi experimental design. First, to use the output of the experiment as an input for artificial intelligence techniques - like neural networks and fuzzy logic - to get a processes relationship between inputs and outputs. In particular, if this relationship between input and output cannot be represented by lower-order equations, then these techniques can result in accurate factor levels for optimization.

Second, to extend the work of this chapter in multi-objective optimization. This could be optimized with respect to torque testing and bending testing.

Author details

Riyadh Mohammed Ali Hamza
Gulf University, Kingdom of Bahrain

8. References

Anderson N. S. & Meinheit D. F. (2000) "Design criteria for headed stud groups in shear: part1-steel capacity and back edge effects." *PCI Journal*, pp. 48-75.

Antony J. & Kaye M. (1999) "Experimental Quality: A Strategic Approach to Achieve and Improve Quality." Kluwer Academic Publishers, London, ISBN: 9780412814402.

Behrens B., Grub D. & Jenicek A. (2011) "Stud welding within sheet metal working tools." *Prod. Eng. Res. Devel.*, Vol. 5, pp. 283–292.

Bursi O. S. & Gramola G. (1999) "Behaviour of headed stud shear connectors under low cycle high amplitude displacements." *Materials and structures*, Vol. 32, May, pp. 290-297.

Buyske S. & Trout R. (2003) "Robust Design and Taguchi Methods." *Journal of Quality Technology*, Vol. 22, No. 1, January pp. 15–22.

Chambers H. A. (2001) "Principles and Practices of stud welding." *PCI Journal*, September-October, pp. 46-58.

Conti T., Kondo Y. & Watson G. H. (2003) "Quality into the 21st Century: Perspectives on Quality and Competitive for Sustained Performance." *American Society for Quality*, William A. Tony, USA.

Eşme U. (2009) "Application of Taguchi method for the optimization of resistance spot welding process." *The Arabian Journal for Science and Engineering*, Vol. 34, No. 2B, pp. 519-528.

Hsu C., Mumaw J., Thomas J. & Maria P. (2008) "Robotic Stud Welding Process Optimization with Designed Experiment." *Welding Journal*, October, Vol. 87, pp 265-272

Hsu C. & Mumaw J. with Nelson Stud Welding, Inc. (2011) "Weldability of Advanced High-Strength Steel Drawn Arc Stud Welding." *Welding Journal*, Vol. 90, March, pp. 45-53

Hsu C., Phillips D., Champney C. & Mumaw J. (2007) "Portable and Intelligent Stud Welding Inverter for Automotive and Sheet Metal Fabrication." *Robotic Welding, Intelligence and Automation*, Vol. 362, pp. 367–374.

Klarić Š., Kladarić I., Kozak D., Stoić A., Ivandić Ž. & Samardžić I. (2009)" The influence of the stud arc welding process parameters on the weld penetration." Fascicle: *Mechanics, Tribology, Machine Manufacturing Technology*, Serie C, Volume XXIII.

Lee J. S., Ryu Y. S., Kim N. I., Kim B. J., Kim Y. K. & Kim M. H. (2009)" Stud welding for fixation of cryogenic insulation of membrane tanks in LNG ship building." *Trans. Nonferrous Met. China*, Vol. 19, pp. 271-275. Elsevier Press.

Miller Welds Electrical Mng. Co., July (2005), www.MillerWelds.com.

Hamza R. M. A. (2011) "Multi-objective neural network modeling for improving stud arc welding process joining." *Journal of Engineering, Science and Technology*, School of Engineering, Taylor's University Vol. 6, No. 3, 2011, pp. 382–391.

Ross P. J. (1986) "Taguchi Techniques for Quality Engineering." New York, McGraw-Hill.

Samardžić I. & Klari Š. (2007) "On Line Monitoring For Defects In Electric Arc Stud Welding." 11th International Research/Expert Conference *Trends in the Development of Machinery and Associated Technology*. TMT, Hammamet, Tunisia, 5-9 September 2007.

Schmidt S. R. & Launsby R. G. "Understanding Industrial Designed Experiments." Air Academy Press, Colorado Springs Co., 1992.

Smith C. S. & Gnudi M. T. (1990) "The PIROTECHNIA of Vannoccio Biringuccio, The classic Sixteenth-Century Treatise on Metals and Metallurgy." Dover Publications Inc., New York.

Steiner S. H. & MacKay R. J. (2005) "Statistical Engineering: an Algorithm for Reducing Variation in Manufacturing Processes." American Society for Quality ASQ.

Strigel R. M., Pincheira J. A. & Oliva M. G. (2000) "Reliability of 3/8 in. stud-welded deformed bar anchors subject to tensile loads." *PCI Journal*, November-Decembers 2000, pp. 72-82.

Taguchi G., Chowdhury S. & Wu Y. (2005) "Taguchi's Quality Engineering Handbook." John Wiley & Sons Inc. New Jersey.

Taylor J. (2001) "AISC-An Engineer's guide to fabricating steel structure." *Fabrication methods Australian institute of steel construction*, Vol. 1, John Taylor, pp. 107-109.

Chapter 16

The Physics of Weld Bead Defects

P. S. Wei

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/50668

1. Introduction

Productivity in different welding techniques can be improved by increasing welding speed and current. This strategy, however, is limited by the appearance of surface defects such as rippling, humping, undercutting, etc [1]. Weld ripples exhibit rather regular, arc-shaped topographic features on a solidified surface, for example, as shown in Figure 1 in EBW of Al 6061 [2]. The ripples slightly elevate above the surface. Figure 2 shows a rippling structure on silicon surface irradiated by a p-polarized laser beam, provided by Pedraza et al. [3]. Notice tiny little "fingers" in lower rim of fringes and asymmetry in fringe profile taken in downward direction.

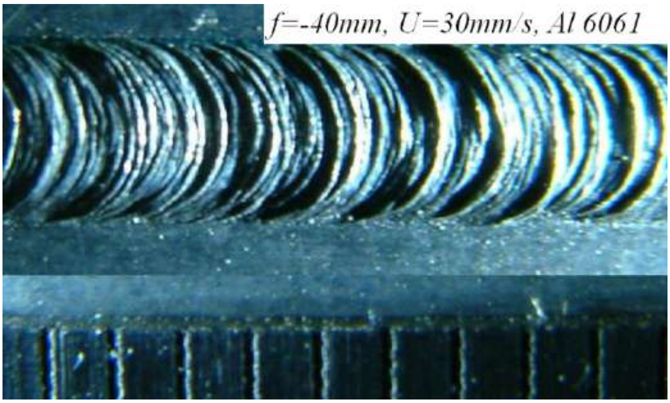


Figure 1. Rippling in welding Al 6061 [2]

On the other hand, more complicated humping shows an irregular and unpredictable surface contour consisting of a series of swelled protuberance, as can be seen in Figures 3(a)-(d). Morphologies of humped welds are quite complicated, which were roughly categorized into the gouging region and beaded cylinder morphologies [4]. Typical gouging region morphology defects in GTAW at high currents and high travel speeds are shown in Figure 3(a) [5]. The front of the weld pool exhibits a large depression known as the gouging region. Open, unfilled dry spots in between the humped beads can also be seen. In some cases, two small channels appear at the walls of the gouging region. The weld bead having parallel grooves at the side is the undercutting defect.

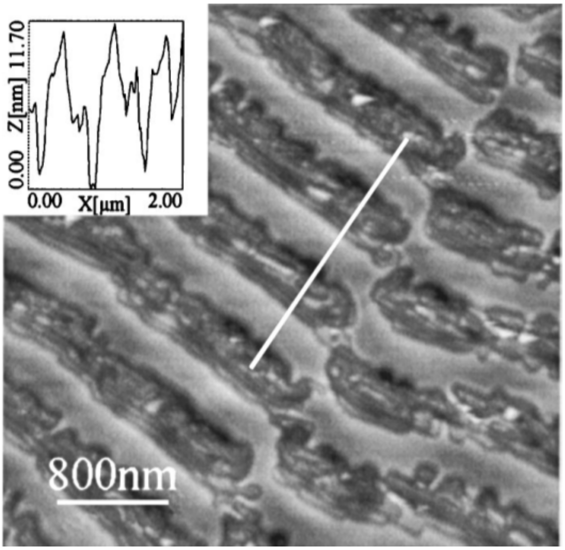


Figure 2. Rippled structure irradiated by 50 pulses at a laser fluence of 0.7 J/cm^2, using a p-polarized beam and incident angle of 38.5°. Notice "fingers" in lower rim of fringes [3].

Figure 3(b) shows a parallel humping or a split bead, separated by an empty channel [5]. Figure 3(c) shows beaded cylinder morphology defects, which are quite different from the gouging region morphology [6]. The beaded cylinder morphology includes beadlike protuberances that sit above the workpiece surface and are connected by a narrow central channel. In some cases of disconnected protuberances, traces of a central channel can still be seen. It is interesting to find that the gouged region and bead cylinder morphology are inverse phenomenon. Different morphologies therefore can be revealed by simply interchanging the liquid and gas phases. Figure 3(d) shows humping in EBW of Al 5083 [2]. Figure 4 also shows the a "star-like" or finger structure develops as well as the number of rays increases with laser power in etching of regular holes in Mo films with an Ar^+ laser beam immersed in Cl_2 atmosphere [7]. Surface patterns of weld beads therefore are very complicated.

Even though formation of the defects have been extensively proposed in the past, more systematical understanding of pattern formations is still limited. The aims of this work are to provide rigorous and pictorial interpretation based on thermal science concepts, and clarify and propose some physics involved in the mechanisms of weld bead formation. Clear physical concepts associated with quantitative scale analysis are important and beneficial for predicting, controlling and avoiding the occurrence of surface defects [1].

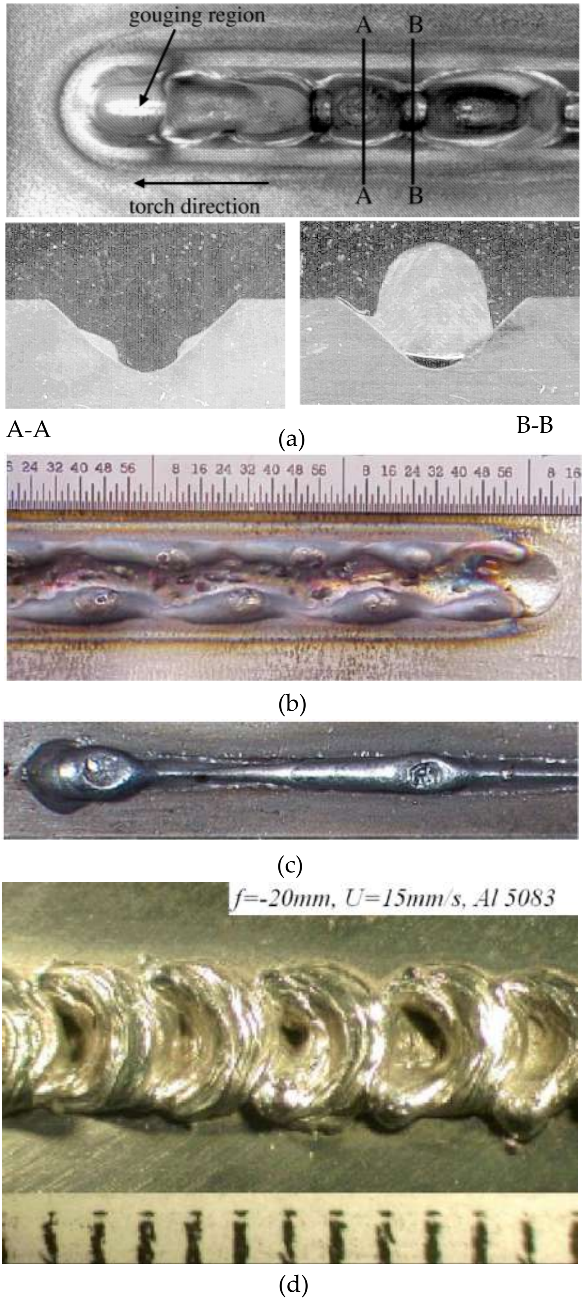


Figure 3. (a) Humps with gouged region and (b) parallel hump in GTAW [5], (c) cylinder beads in GMAW [6], and (d) humps in EBW [2].

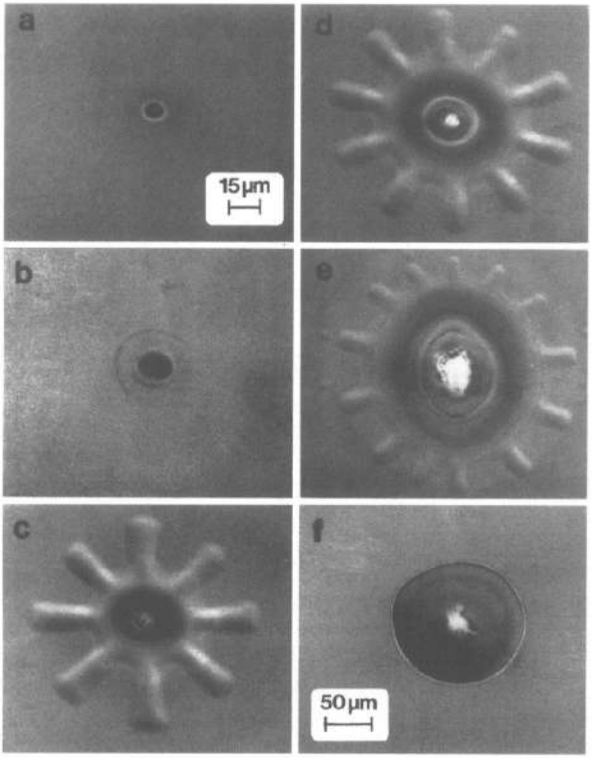


Figure 4. A "star-like hole" in etching Mo films with an Ar^+ -laser in Cl_2 atmosphere with powers (a) 10 mW, (b) 20 mW, (c) 50 mW, (d) 100 mW, (e) 500 mW, and (f) 150 mW [7].

2. Mechanisms of surface patterns

Different mechanisms of rippling have been proposed and summarized in Table 1.

Solidification rate fluctuations	Cheever and Howden [8], D'annessa [9]
Power source effects	Garland and Davies [10], Ecer et al. [11]
Thermocapillary instability	Fujimura et al. [12]
Kelvin-Helmholtz instability	Ang et al. [13]
Rayleigh-Taylor instability	Bennett et al. [14], Lugomer [15]
Instability due to evaporation	Emel'yanov et al. [16]
Morphological instability	Weizman et al. [17], Style and Wettlaufer [18]
Thermocapillary edge flow	Anthony and Cline [19], Wei et al. [20, 21]
Laser interactions	Birnbaum [22], Siegman and Fauchet [23]

Table 1. Mechanisms proposed for rippling

On the other hand, different mechanisms responsible for humping are presented in Table 2.

Rayleigh's capillary instability	Bradstreet [24], Gratzke et al. [25], Albright and Chiang [26]
Kelvin-Helmholtz instability	Kumar and DebRoy [27], Tytkin et al. [28]
Hydraulic jump	Shimada and Hoshinouchi [29]
Thermocapillary edge flow	Wei [1]

Table 2. Mechanisms proposed for humping

Kelvin-Helmholtz instability	Dynamic pressure difference
Rayleigh-Taylor instability	Density difference
Rayleigh capillary instability	Capillary pressure difference
Morphological instability	Solute supersaturation
Thermocapillary instability	Surface tension gradient
Evaporation instability	Evaporation pressure difference
Hydraulic jump	Hydraulic pressure difference
Laser interaction	Polarizations
Gravitational-electromagnetic instability	Interactions between gravitational and electromagnetic forces

Table 3. Mechanisms of instabilities

Surface roughness including rippling, gouging, humping, fingers, etc., therefore can be affected by mechanisms shown in Table 3. Understanding their physical meanings is described as follows.

3. Thermal science analysis of surface patterns

Rippling or humping is determined by the formation of capillary wave on the free surface. Under surface tension, the pressure differences created at a curve interface support deformation of the interface, as sketched in figure 5.

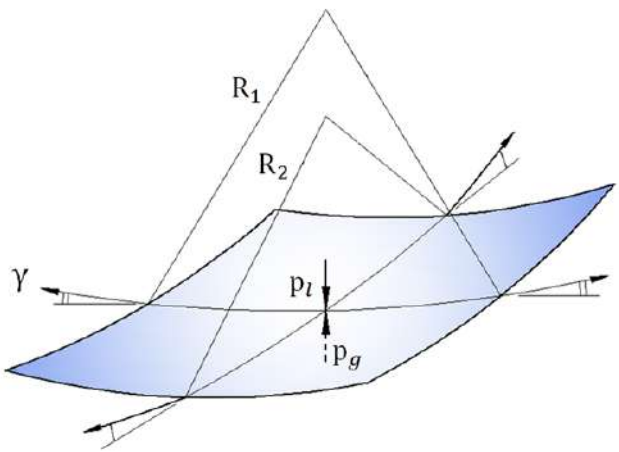


Figure 5. Normal pressure balance on an interface (Young-Laplace equation)

Mathematically speaking, it is governed by Young-Laplace equation

$$p_\ell - p_g = \gamma(\frac{1}{R_1} + \frac{1}{R_2}) \tag{1}$$

where p_ℓ, p_g are liquid and gas pressures, γ, the surface tension, R_1 and R_2 two principal radii of a surface, respectively. Equation (1) can be simply derived from a normal stress balance on an interface [30]. Any physical or chemical variables affecting pressures at the interface are responsible for different surface roughness patterns. The onset and mechanisms of instability are determined from perturbed deformation governed by equation (1) by substituting perturbed liquid and gas pressures. In this work, free surface instability can also be relevantly revealed from the concept of mass conservation, as shown in figures 6(a) and (b). Provided that velocity profiles maintain the same, the free surface is flat. However, the free surface deforms downward, if the mass of the outflow is greater than that of the incoming flow. Since surface deformation is enhanced, the free surface is suffered from instability.

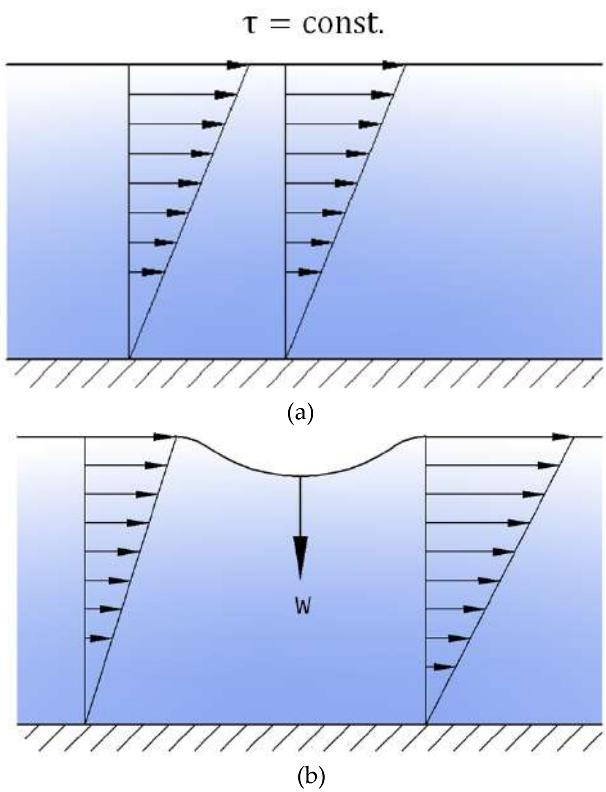


Figure 6. The effect of mass flow rate on deformation of a free surface (a) flat free surface, and (b) deformed free surface

The factors affecting surface patterns listed in Table 3 are rigorously described as follows:

4. Kelvin-Helmholtz instability

KH instability arises due to difference in velocities between gas and liquid. KH instability is the simplest and widely encountered instability, derived from Young-Laplace equation, where liquid and gas pressures are determined from conservation of mechanical energy (namely, the Bernoulli's equation) with specified constant liquid and gas velocities $U_{\ell 0}$ and U_{g0} far away the location considered. Bernoulli's equation indicates that the lower the velocity is, the higher the pressure is. Provided that deformation is toward the gas, the decrease in perturbed velocity results in an increase in perturbed pressure in the liquid, as illustrated in Figure 7. Opposite phenomenon occurs in gas phase. This results in a further increase in deformation under the action of surface tension. Wavelength for surface deformation can be scaled from equation (1) [1] and given by

$$\lambda_{KH} \sim \frac{\gamma}{\rho_\ell (U_{\ell 0} - U_{g0})^2} \tag{2}$$

Wavelength of surface deformation due to KH instability therefore reduces if the difference in velocities between gas and liquid increases. Provided that gas velocity is 10 m/s, the length for roughness in liquid metals is around 10 μm within a relevant range of rippling spacing.

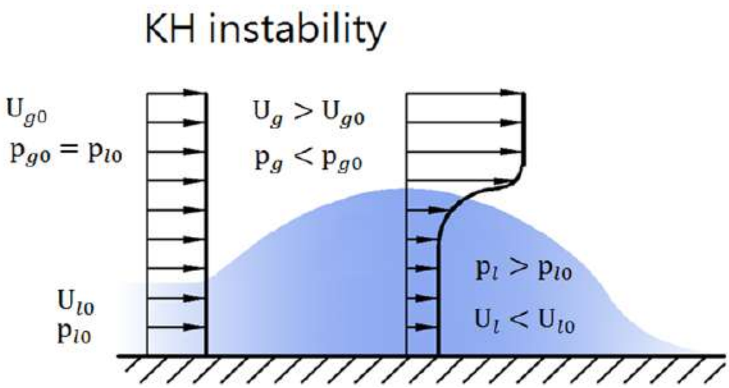


Figure 7. Kelvin-Helmholtz instability

5. Rayleigh-Taylor instability

RT instability occurs when a heavier liquid overlies a lighter liquid. The pressure involved is hydrostatic pressure, which is a function of gravitational acceleration and the depth location considered. As illustrated in figure 8, the difference in hydrostatic pressures of liquid and gas across a surface with a deformation η simply yields

$$p_\ell - p_g = -(\rho_\ell - \rho_g) g \eta \tag{3}$$

Scaling Young-Laplace equation (1) by substituting equation (3) leads to RT instability with the critical wavelength

$$\lambda_{RT} = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{g(\rho_\ell - \rho_g)}} \tag{4}$$

Provided that deformation is toward the lighter fluid, a positive perturbed pressure deviated from the base state results. A negative perturbed pressure simultaneously occurs with deformation toward the heavier liquid. Deformation further increases. At later times, initial perturbations grow into spikes of heavier fluid "falling" into lighter fluid and bubble of the lighter fluid "rising" into the heavier fluid. Hence, RT instability has also been stated to occur when the pressure and density gradients are in opposite directions, or a lighter fluid pushes or accelerates a heavier fluid. Equation (4) indicates that an increase in surface tension or decrease in difference in densities across a free surface increases wavelength of ripples.

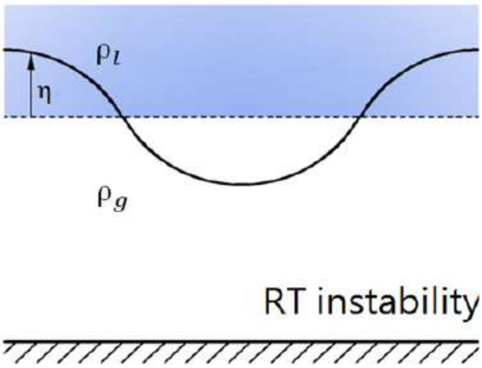


Figure 8. Rayleigh-Taylor instability

Acceleration in equation (4) may not be the earth's gravity. RT instability can also occur at an interface separating fluids through which a blast wave has been transmitted from a heavier to a lighter fluid. This instability is Richtmyer-Meshkov instability, often called impulsive or shock-induced RT instability. In high intensity beam welding, the produced shock waves propagate with discontinuities of densities, pressures and velocities in different magnitudes and directions across the free surface. Provided that the interface subject to an oblique shock, it will give rise to complicated instabilities or patterns at the interface. The normal component of the shock generates RM instability, and the parallel component generates KH instability. If a normal acceleration is also present, RT instability occurs.

6. Rayleigh's capillary instability

Rayleigh's capillary instability is a crucial factor to understand a bulged or gouging region of surface roughness. The gouged region exhibits an inverse feature of the bulged region.

Rayleigh's capillary instability can be revealed from figure 9. Radius r_B is at a location B near the minimum radius r_A. Provided that wavelength of surface deformation is long, curvature $1/R_2 >> 1/R_1$ at location A, as illustrated in figure 9(a). Since liquid pressure is primarily balanced by capillary pressure due to curvature $1/R_2$, a greater liquid pressure is induced by a smaller radius of the cylinder. The positive difference in the pressures thus induces a perturbed flow from locations A to B. The system therefore is unstable and breakups the cylinder into droplets. However, figure 9(b) shows that for deformation with small wavelength, curvature $1/R_1 >> 1/R_2$ at location A. The perturbed pressures at location A therefore decrease and it can be smaller than perturbed pressure at location B, leading to the flow from points B to A, and stabilizing the system.

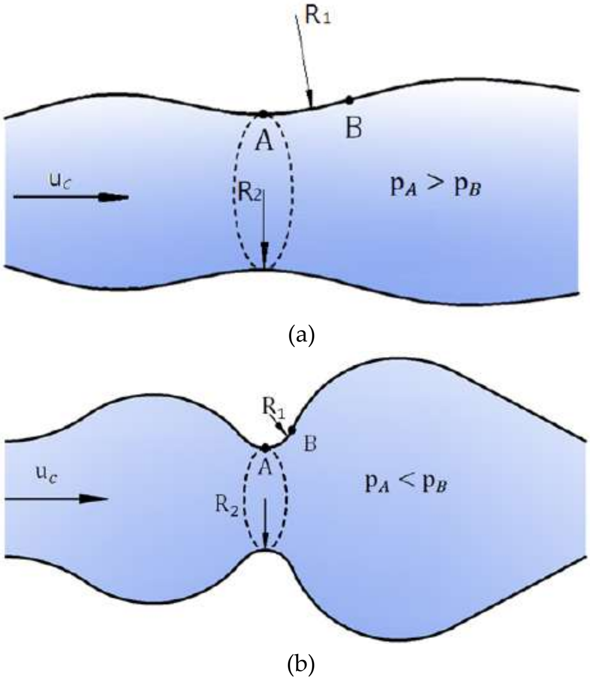


Figure 9. Cylinder is unstable for (a) $1/R_2 >> 1/R_1$, and stable for (b) $1/R_1 >> 1/R_2$ at location A

Since the difference in the perturbed pressures at two locations affects instability, the minimum wavelength for onset of instability is the balance between two components of capillary pressure. The critical wavelength thus is of the same order of the radius of the liquid cylinder [31]. Stability of a bead should depend on the boundary conditions at its contact lines on the surface. Gau et al. [32] experimentally found that cylindrical segments for water on hydrophilic stripes with the apparent contact angle less than 90° did not break up into droplets, as would be expected. It displayed long-wavelength instability where all excess fluid gathered into a single bulge on a hydrophilic stripe. Speth and Lauga [33] theoretically confirmed the most unstable wavenumber for the instability —the one which was observed in an experimental setting — decreases to zero when the apparent fluid contact angle reached 90°. The creation of bulges in the experiment corresponded with a zero-wavenumber capillary instability.

7. Morphological instability

Morphological instability is a consequence of thermal and metallurgical processes. Surface morphology becomes unstable by decreasing surface tension and increasing constitutional supercooling (namely, $mG_c - G_T > 0$) [34,35], where m is the negative slope of the liquidus line in the phase diagram of a dilute solution, G_c and G_T are negative concentration and positive temperature gradients ahead of the solidification front, respectively. The decreased solute concentration increases liquidus temperature near the solidification front, as illustrated in figures 10(a) and (b), respectively, and revealed from the phase diagram of figure 10(c).

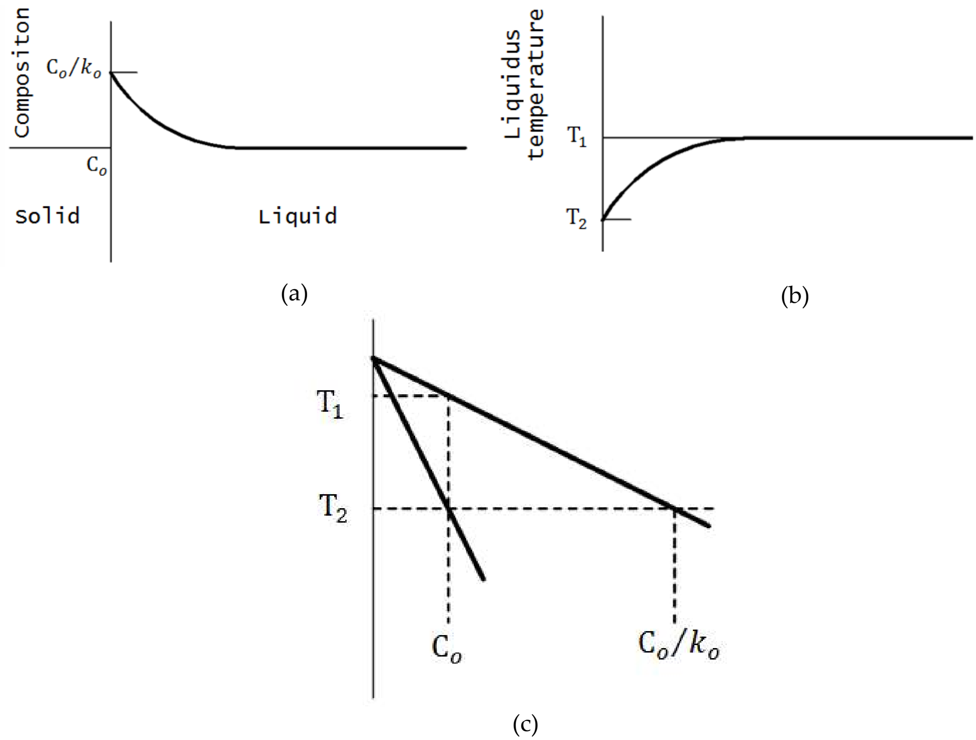


Figure 10. (a) Concentration and (b) liquidus temperature profiles ahead of a solidification front, and (c) the corresponding phase diagram

In view of the rapid drop of solute concentration ahead of the freezing front, the actual temperature may be below the liquidus temperature and result in constitutional supercooling or morphological instability, as shown in figure 11. Mathematically speaking, morphological instability can be simply found by considering interfacial temperature governed by Gibbs-Thomson equation [35]

$$T_s - T_m = \frac{\gamma T_m}{\rho h_{s\ell}} \frac{\partial^2 \eta}{\partial x^2} + mC' \tag{5}$$

where T_s, T_m, $h_{s\ell}$ are, respectively, interfacial temperature, melting temperature and latent heat for solid-liquid transition. The variations of temperature and concentration at the interface subject to a forward deformation can be expressed by their spatial gradients, $T_s - T_m - mC' \sim (G_T - mG_c)\eta_c$. Scaling equation (5) therefore leads to

$$\lambda_M \sim \sqrt{\frac{\gamma T_m}{\rho h_{s\ell}(mG_c - G_T)}} \tag{6}$$

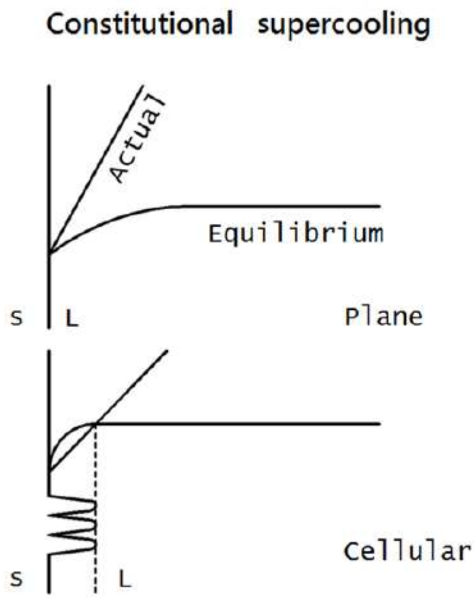


Figure 11. Morphological instability due to constitutional supercooling

8. Instability due to evaporation

It is well-known that a semi-infinite liquid heated below is susceptible to evaporative instability, as illustrated in figure 12(a). As surface deformation is closer to the bottom surface than the flat surface, temperature at the trough is greater than the equilibrium

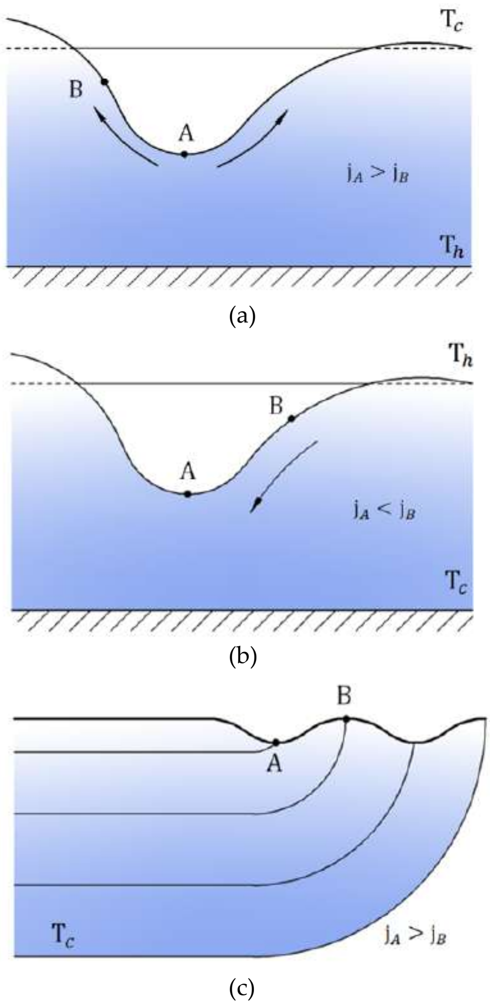


Figure 12. Instability due to evaporation for (a) unstable system subject to heating from below, and (b) stable system and (c) unstable system subject to heating from above

temperature, meaning that higher evaporation takes place at the trough than the base state. On the other hand, a deformation away from the bottom surface leads to lower evaporation rate than that at the base state. Liquid pressure therefore increases from the surface trough to crest. The induced flow from the trough to crest thus enhances surface deformation, leading to evaporative instability (referring to figure 6(b)). However, in welding and manufacturing processes, workpieces are irradiated by incident flux at the top surfaces. A liquid heated from above, which is the case opposite to previous figure 12(a), is stable, as illustrated in figure 12(b). In this work, it is found that evaporation may also induce instability subject to base temperature decreasing in radial directions, as illustrated in figure

12(c) [1]. For a typical welding process the isothermal field is in a roughly spherical shape. Provided that surface deforms toward the bottom, temperature at the crest, which is close to the pool edge, can be lower than that at the trough. The decrease in pressures therefore pushes the liquid from the trough to crest and gives rise to instability.

9. Thermocapillary instability

All pure liquid metals and alloys containing minor surface active solutes such as O, S, Se, Te, et al. have negative surface tension coefficient ($d\gamma / dT < 0$). As illustrated in figure 13, thermocapillary force balanced by viscous shear stress at the interface is given by

$$\tau = \mu \frac{\partial u_t}{\partial n} = \frac{d\gamma}{dT} \frac{\partial T}{\partial s} \tag{7}$$

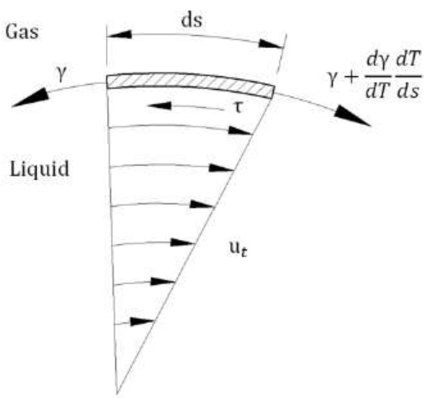


Figure 13. Tangential stresses balance between thermocapillary force and shear stress.

A negative surface tension coefficient induces an outward surface flow, provided that surface temperature decreases in the outward direction. Consider an interface to be displaced toward the hot surface at the bottom, as illustrated in figure 14(a). Temperature at the trough thus is hotter than other points on the deformed surface. This results in an outward lateral flow from the trough to crest along the interface. To conserve mass, the perturbed liquid flows downwards and further deforms the interface with speed w (referring to figure 6(b)). The system thus is unstable. The well-accepted interpretation is incorrect. Rather than perturbed downward flow, it is usually interpreted as that instability results from incessant and amplified upward flow accompanying with enhanced energy at the trough due to increased thermocapillary force from the trough to crest [31].

In this work, it is proposed that a free surface heated from above and a negative surface tension coefficient may still cause instability, as illustrated in figure 14(b) [1]. Provided that the surface is strongly deformed toward the bottom, significant heat conduction is transport from the interior to free surface. Enhanced downward thermocapillary surface flow therefore is required to balance horizontal conduction, and results in further deformation. This work also proposes that thermocapillary instability takes place near the edge of the molten pool, where $d\gamma / dT > 0$ in the presence of surface active solutes in the case similar to the mechanism (see figure 14(a)) provided by Pearson [36], as illustrated in figure 14(c). This is another reason responsible for serious roughness encountered in alloys having surface active solutes [21].

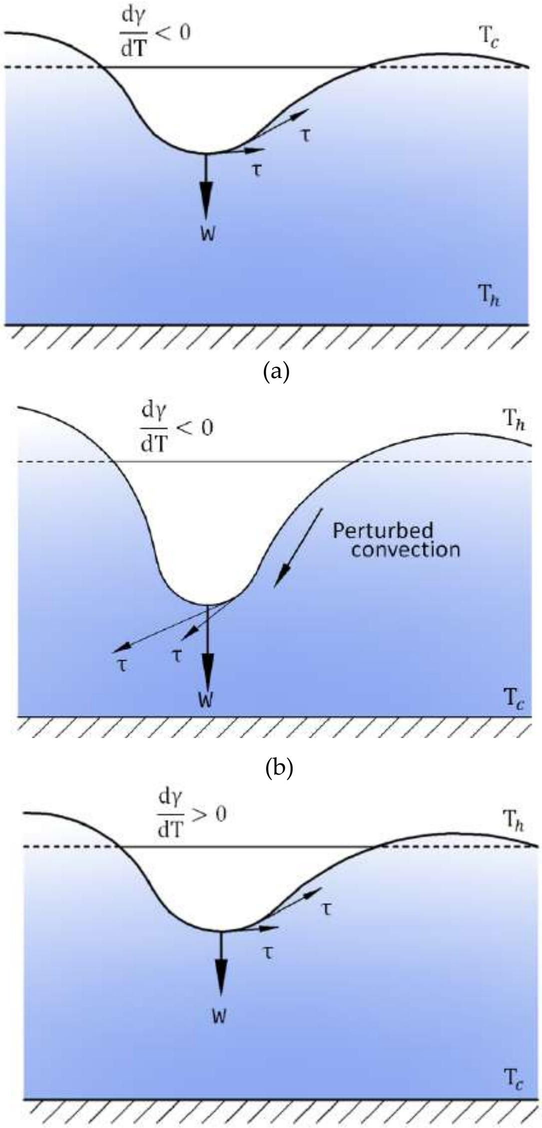


Figure 14. Thermocapillary instabilities: (a) heated from below and (b) heated from above with negative surface tension coefficient, and (c) heated from above with positive surface tension coefficient.

10. Thermocapillary edge flow

Deformation of the free surface near the solidification front is responsible for rippling or humping. As illustrated in figure 15, an increase in liquid pressure due to a decreased surface flow from the central to rear edge of the pool give rise to deformation of the free surface near the solidification front. Subtracting Young-Laplace equation at two locations which are away and near the edge of the pool surface, and introducing the pressure difference between two locations from Bernoulli's equation,, the amplitude of ripples can be found to be [1,20]

$$\frac{a\gamma}{\rho\alpha^2} = (1 - K_{loss})(\frac{u_c r_m}{\alpha})^2 \tag{8}$$

where the loss coefficient K_{loss} is introduced to account for the energy loss near the pool edge, a, α and r_m are, respectively, roughness amplitude, thermal diffusivity and distance of the rear edge measured from the pool center. Surface speed can be scaled and related to thermocapillary force [37,38]. Based on a typical surface velocity of 1 m/s, pool width of 1 mm and loss coefficient of 0.99, rippling amplitude predicted from equation (8) is around a reasonable value of 10 μm .

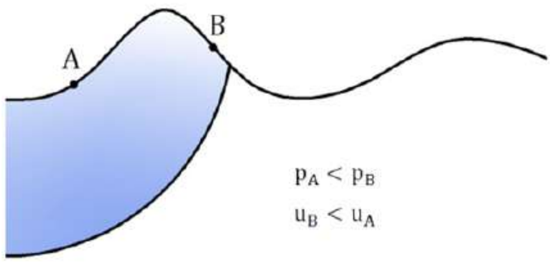


Figure 15. Thermocapillary edge flow

11. Hydraulic jump

Studying hydraulic jump usually assumes liquid pressure to be hydrostatic pressure. Hydraulic jump occurs if the pressure gradient becomes increasingly adverse as the flow proceeds downstream. As sketched in figure 16(a), an increased liquid height ($h_1 > h_0$) increases hydrostatic force (= pressure x height) against the downward flow, and decreases downward velocity to satisfy conservation of momentum and mass. However, liquid height at the downstream location can also be less than that at the upstream location, as illustrated in figure 16(b). Hydrostatic force decreases whereas velocity increases. Provided that the Froude number, $U_0^2 / gh_0 > 1$, hydraulic jump occurs because of $h_1 / h_0 > 1$ [30]. As Froude number $U_0^2 / gh_0 < 1$, the height ratio $h_1 / h_0 < 1$. Surface tension can also play a role in hydraulic jump [39], as observed the occurrence of polygonal patterns from breaking axial symmetry of a circular hydraulic jump.

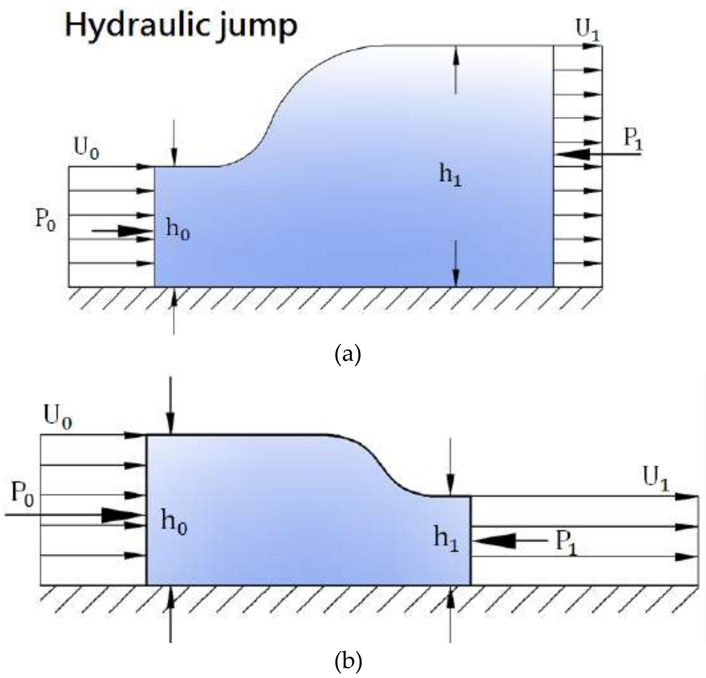


Figure 16. Hydraulic jumps with (a) increase and (b) decrease of height at downstream location.

12. Fingers

Fingers can be accompanied with hydraulic jump (see figure 4). This is because pressure and density gradients are in opposite directions in the course of splashing, leading to RT instability. Allen [40] was the first to propose that the splashing of a droplet impact on a surface is an example of RT instability, caused by a rapidly decelerating interface. Replacing gravitational acceleration by u_c / t_c in equation (4) and substituting $r_c = n\lambda_{RT}$ from geometrical consideration lead to

$$r_c \sim n\sqrt{\frac{\gamma t_c}{u_c \rho_\ell}} \tag{9}$$

Provided that time is short, equation (9) indicates that radius of the ring-shaped spread is less than wavelength of fingers. The ring-shaped spread thus is free from fingers. On the other hand, larger time results in the ring-shaped spread covered with n fingers.

13. Gravitational-electromagnetic instability

In plasma, Rayleigh-Taylor instability can occur because the magnetic field acts as a light fluid supporting a heavy fluid (plasma), [41]. This is because the ion drift velocity $\mathbf{U}_0$ is in the direction of $\mathbf{g} \times \mathbf{B}_0$. If a ripple in plasma develops on the interface as the result of random thermal fluctuations, the drift velocity $\mathbf{U}_0$ will cause the ripple to grow, as sketched in figure 17. Gravitational acceleration $\mathbf{g}$ is in the downward direction. The drift of ions causes a charge to build up on the sides of the ripple, and an electric field develops which changes sign as one goes from crest to trough in the perturbation. The drift $\mathbf{E}' \times \mathbf{B}_0$ is thus always upward in those regions where the surface has moved upward, and downward where it has moved downward. The ripple therefore grows as a result of these properly phased $\mathbf{E}' \times \mathbf{B}_0$ drifts.

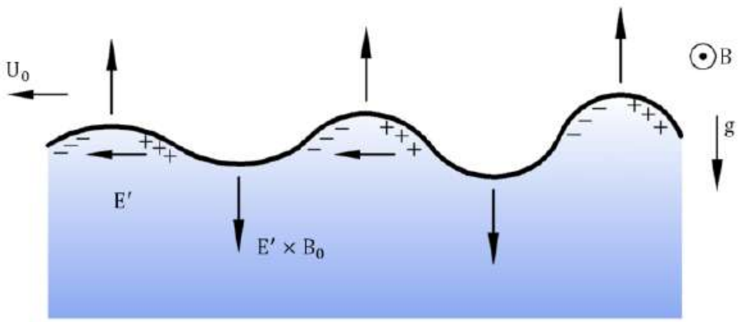


Figure 17. Gravitational-electromagnetic instability

14. Conclusions

Physical interpretation of bead defects is important and beneficial for controlling quality of welding joint. It involves inter-discipline among different sciences of thermal physics, aerodynamics, electromagnetism, optics and metallurgy, morphology, pattern selection, instabilities, and contact line dynamics. Phase transitions between liquid and gas, and solid and liquid are also included. Spaces and amplitudes of rippling and humping can be effectively revealed from scaling of a force balance between perturbed liquid and gas pressures and surface tension. Any factor which can induce pressure differences or influence surface tension is responsible for specific surface patterns. This study provides a general, relevant and rigorous interpretation of physical mechanisms involved in surface roughness.

Author details

P. S. Wei
Department of Mechanical and Electro-Mechanical Engineering,
National Sun Yat-Sen University, Kaohsiung, Taiwan, China

Acknowledgement

The author is grateful for Mr. Sheng-You Tsai drawing the pictures

15. References

[1] Wei, P. S., 2011. Thermal science of weld bead defects- a review, *ASME Journal of Heat Transfer*, 133: 031005

[2] Wei, P. S., Chuang, K.C., Ku, J. S., and DebRoy, T., 2012, Mechanisms of spiking and humping in keyhole welding. *IEEE Transactions on Components, Packaging and Manufacturing Technology* 2: 383-394.

[3] Pedraza, A. J., Guan, Y. F., Fowlkes, J. D., and Smith, D. A., 2004. Nanostructures produced by ultraviolet laser irradiation of silicon. I. rippled structures. *Journal of Vacuum Science and Technology* B 22: 2823-2835.

[4] Soderstrom, E., and Mendez, P. 2006. Humping mechanisms present in high speed welding. *Science and Technology of Welding and Joining* 11: 572-579.

[5] Mendez, P. F., and Eagar, T. W., 2003. Penetration and defect formation in high-current arc welding. *Welding Journal* 82: 296-s to 306-s.

[6] Cho, M. H., and Farson, D. F., 2007. Understanding bead hump formation in gas metal arc welding using a numerical simulation. *Metallurgical and Materials Transactions B* 38: 305-319.

[7] Bäuerle, D., 1996, *Laser Processing and Chemistry*, Springer-Verlag, New York.

[8] Cheever, D. L., and Howden, D. G., 1969. Technical note: nature of weld surface ripples. *Welding Journal* 48: 179-s to 180-s.

[9] D'annessa, A. T., 1970. Sources and effects of growth rate fluctuations during weld metal solidification. *Welding Journal* 49: 41-s to 45-s.

[10] Garland, J. G., and Davies, G. J., 1970. Surface rippling and growth perturbations during weld pool solidification. *Metal Construction and British Welding Journal* 2: 171-175.

[11] Ecer, G. M., Tzavaras, A., Gokhale, A., and Brody, H. D., 1982. Weld pool fluid motion and ripple Formation in pulsed-current GTAW. *Trends in Welding Research in the United States,* (editor David, S. A.), Proceedings of a conference sponsored by the Joining Division of American Society for Metals, New Orleans, Nov. 16-18, 1981, pp.419-442.

[12] Fujimura, K., Ogawa, M., and Seki, M., 1992. Possible mechanism of the roughness formation on a liquid layer caused by a high heat flux. *Fusion Engineering and Design* 19: 183-191.

[13] Ang, L. K., Lau, Y. Y., Gilgenbach, R. M., Spindler, H. L., Lash, J. S., and Kovaleski, S. D., 1998. Surface instability of multipulse laser ablation on a metallic target. *Journal of Applied Physics* 83: 4466-4471.

[14] Bennett, T. D., Grigoropoulos, C. P., and Krajnovich, D. J., 1995. Near-threshold laser sputtering of gold. *Journal of Applied Physics* 77: 849-864.

[15] Lugomer, S. 2007. Micro-fluid dynamics via laser-matter interaction: vortex filament structures, helical instability, reconnection, merging, and undulation. *Physics Letters A* 361: 87-97.

[16] Emel'yanov, V. I., Konov, V. I., Tokarev, V. N., and Seminogov, V. N., 1989. Formation of periodic surface ripples under the action of pulsed carbon dioxide laser radiation on fused silica. *Journal of Optical Society of America* B 6: 104-114.
[17] Weizman, M., Nickel, N. H., Sieber, I, and Yan, B., 2008. Laser-induced self-organization in silicon-germanium thin films. *Journal of Applied Physics* 103: 093536.
[18] Style, R. W., and Wettlaufer, J. S., 2007. Evaporatively driven morphological instability. *Physical Review E* 76: 011602.
[19] Anthony, T. R., and Cline, H. E., 1977. Surface rippling induced by surface-tension gradients during laser surface melting and alloying. *Journal of Applied Physics* 48: 3888-3894.
[20] Wei, P. S., Chang, C. Y., and Chen, C. T., 1996.Surface ripple in electron-beam welding solidification. *ASME Journal of Heat Transfer* 118: 960-969.
[21] Wei, P. S., Chen, Y. H., Ku, J. S., and Ho, C. Y., 2003. Active solute effects on surface ripples in electron-beam welding solidification. *Metallurgical and Materials Transactions B* 34: 421-432.
[22] Birnbaum, M., 1965, Semiconductor Surface Damage Produced by Ruby Lasers, *Journal of Applied Physics*, 36: 3688-3689.
[23] Siegman, A. E., and Fauchet, P. M., 1986. Stimulated Wood's anomalies on laser-illuminated surfaces. *IEEE Journal of Quantum Electronics* QE-22: 1384-1403.
[24] Bradstreet, B. J., 1968. Effect of surface tension and metal flow on weld bead formation. *Welding Journal*, 47: 314-s to 322-s.
[25] Gratzke, U., Kapadia, P. D., Dowden, J., Kroos, J., and Simon, G., 1992. Theoretical approach to the humping phenomenon in welding processes. *Journal of Physics D: Applied Physics* 25: 1640-1647.
[26] Albright, C. E., and Chiang, S., 1988. High-speed laser welding discontinuities. *Journal of Laser Applications* 1: 18-24.
[27] Kumar, A., and DebRoy, T., 2006. Toward a unified model to prevent humping defects in gas tungsten arc welding. *Welding Journal* 85: 292-s to 304-s.
[28] Tytkin, Yu. M., Ryazantsev, O. V., and Chuvilo, V. N., 1981. The mechanism of formation of a coarse flaky surface of weld metal in welding under high-power conditions. *Svar. Proiz.* 2: 4-5 (pp.3-5).
[29] Shimada, W., and Hoshinouchi, S., 1982. A study on bead formation by low pressure TIG arc and prevention of under-cut bead. *Transactions of the Japan Welding Society* 51: 280-286.
[30] Li, W. H., and Lam, S. H., 1964, *Principles of Fluid Mechanics,* Addison-Wesley, Reading, Mass., 1964.
[31] Miller, C. A., and Neogi, P., 1985, *Interfacial Phenomena, Equilibrium and Dynamic Effects,* Marcel Dekker, New York.
[32] Gau, H., Herminghaus, S., Lenz, P., and Lipowsky, R., 1999. Liquid morphologies on structured surfaces: from microchannels to microchips. *Science* 283: 46-49.
[33] Speth, R. L., and Lauga, E., 2009. Capillary instability on a hydrophilic stripe. *New Journal of Physics* 11: 075024.

[34] Rutter, J. W., and Chalmers, B., 1953. A prismatic substructure formed during solidification of metals. *Canadian Journal of Physics* 31: 15-39.

[35] Mullins, W. W., and Sekerka, R. F., 1964. Stability of a planar interface during solidification of a dilute binary alloy. *Journal of Applied Physics* 35: 444-451.

[36] Pearson, J. R. A., 1958. On convection cells induced by surface tension. *Journal of Fluid Mechanics* 4: 489-500.

[37] Ostrach, S., 1982, Low-Gravity Fluid Flows, *Annual Review of Fluid Mechanics* 14: 313-345.

[38] Wei, P. S., Liu, H. J., and Lin, C. L., 2012, Scaling weld or melt pool shape induced by thermocapillary convection, *International Journal of Heat and Mass Transfer* 55: 2328-2337.

[39] Ellegaard, C., Hansen, A. E., Haaning, A., Hansen, K., Marcussen, A., Bohr, T., Hansen, J. L., and Watanabe, S., 1998. Creating corners in kitchen sinks. *Nature* 392: 767-768.

[40] Allen, R. F., 1975. The role of surface tension in splashing. *Journal of Colloid and Interface Science* 51: 350-351.

[41] Chen, F. F., 1974, *Introduction to Plasma Physics*, Plenum Press, New York

Chapter 17

Welding Techniques in Dentistry

Clébio Domingues da Silveira-Júnior, Morgana Guilherme de Castro, Letícia Resende Davi, Flávio Domingues das Neves, Verediana Resende Novais and Paulo Cézar Simamoto-Júnior

Additional information is available at the end of the chapter

http://dx.doi.org/10.5772/54256

1. Introduction

Welding involves a metallurgical union process that relies on base metal fusion, i.e. the constituent metal of the structure, with or without filler metal, to form the soldered joint. Thus, a definition of welding proposed by the AWS is an "operation which aims to get localized coalescence produced by heating to a suitable temperature, with or without applying pressure and filler metal, producing parts with strong welded union, nonporous and free of corrosion. According to some authors, when the welding conditions are suitable, the mechanical strength of a welded union is equal to or greater than the base metal intact.

Currently, over 50 different welding techniques have some industrial use and are the most important methods for permanent union of metals. This importance is further evidenced by the presence of welding processes in different areas, such as: aerospace, aviation, automotive petrochemical, nuclear, and medicine.

In dentistry, welding between abutment elements, during construction of the metal framework or even after ceramics application, has been used by the vast majority of dentists to solve problems related to laboratory distortions that are reflected in prostheses' misfit in the marginal area. The welding technique has the advantage of working with segments of the prosthesis to generate prosthetic framework with lower distortion, which enables better fit to the abutments. It promotes uniform stress distribution and minimizes trauma and failures in the bone, implant, and prostheses.

In addition, the recent and promising use of titanium (Ti) alloys in dentistry has been driven mainly by the desire to produce structures of low weight and high resistance to chewing efforts, since titanium presents favorable biological and mechanical properties, including: low density, excellent biocompatibility, good resistance/weight ratio, and low modulus of elasticity.

However, its high melting temperature, which is close to 1,700°C, and high reactivity with the nitrogen, hydrogen, and oxygen from air, when subjected to high temperatures, end up making it more fragile. Titanium, therefore, requires argon gas for inert gas protection during its manufacturing process.

Thus, the achievement of welded joints in dentistry has been enhanced by the development and incorporation of knowledge of other areas, such as engineering; this allowed the emergence of new techniques and equipment to improve welding, such as Laser Welding, Tungsten Inert Gas (TIG) Welding, and Plasma Arc Welding (PAW). These new techniques are alternatives to conventional brazing, which use a gas torch.

This chapter seeks to present the welding techniques applied to dentistry, as well as scientific studies related to welding techniques.

2. Welding processes in dentistry

Although it is relatively common practice in dentistry to obtain one-piece cast frameworks in order to avoid the soldering step, it is a process that incorporates numerous errors and can lead to an unsatisfying result.

One-piece cast metal frameworks over teeth should be avoided, because their apparent fit is at the expense of tooth movement, developing areas of pressure and traction in the periodontal ligament. The same is not true of the frameworks over implants. Osseointegrated implants are rigidly connected to the surrounding bone, and this connection lacks the inherent resilience of the periodontal ligament. It has been documented that movement of implants within bone is limited to 50–150 μm. In case of a misfit between implant and abutment, or between abutment and prosthesis, it is bone deformation that causes implant movement. Thus, compressive and tensile loads could be directed to the restoration, which could result in a loosening of the prosthesis and abutment screws, fracture of the restoration, bone micro-fractures surrounding the implants, and even fracture of the implant.

The fabrication of a metal framework of multiple elements cast in one piece is no more suitable for dental work, because it is potentially prejudicial to framework fit. Casting separated fragments for subsequent welding is preferred. Barbosa et al. (2010) comparatively analyzed, by SEM, the vertical and horizontal fit between UCLA abutments and implants used in frameworks of five elements that were cast in one piece after laser welding. Three different materials were used: titanium CP (grade 1), Co-Cr alloys, and Ni-Cr-Ti alloys. The passive fit of the frameworks was evaluated by testing the single screw and the stresses generated around the implants, by means of photoelasticity. There was a statistically significant improvement in the frameworks fit for all materials after sectioning and laser welding.

The welding processes are advised, regardless of the extension of the metal structure, on prosthesis over teeth or implants. In dentistry, different welding techniques are used, among which we highlight the brazing, TIG and PAW welding, and laser welding.

2.1. Brazing

2.1.1. Definition

The brazing process, also called oxygas or welding with direct flame, produces a coalescence of metals by heating the parts to be welded with a flame. The process needs another type of alloy, called a solder alloy, which is used to join two or more metal parts, both with or without the same metal, at a temperature greater than 450ºC and less than the melting point of the metal base. To execute this type of welding, an oxygen-propane torch is used with circular movements of the flame over the joint. The parts to be joined are heated until they are red hot, and then the reducing zone of the flame is directed obliquely to the weld area. The investment is left on the bench until it has fully cooled.

2.1.2. Technical description

2.1.2.1. Soldering space

A minimum space of 0.2–0.3 up to 0.5 mm is obtained (Figure 1) for welding. This can be accomplished with aluminum oxide disks or stones or fine diamond burs. To assess whether there is enough space for the weld, a radiographic film or paper card may be placed in the gap. The surface should be finished and polished properly, leaving it clean and without irregularities.

To obtain a uniform solder thickness, it is important to obtain a homogenous space throughout the extension of the area to be welded. Irregular spaces with thick, sharp discrepancies can cause contraction of the solder and result in traction of retainers, which are displaced from their original positions on the investment.

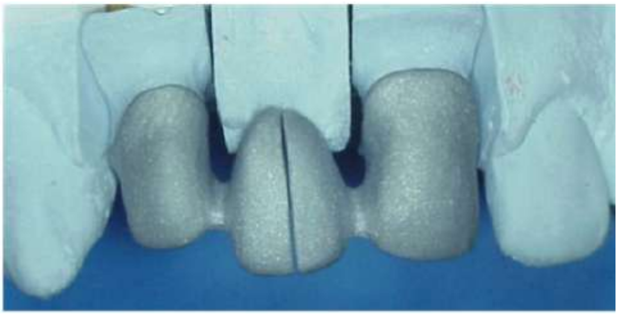


Figure 1. Sectioned framework cast in Ni-Cr alloy with correct space for soldering with the brazing technique.

2.1.2.2. Inclusion and soldering

The various stages below should be followed:

1. Inclusion of frameworks at investment suitable for welding or for casting, forming a block approximately 1.5–2.0 cm in height (Figure 2);

2. Take the investment to the furnace to eliminate moisture and dehydration;
3. Remove the investment from the furnace and wait until it has cooled completely;
4. Clean the areas to be welded with aluminum oxide jet;
5. Apply flux in the joint area and start heating. When heated to red hot, position the welding rod, which is held with clamps, in the area to be welded. The solder melts and flows into the joint under influence of heat and flux (Figure 3);
6. The investment is cooled slowly after the filler metal has completely covered the surface of the joint;
7. Divest and clean with instruments and aluminum oxide jets.

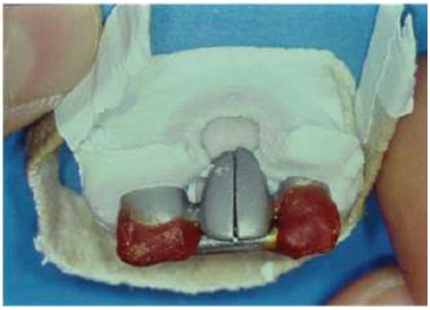


Figure 2. Framework inclusion in soldering investment for high temperatures.

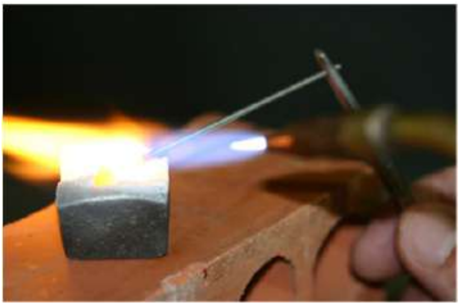


Figure 3. Brazing process using filler metal.

2.1.3. Advantages

- It has been used for years, therefore well known;
- Low cost;
- Relative effectiveness.

2.1.4. Disadvantages

- Problems such as oxidation of the parts joined by weld;
- Joint porosity and overheating of the union during the welding process can promote small structural defects and failure of the rehabilitation treatment.

2.2. Tungsten Inert Gas (TIG) Welding and Plasma Arc Welding (PAW)

2.2.1. Definition

TIG and PAW welding are techniques in which a union is obtained by heating materials by an arc established between a non-consumable tungsten electrode and the part to be welded (Figure 4).

The electrode and the area to be welded are protected by using an inert gas, usually argon or a mixture of inert gases (argon and helium). The basic equipment consists of a power supply, a torch with a tungsten electrode, a shielding gas source, and an opening system for the arc. The main difference between TIG and plasma welding is the use of a constrictor torch that concentrates the electric arc in plasma welding (Figure 5). Filler metal can be used or not.

Figure 4. Ceramic torch, with tungsten electrode, positioned over the sample.

Figure 5. Plasma welding machine for Dentistry.

2.2.2. *Technical description*

To accomplish this welding technique, it is necessary for the equipment to be regulated for the purpose of welding. The equipment allows for the adjustment of both the pulse and current. After adjusting the machine, screw into one of the claws a structure without use and position the parts to be welded with hands or through specific tables of equipment, which position the parts to be joined. The argon activation is done by a foot pedal, so to start the welding process, press the foot pedal until the argon flows, and then pull off the structure in the electrode without pressing. Maintain steady hands; the buzzer will indicate when contact is made. Quickly release the pedal. The weld will be made, and the flow of argon will continue for a few seconds. It is possible that in the first few attempts the electrode will stick to the piece being necessary to regrind the same.

2.2.3. *Advantages*

- This allows execution of welds of high quality and excellent finishing, particularly in small joints;
- The thickness of the joint allows for welding in any position, e.g. repairing removable partial prosthesis;
- Excellent control of the weld pool, i.e. the region being welded;
- Expending less time;
- It can be executed directly in the working model;
- The equipment is affordable compared to that of laser welding;
- Allows welding in regions near the resins and porcelains;
- Allows welding with the frameworks in close contact or with minimal space for welding, using filler metal.

2.2.4. *Disadvantages*

- The electric arc welding processes, such as TIG and plasma welding, are characterized by the imposition of a large amount of heat to achieve fusion of the base and filler material, which causes important microstructure transformations. These transformations occur in a region called the HAZ (Heat Affected Zone), which is a base metal region whose structure or properties were changed by temperature variation during welding. These changes generate a complex region of stresses and deformations, leading to results that are not always desired, including material distortion, residual stresses, generation of fragile microstructures, grain grow, cracks, fissures, and changes in mechanical, physical, and chemical properties, among others;
- Insufficient weld penetration in butt type joints (Figure 6A);
- The presence of porosities in the region of the union (Figure 6B) that is due to the inclusion of argon gas, which is necessary to maintain the inert atmosphere during the welding procedure and thus minimize interaction with air elements. These bubbles and crashes act as initiators of fractures and points of stress concentration, and can lead to the failure of welded structures in a short period of time.

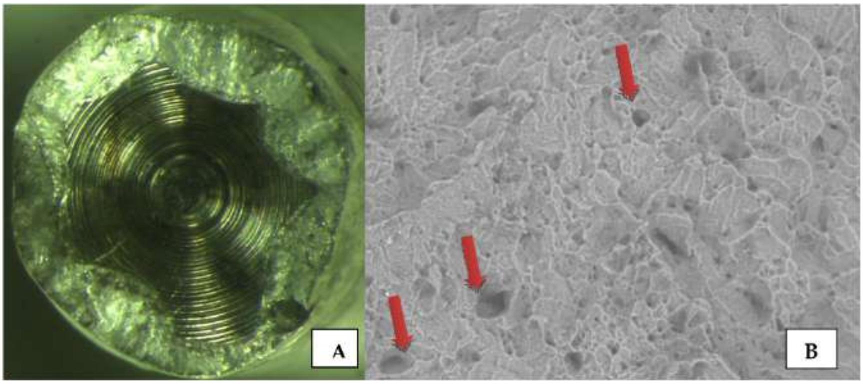


Figure 6. A) Insufficient weld penetration; B) Presence of bubbles and porosities.

2.3. Laser welding

2.3.1. Definition

It is a union process based on localized fusion in the joint, through bombardment from a high-intensity, concentrated, monochromatic and coherent light beam. The area to be welded is protected by using an inert gas, usually argon or a mixture of inert gases.

When the light beam reaches the surface of the metal, the metal absorbs its energy, converting it into heat that penetrates into the interior of the metal by conduction. Owing to a high concentration of heat, the metal is taken to its melting point, and a series of events culminates in the formation of a keyhole or spots that will be filled with the melted metal.

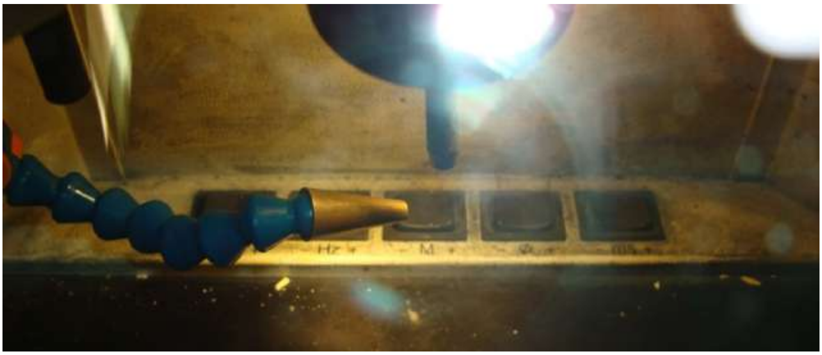


Figure 7. Laser welding machine (output of the light beam and the shielding gas).

2.3.2 Technical description

Looking through the eyepiece of the working chamber, the technician controls with his feet the number of pulses issued for welding. There are rubber gloves inside the working chamber to manipulate the structure to be welded.

2.3.3. Advantages

- it produces a keyhole that concentrates the energy absorbed in a small region, resulting in high penetration and formation of a narrow heat affected zone (HAZ) that results in less distortion compared to conventional welding methods;
- It can be executed directly in the working model;
- Expending less time;
- Both of which are optimizing steps needed for the brazing technique;
- Allows welding in regions near the resins and porcelain;
- Allows welding with the structures in close contact or with minimal space for welding, using filler metal.

2.3.4. Disadvantages

- Unions soldered by laser welding suffer from resulting defects in, among other things, residual stress. Typically, the residual stress introduced into welding joints is a consequence of thermal stress caused by the heating and cooling cycles of the welding process—this affects the mechanical behavior of laser-welded structures;
- The presence of porosities in the region of the union (figure 8A) that is due to the inclusion of argon gas, which is necessary to maintain the inert atmosphere during the welding procedure and thus minimize interaction with air elements. These bubbles and crashes act as initiators of fractures and points of stress concentration, and can lead to the failure of welded structures in a short period of time;
- Insufficient penetration of the laser beam, causes a big bubble or internal failure (figure 8B). According to some authors, the depth of penetration of the weld is the main factor that affects the values of resistance for laser-welded frameworks. Therefore, for better results, the adjustment of equipment is a key point, especially for larger diameters;
- High cost of the equipment.

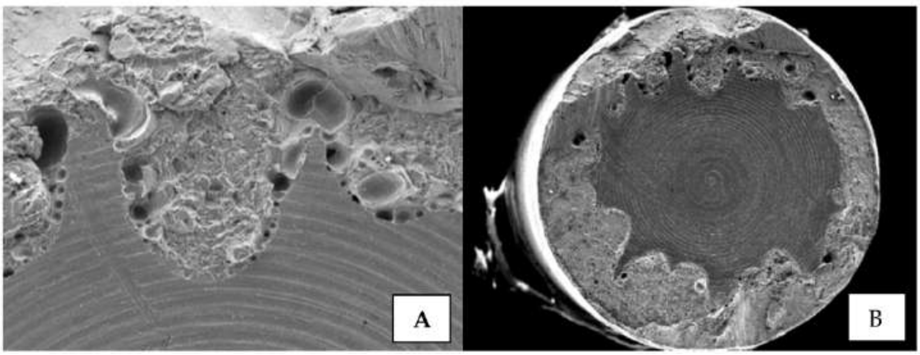


Figure 8. A) Presence of bubbles and porosities, B) Insufficient laser beam penetration.

Type of Welding	Advantages	Disadvantages
Brazing	- It has been used for years - Low cost - Relative effectiveness	- Oxidation of the parts joined by the weld - Joint porosity and overheating of the union during the welding process
Laser	- High penetration and formation of a narrow heat affected zone (HAZ) that results in less distortion compared to conventional welding methods - Procedures can be done directly in the working model - Expending less time - Optimizes steps needed for the brazing technique - Allows welding in regions near resins and porcelains - Allows welding of the structures in close contact - Filler metal may or may not be used	- Residual stress that affects the mechanical behavior of laser-welded structures - The presence of porosities in the region of the union - Insufficient penetration of the laser beam - High cost of the equipment
TIG/PAW	- High quality and excellent finishing of the weld - Allows for welding in any position - Excellent control of the weld pool - Expending less time - Procedures can be done directly in the working model - Accessible cost of the equipment - Allows welding in regions near resins and porcelains - Allows welding of the structures in close contact - Filler metal may or may not be used	- Generates a complex region of stresses and deformations, leading sometimes to undesirable results, such as material distortion, residual stresses, generation of fragile microstructures, grain grow, cracks, fissures, and changes in mechanical, physical, and chemical properties, among others - Insufficient penetration of the laser beam - Presence of porosities in the region of the union

Table 1. Shows a summary of the advantages and disadvantages of different welding techniques.

3. Employment of titanium alloys in dentistry

Until the 1970s, the main material used in fixed and removable prostheses frameworks was gold; however, with the increase in the price of gold, lower-cost alloys were introduced, which were comprised of nickel, beryllium, and cobalt. Over the years, important issues have been reported in relation to the allergenic capacity of nickel and carcinogenic power of beryllium. This has led to a constant search for biocompatible materials that meet dental requirements in chemical, physical, aesthetic, and economic aspects.

Thus, the use of titanium (Ti) in dentistry has been increasing in recent decades due to its favorable physical, mechanical, and biological properties, such as: low density, excellent biocompatibility, corrosion resistance, good resistance/weight ratio, low thermal conductivity, low thermal expansion coefficient, low modulus of elasticity, and relatively low cost. Figure 9 is an example of the metallic framework for the Brånemark Protocol made with titanium.

However, many practical problems are associated with the use of Ti and its alloys because of its high melting point of nearly 1,700ºC, which necessitates high processing temperatures. Also, its high chemical reactivity with oxygen, nitrogen, and hydrogen elements, especially at high temperatures, make Ti fragile, since significant concentrations of these elements are introduced into its surface layer. Contamination with these elements during the process of Ti union and its alloys can result in modification of the microstructure, which causes profound effects in its mechanical properties such as lower ductility and lower tensile strength values, even when soldered in welding machines with inert gas protection.

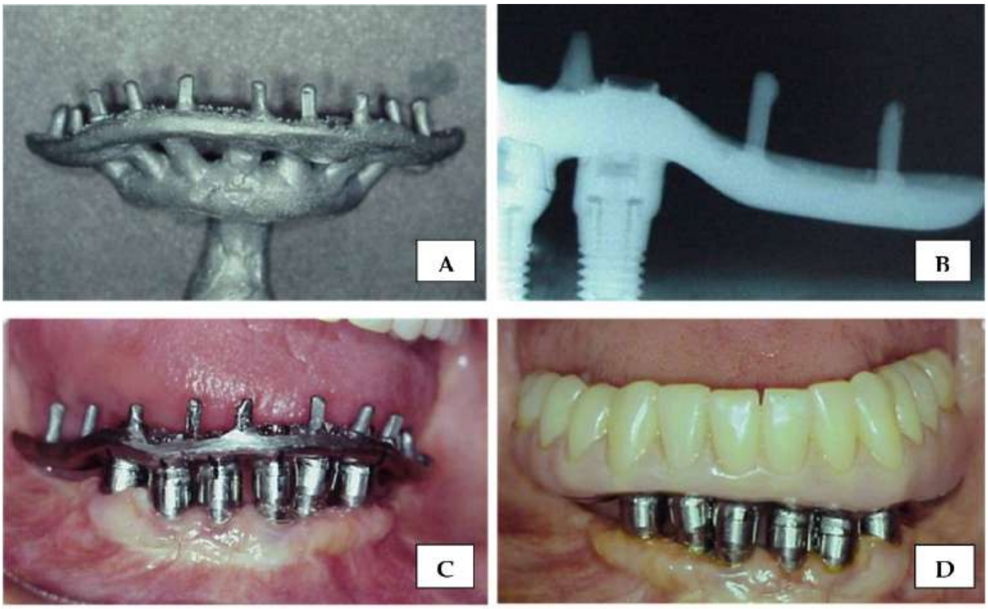


Figure 9. A) Titanium framework; B) X-ray to verify the quality of the laser welding; C) Clinical fit over the implant abutments; D) Installed prosthesis.

Thus, conventional methods that use oxygen flame welding are unsuitable to be used for Ti welding. TIG welding, laser welding, and brazing with infrared radiation are techniques that have been used for metals with gaseous protection, minimizing contamination by oxygen during the welding process and preserving the unique properties of the metal.

4. Use of welding technique to obtain prefabricated frameworks

The use of dental implants in the rehabilitation of edentulous patients is a consolidated treatment modality with high success rates. However, a large proportion of people in the world lack access to this treatment, due to high costs. Research in optimization, simplification of the original Brånemark protocol, such as the use of new technologies, alternative alloys to noble alloys, and new welding methods are presented as viable alternatives to the popularization of the implant in the rehabilitation of edentulous patients.

Therefore, studies using alternative frameworks to the Brånemark protocol have been done, using a titanium and titanium-aluminum-vanadium (Ti-6Al-4V) alloy, in the form of prefabricated bars welded in titanium abutments for construction of simpler frameworks. This reduces costs and the steps required to produce prosthesis, while increasing the speed of treatment; besides this, the alloy offers a great fit and passivity.

Thus, a series of studies involving prefabricated bar welding has been developed at the Federal University of Uberlândia, in partnership with the School of Dentistry, Mechanical Engineering and Technical College of Health. These studies seek to evaluate the use of prefabricated welded bars with different welding techniques. Despite being a line of research that is still unfinished, some of them are shown here.

One of the precursor studies compared the fit of metallic infrastructures welded by laser and brazing under different conformations (Simamoto-Júnior et al. 2008). In this study it was found that the laser-welded structures did not have the best fit as expected, since these have a smaller ZAC. Namely, other technical factors were directly related to the quality of the welded infrastructures' settlement and not just the heating zone factor.

Thus Simamoto-Júnior et al. (2008) evaluated the effect of the type of welding at the interface of three elements of fixed prostheses, which were processed from two master models with implants that were positioned aligned (straight) and misaligned (arc). Twelve models were divided into four groups (n=3) to compare the fit quality of the processes between laser welding and brazing: LA= laser welding/arc, BA= brazing/arc, SR= laser welding/straight, and BR= brazing/straight. At the end of each laboratory stage, casting/grinding, and welding, the structures were placed on the master model for evaluation of the abutment/implant interface, and the quality of both the horizontal and vertical fit were checked (Figure 10). It was expected that laser-welded frameworks would result in better fit, since these have a lower HAZ and, therefore, would cause more minor distortions. As mentioned previously, this did not happen.

This result motivated the study of Silveira-Júnior et al. (2009), which explored the influence of abutment screw tightening force before laser-welding procedures on the vertical fit of metal frameworks over four implants (Figure 11). The hypothesis was that laser welding would result in better fit for the frameworks of implant prostheses, if the tightening force applied to the abutment screws was controlled before the welding procedure. To construct the frameworks, prefabricated titanium abutments and cylindrical titanium bars were joined to compose three groups: GMT, GT10 and GT20. Before welding, manual torque that simulated routine laboratory procedures was applied to the GTM group. In GT10 and GT20, the abutment screw received 10 and 20 Ncm torque, respectively. Although the statistical results have not demonstrated differences in the three groups, it is not known whether this experience technique could influence the results. Therefore, the authors recommended a torque controller device to guarantee standardized framework tightening before welding, particularly by inexperienced technicians.

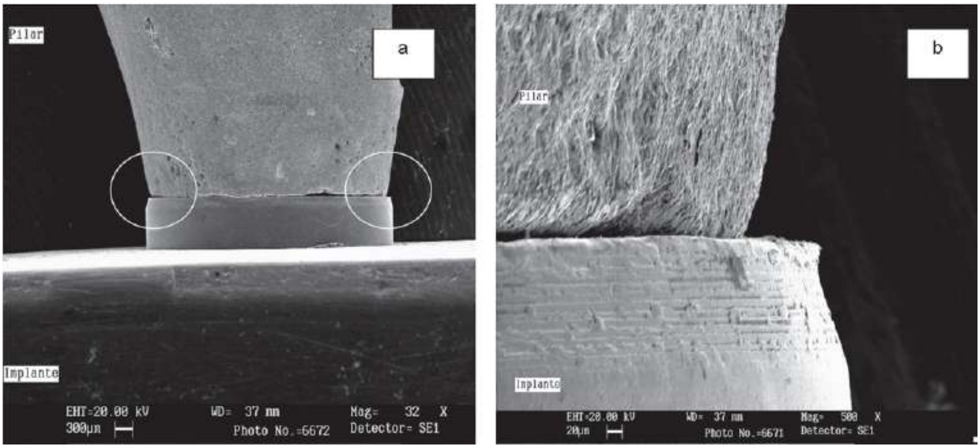


Figure 10. A) UCLA abutment on the implant using a lower zoom, detailing the areas to be analyzed; B) Image increased by 500x of the area to be evaluated.

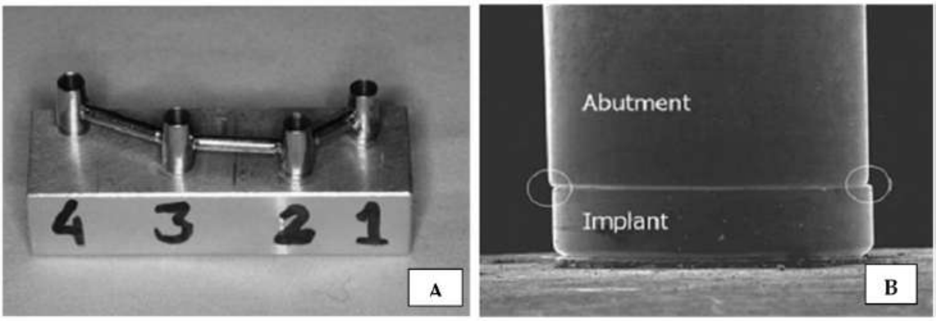


Figure 11. A) The prosthetic framework with Ti abutments, tightened directly on the implants, after the abutments received varied torques and were welded using the laser technique. B) Evaluation of horizontal and vertical fit of the implant/abutment interface by Scanning Electron Microscopy (SEM).

The distal extension of pre-fabricated steel infrastructures was studied by Oliveira et al. (2010). They evaluated the maximum force required to fracture or bend cantilevers, using three different configurations of cylindrical prefabricated titanium bars, grade 5 (Ti-6Al-4V), welded by the TIG method (Tungsten Inert Gas); the control group consisted of frameworks welded by the laser method. They were divided into four groups (n=6). These groups included a control group (GC) comprised of simple distal bars with 3.18mm diameter that were welded using the laser method, and three experimental groups, all welded by TIG method: with simple distal bars of 3.18mm diameter (GDS); with 2.5mm diameter double distal bars welded together (GDD), and with double distal bars with mixed diameters of 2.5 mm and 3.18 mm welded together (GDDM). The results showed that the control group presented statistically significant differences with the GDS and GDD groups, with higher values of strength; when compared to GDDM, there were no statistically significant differences. Therefore, it is concluded that GDDM, in relation to the other groups, is the most promising method, since its performance is similar to that of titanium frameworks welded using the laser method (Figure 12).

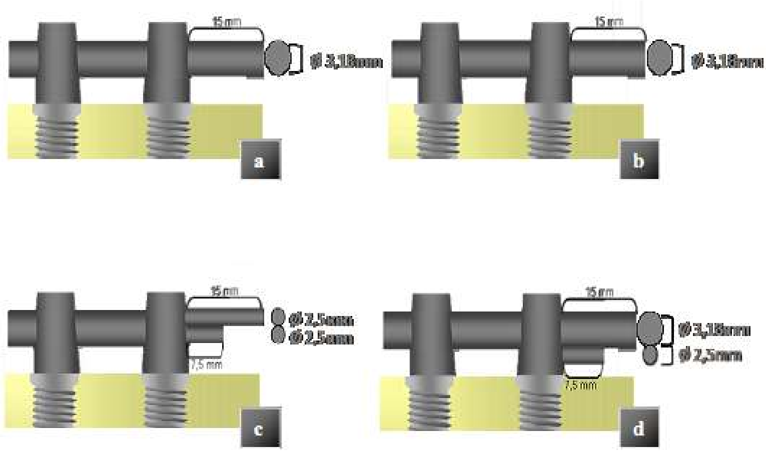


Figure 12. Schematic illustration of the different configurations of the distal bars to be evaluated: (a) GC (b) GDS (c) GDD (d) GDDM.

Silva et al. (2011) evaluated the effect of different plasma arc welding parameters on the flexural strength of titanium alloy beams (Ti-6Al-4V). Forty Ti-6Al-4V and ten Ni-Cr alloy beam specimens were prepared that were 40 mm in length and 3.18 mm in diameter, and were divided into 5 groups (n=10). The titanium beams for the control group were not sectioned or subjected to welding. Groups PL 3-10, PL 3-12, and PL 3-14 contained titanium beams sectioned and welded at a current of 3 A for periods of 10, 12, and 14 months, respectively. Group Ni-Cr-Be consisted of Ni-Cr beams welded using conventional torch brazing. Torch-brazed Ni-Cr alloy beams and non-welded titanium bars served as negative and positive controls, respectively. After the beams were subjected to a three-point bending test, the values obtained were analyzed to find the flexural strength (MPa). No significant differences were observed between the plasma welded groups ($p>0.05$). The Ni-Cr-Be group presented lower flexural strength results, although they were statistically similar to the PL 3-14 group. The weld penetrations were not significantly different between the plasma welded groups ($p=0.05$). This study provides an initial set of parameters for use of plasma welding during the fabrication of titanium alloy dental components. The plasma arc welding technique used with Ti-6Al-4V alloy showed improved performance over conventional torch brazing with Ni-Cr alloy.

Studies comparing plasma and laser welding were made by Castro et al. (2012) that evaluated the mechanical resistance of TI-6AL-4V alloy submitted to the processes of Plasma and Laser welding by means of tensile test and Finite Element Models (FEM). Forty-five dumbbell-shaped rods (n=5) with different central diameters were created from Ti-6Al-4V bars: CG (Control group) with 3 mm diameter and intact bars and PL2.5, PL3, PL4 and PL5 groups with 2.5, 3, 4 and 5 mm diameters submitted to Plasma welding process and L2.5, L3, L4 and L5 groups with 2.5, 3, 4 and 5 mm diameters submitted to Laser welding process. The results demonstrated that the control group showed higher values to tensile strength than test groups. There was statistical difference between control group and test groups but not among test groups to percentage of elongation. There was a positive correlation between welded area percentage and tensile strength in all the specimens in the test groups and a negative correlation between these parameters and the diameters of the specimens. There were no statistical differences between welding processes. The authors conclude that the diameter of 2.5 mm and 3.0 showed the highest values of tensile strength and percentage of welded area and appears to be the best option for the union of prefabricated bars for the use in prosthetics frameworks for both Plasma and Laser welding.

5. Use of welding techniques for repair of fracture prosthesis

In cases where there is a fracture of the metal framework or even where the metal structure is in need of some repair after loss of an implant, for example, the laser welding process known as TIG and PAW is indicated.

Laser welding is a safe process and can be accomplished around regions of ceramic and resin without risk of damage, because of its reduced HAZ, bond strength of the weld that is compatible with the metal source, and preservation of the metallic framework anatomy. Like laser welding, TIG and PAW welds exhibit reduced ZAC compared to brazing, they allow thickness joint to be welding in any position and allows welding in regions near the resins and porcelain. Moreover, it allows welding with the frameworks in close contact or with minimal space for welding using filler metals.

Two cases of prosthesis repair are presented in sequence. The first one shows the welding of fractured structure porcelain fused to metal, and the second shows the reconstruction of a structure after the loss of an implant.

5.1. Clinical case 1

Figures 13–16 display the employment of laser welding in the repair of a fractured metal ceramic fixed implant-supported prosthesis.

In this case, the patient presented the dentist with a fractured metal ceramic fixed implant-supported prosthesis (Figures 13A and 13B).

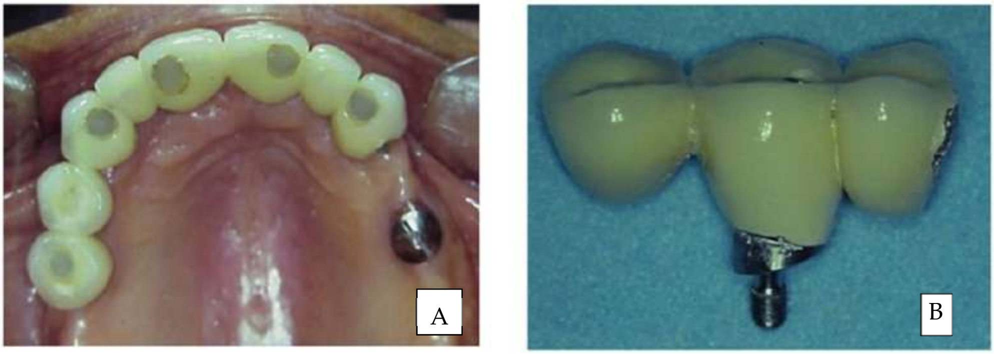


Figure 13. A) Occlusal view of a fractured metal ceramic fixed implant-supported prosthesis; B) Fractured part of the prosthesis.

Then the prosthesis was reseated intraorally and was removed for welding through drills and acrylic resin in order to keep the piece in the correct position (Figures 14A and 14B).

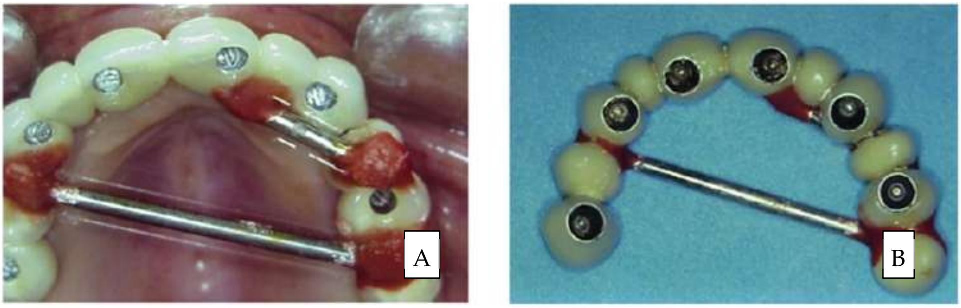


Figure 14. A) Prosthesis positioned intraorally and recorded for welding; B) Prepared structure for inclusion.

After the piece was removed from the patient's mouth, a plaster model index was made in the correct position (Figure 15A) and the piece was welded with laser welding (Figure 15B).

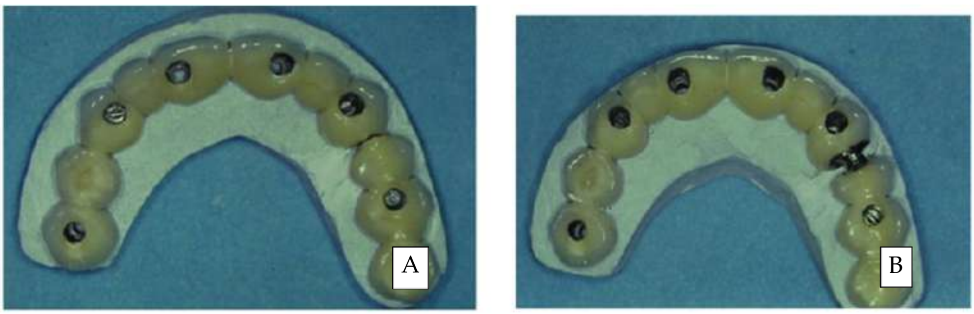


Figure 15. A) Plaster model index for welding; B) Union of the fractured region by means of laser welding.

After the welding composite resin has been applied over the welded region and again installed in the patient's mouth (Figures 16A and 16B).

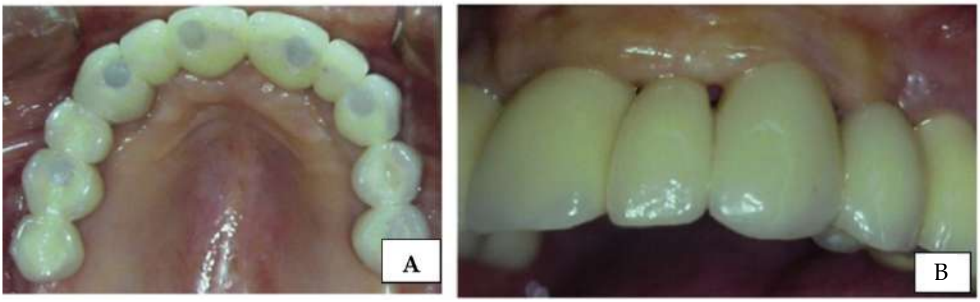


Figure 16. A) Repair terminated with composite resin; B) Details of finishing repair in the welded region.

5.2. Clinical case 2

In this case, the patient was already using a mandibular fixed implant-supported prosthesis over three implants when one of them was lost. Procedures were scheduled to replace the implant and readjust the prosthesis that the patient already used (Figure 17).

Figure 17. Prosthesis that the patient already used.

This required the assembly of top and bottom templates in the articulator (Figure 18A) and the subsequent construction of a silicone wall (Figure 18B). This device has the function of registering the resin teeth positioning with respect to antagonistic teeth, since the metallic framework of the prosthesis should be sectioned.

Before the welding procedure, the teeth were removed and also all excess acrylic resin around the metal (Figures 19A and 19B). Already at the clinical stage, the lost implant was removed and immediately replaced with another in virtually the same position. For this a surgical guide was used.

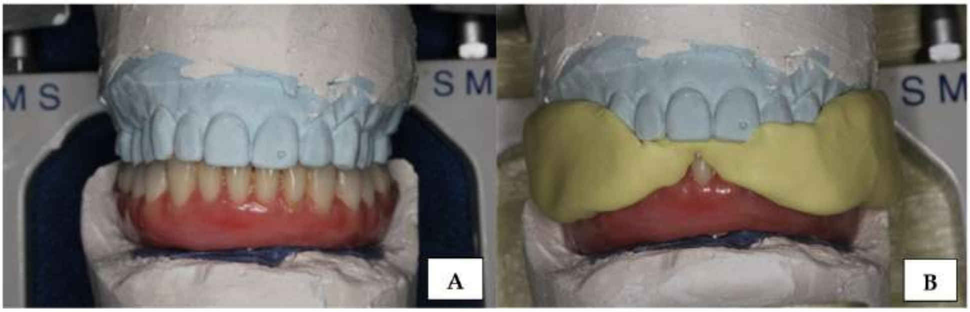


Figure 18. A) Articulating the prosthesis in a semi-adjustable articulator; B) Registration in silicone.

After installing the new implant, the prosthesis and its segmented fragment were screwed into the mouth over the implants. There was a small difference in leveling between these two parts (Figure 20), which was expected because it would be impossible to reposition the implant in an identical position to the previous one.

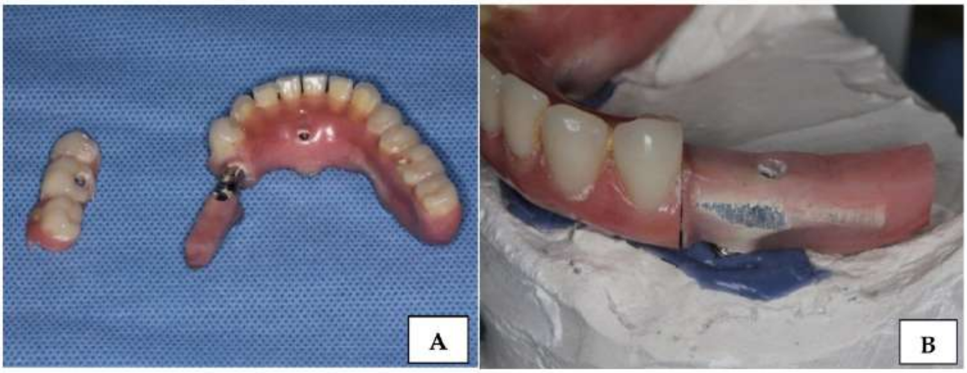


Figure 19. A) Teeth removal; B) Removal of excess resin.

Figure 20. Metal framework cut and repositioned on the new implant.

The fragments were reattached in the mouth with chemically activated acrylic resin for subsequent welding in the laboratory (Figure 21).

Figure 21. Reattachment of fragments with chemically activated acrylic resin.

In the laboratory it was necessary to adjust the working model. The analogue component of abutment concerning the lost implant was removed and replaced. The analogue was screwed under the sectional fragment and the whole set was screwed over the other two remaining analogues (Figure 22).

Figure 22. Analogue positioning according to the implant position in the patient's mouth.

New plaster was poured around the new analogue to secure it in order to implement the next steps (Figure 23).

Figure 23. Plaster to fasten the new analogue.

The welding of the segments was done with TIG welding (Kernit IND. e Comércio Ltda, Indaiatuba – SP-Brazil) (Figures 24A and 24B) without the need of filler metal. Note that the covering material of the rest of the prosthesis was not damaged, even in the areas closest to the welding.

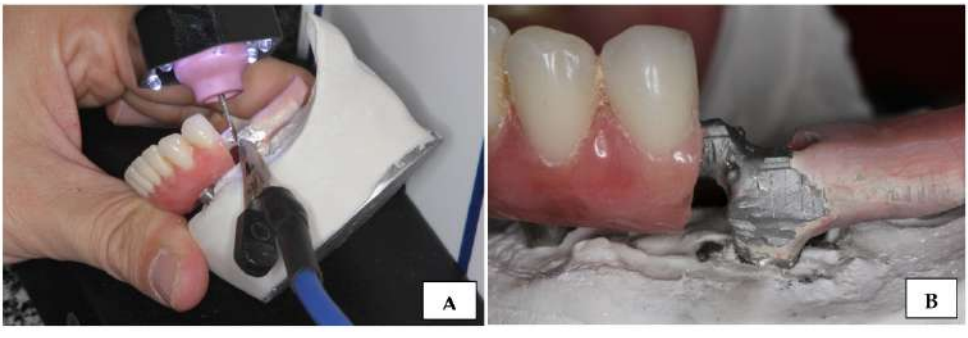


Figure 24. A) TIG welding of the metal bar; B) Structure after welding.

After the welding the teeth were repositioned on the bar using the silicone registration that had already been cut and fixed onto the top model (Figure 25A). The resin teeth were already embedded in the registration, and between these and the bar there was a space that was filled with acrylic resin to fasten them (Figure 25B).

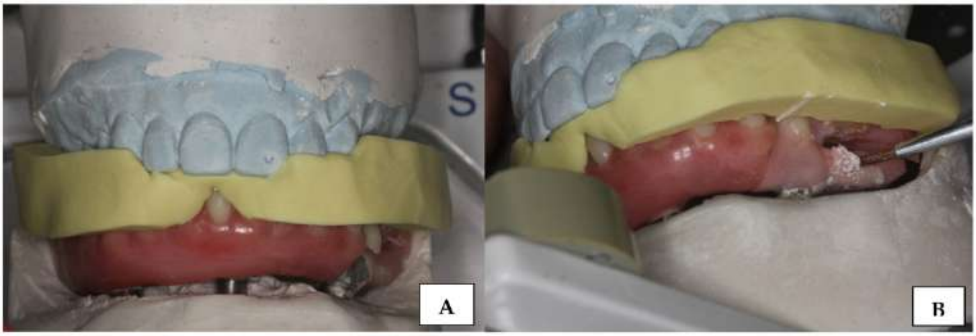


Figure 25. A) Silicone registration positioned; B) Fixation of teeth with acrylic resin.

After insertion of chemically activated acrylic resin in the same color as the rest of the prosthesis, finishing and polishing were performed (Figure 26).

Figure 26. Final appearance of the piece.

6. Conclusion

The information available in the literature and the research shows that the mechanical behaviors of the plasma-, TIG-, and laser-welding techniques do not show major differences in their behavior; laser welding had an increased availability of studies and follow-ups, compared to the other methods. In addition, all feature similar advantages, such as: the ability to be performed on a plaster model; allowing welding in areas close to the resin and ceramic; allowing welding in any position, and requiring less chair time.

Author details

Clébio Domingues da Silveira-Júnior, Morgana Guilherme de Castro, Letícia Resende Davi1, Flávio Domingues das Neves, Verediana Resende Novais and Paulo Cézar Simamoto-Júnior
Federal University of Uberlândia, Brazil

Acknowledgement

The authors would like to thanks the financial support granted by FAPEMIG and CNPq. The authors also thanks for the use of laboratories and equipments of the institutions: Technical Health School of Federal University of Uberlândia (UFU) and School of Dentistry (UFU). Thanks to Professor Cleudmar Amaral de Araújo of Mechanical Engineering School (UFU) and to technicians Takeo Endo and Marco Aurélio Dias Galbiatti, for the technical support.

7. References

American Welding Society - AWS, Rules for welding in structural steel. 1992.

Aparicio C, Lang NP, Rangert B. Validity and clinical significance of biomechanical testing of implant/bone interface. Clin Oral Imp Res. 2006; 17(Suppl 2):2-7.

Baba N, Watanabe I. Penetration depth into dental casting alloys by Nd:YAG laser. J Biomed Mater Res B Appl Biomater. 2005;72(1):64-8.

Barbosa GAS, Simamoto Júnior PC., Fernandes Neto AJ, Mattos MGC, &Neves, FD. Effect of different torque levels on the implant/abutment interface using castable "UCLA" abutments. Braz J Oral Sci. 2005;14:912-92.

Barbosa GA, das Neves FD, de Mattos M da G, Rodrigues RC, Ribeiro RF. Implant/abutment vertical misfit of one-piece cast frameworks made with different materials. Braz Dent J. 2010;21(6):515-9.

Blackman R, Barghi N, Tran C. Dimensional changes in casting titanium removable partial denture frameworks. J Prosthet Dent. 199;65(2):309-15.

Berg E, Wagner WC; Davik G, Dootz ER. Mechanical properties of laser-welded cast and wrought titanium. J Prosthet Dent 1995;74:250-7.

Bergman M. Cast titanium in dental constructions. DPNOVA AB Malmo: Sweden, Aug. 1990. [Manual].

Byrne D, Houston F, Cleary R, Claffey N. The fit of cast and premachined implant abutments. J Prosthet Dent. 1998;80(2):184-192.

Byrne G. Soldering in Prosthodontics—An Overview, Part I. J Prosthodont. 2011 Apr;20(3):233-43.

Castro MG, Silva JPL, Júnior UG, Martins PO, Cavalcante LAL, Menegaz GL, Neto AJF, Novais VR, Araújo CA, Simamoto-Júnior PC. (2012). International Association of Dental Research, Proceeding of Journal of Dental Research, Foz do Iguaçu, June 2012.

Chai T, Chou CK. Mechanical properties of laser-welded cast titanium joints under different conditions. J Prosthet Dent. 1998;79 (4): 477-483.

Cho SK, Yang YS, Son KJ, Kim JY. Fatigue strength in laser welding of the lap joint. Finite Elements in analysis and design. 2004;40:1059-1070.

Craig, R.G. Restorative dental materials. 10 ed. Saint Louis: Mosby, 1997.

Degidi M, Nardi D, Piattelli A. Immediate Rehabilitation of the Edentulous Mandible with a Definitive Prosthesis Supported by an Intraorally Welded Titanium Bar. Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants 2009;24:342–347.

Gordon TE, Smith DL. Laser welding of prostheses – an initial report. J Prosthet Dent. 1970;24 (4): 472-476.

Hart CN, Wilson PR. Evaluation of welded titanium joint used with cantilevered implant-supported prostheses. J Prosthet Dent. 2006;96:25-36.

Liu J, Watanabe I, Yoshida K, Atsuta M. Joint strength of laser-welded titanium. Dent Mater. 2002;18:143–148.

Meadows C & Fritz JD (2005). Understanding Stainless Steel Heat-Affected Zones. Welding Journal. 26-30.

Neo TK, Chai J, Gilbert JL, Wozniak WT, Engelman MJ. Mechanical properties of titanium connectors. Int J Prosthodont. 1996;9(4):379-93.

Nuñez-Pantoja JM, Takahashi JMFK, Nóbilo MA, Consani RLX, Mesquita MF. Radiographic inspection of porosity in Ti-6Al-4V laser-welded joints. Braz Oral Res. 2011;25(2):103-8

Nuñez-Pantoja JM, Vaz LG, Nóbilo MA, Henriques GE, Mesquita MF. Effects of laser-weld joint opening size on fatigue strength of Ti-6Al-4V structures with several diameters. J Oral Rehabil. 2011;38: 196-201.

Paiva BV, Oliveira NCM, Viadanna APO, Silva JPL., Novais VR, Neves FD, Araújo CA, Simamoto-Júnior, PC. Avaliação da força máxima necessária para fratura ou flexão de "cantilevers"em protocolos totais fixos sobre implantes. Braz Oral Res. 2010;24(Suppl.1):106-27.

Ramirez JE, Mishael S, Shockley R (2005). Properties and Sulfide Stress Cracking Resistance of Coarse-Grained Heat-Affected Zones in V-Microalloyed X60 Steel Pipe. Welding Journal. 113-123.

Rocha R, Pinheiro AL, Villaverde AB. Flexural strength of pure Ti, Ni-Cr and Co-Cr alloys submitted to Nd:YAG laser or TIG welding. Braz Dent J. 2006;17(1):20-3.

Roggensack M, Walter MH, Boning KW. Studies on laser- and plasma-welded titanium. Dent Mater. 1993;9(2):104-7.

Sadoswsky SJ, Caputo A. Stress transfer of four mandibular implant overdenture cantilever designs. J Prosthet Dent. 2004;92: 328-36.

Sahin S, Çehreli MC, Yalçin E. The influence of functional force on biomechanics of implant-supported prostheses – a review. Journal of Dentistry. 2002;30: 271- 282.

Silva JPL, Cavalcante LAL, Novais VR, Araújo CA, Correr-Sobrinho L, Fernandes-Neto AJ. Avaliação da resistência à flexão em liga de titânio soldadas com diferentes configurações pelo processo plasma. Braz Oral Res. 2011;25(Suppl.1):227-58.

Silveira-Júnior CD; Neves FD; Fernandes-Neto AJ; Prado CJ; Simamoto-Júnior PC. Influence of differente tightening forces before laser welding to the implant/framework fit. Journal of Prosthodontics. 2009;18:337-341.

Simamoto-Júnior PC, Novais VR, Nóbilo MAA, Barbosa GAS, Soares CJ, Neves FD. Influence of the soldering type in fitting prostheses on implants: a scanning electronic microscopy analysis. Arquivos em Odontologia. 2008;44(1):23-29.

Sjögren G, Andersson M, Bergman M. Laser welding of titanium in dentistry. Acta Odontol Scand. 1988;46: 247-253.

Shimakura M, Yamada S, Takeuchi M, Miura K, Ikeyama J. Influence of irradiation conditions on the deformation of pure titanium frames in laser welding. Dental Materials Journal 2009;28(2): 243－247.

Srimaneeponga V, Yoneyamab T, Kobayashic E, Doid H, Hanawad T. Comparative study on torsional strength, ductility and fracture characteristics of laser-welded Ti–6Al–7Nb alloy, CP Titanium and Co–Cr alloy dental castings. Dental Materials. 2008;24:839–845.

Tahmaseb A, van de Weijden JJ, Mercelis P, De Clerck R, Wismeijer D. Parameters of passive fit using a new technique to mill implant-supported superstructures: an in vitro study of a novel three-dimensional force measurement-misfit method. Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants. 2010;25(2):247-57.

Tambasco J, Anthony T, Sandven O. Laser welding in the dental laboratory: an alternative to soldering. J Dent Technol. 1996;13(4):23-31.

Taylor JC, Hondrum SO, Prasad A, Brodersen CA. Effects of joint configuration for the arc welding of cast Ti6Al4V alloy rods in argon. J Prosthet Dent. 1998;79:291-297.

Tehini GE, Stein RS. Comparative Analysis of Two Techiniques for Soldered Connectors. J Prosthet Dent.1993;69(1):16-19.

Tiossi R, Falcão-Filho H, Aguiar Júnior FA, Rodrigues RC, Mattos MG, Ribeiro RF. Modified section method for laser-welding of ill fitting cp Ti and Ni–Cr alloy one-piece cast implant-supported frameworks. J Oral Rehabil. 2010 1;37(5):359-63.

Wang RR, Chang CT. Thermal modeling of laser welding for titanium dental restorations. J Prosthet Dent. 1998;79(3):335-41.

Wang RR, Fenton A. Titanium for prosthodontic applications: a review of the literature. Quintessence Int. 1996 Jun; 27(6):401-8.

Wang RR, Welsch GE. Joining titanium materials with tungsten inert gas welding,laser welding, and infrared brazing. J Prosthet Dent. 1995;74(5):521-30.

Wataha JC. Biocompatibility of dental casting alloys: a review. The jornal of prosthetic destistry, v. 83, n.2, p. 223-234, 2000.

Watanabe F, Uno I, Hata Y, Neuendorff G, Kirsch A. Analysis of stress distribution in a screw-retained implant prosthesis. Int J Oral Maxillofac Implants. 2000; 15(2):209-218.

Watanabe I, Topham DS. Laser welding of cast titanium and dental alloys using argon shielding. J Prosthodont. 2006;15:102–107.

Wee AG, Aquilino SA, Schneider RL. Strategies to achieve fit in implant prosthodontics: a review of the literature. Int J Prosthodont. 1999;12 (2): 167-178.

Williams DF. Titanium and titanium alloys. In: Williams DF, editor. Biocompatibility of clinical implant materials. Boca Raton: CRC Press, 1984:44-7.

Zavanelli RA, Guilherme AS, Pessanha-Henriques GE, Arruda Nobilo MA, Mesquita Mf. Corrosion-fatigue of laser-repaired commercially pure titanium and Ti-6Al-4V alloy under different test environments. J Oral Rehabil. 2004;31(10):1029.

Zupancic R, Legat A, Funduk N. Tensile strength and corrosion resistance of brazed and laser-welded cobalt-chromium alloy joints. J Prosthet Dent. 2006 96(4):273-82.